

# **Administrative Products for DB2 Customization Guide**

**Supported products and solutions:**

**ALTER<sup>®</sup> version 7.3**  
**CATALOG MANAGER version 7.3**  
**CHANGE MANAGER version 7.3**  
**DASD MANAGER PLUS version 6.2**  
**Administrative Assistant version 7.3**  
**Database Administration version 2.1**  
**Database Performance version 2.0**  
**SmartDBA System Performance version 2.1**

**Version 1.3.83**



**Award of Excellence Winner  
of STC's  
International Technical  
Publications Competition,  
2003**

**October 24, 2003**



Copyright 2003 BMC Software, Inc. All rights reserved.

BMC Software, the BMC Software logos, and all other BMC Software product or service names are registered trademarks or trademarks of BMC Software, Inc. IBM and DB2 are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp. All other trademarks belong to their respective companies.

BMC Software considers information included in this documentation to be proprietary and confidential. Your use of this information is subject to the terms and conditions of the applicable End User License Agreement for the product and the proprietary and restricted rights notices included in this documentation.

## Restricted Rights Legend

U.S. Government Restricted Rights to Computer Software. UNPUBLISHED -- RIGHTS RESERVED UNDER THE COPYRIGHT LAWS OF THE UNITED STATES. Use, duplication, or disclosure of any data and computer software by the U.S. Government is subject to restrictions, as applicable, set forth in FAR Section 52.227-14, DFARS 252.227-7013, DFARS 252.227-7014, DFARS 252.227-7015, and DFARS 252.227-7025, as amended from time to time. Contractor/Manufacturer is BMC Software, Inc., 2101 CityWest Blvd., Houston, TX 77042-2827, USA. Any contract notices should be sent to this address.

---

## Contacting BMC Software

You can access the BMC Software Web site at <http://www.bmc.com>. From this Web site, you can obtain information about the company, its products, corporate offices, special events, and career opportunities.

### United States and Canada

<b>Address</b>	BMC Software, Inc. 2101 CityWest Blvd. Houston TX 77042-2827
<b>Telephone</b>	713 918 8800 or 800 841 2031
<b>Fax</b>	713 918 8000

### Outside United States and Canada

<b>Telephone</b>	(01) 713 918 8800
<b>Fax</b>	(01) 713 918 8000

---

---

## Customer Support

You can obtain technical support by using the Support page on the BMC Software Web site or by contacting Customer Support by telephone or e-mail. To expedite your inquiry, please see “Before Contacting BMC Software.”

### Support Web Site

You can obtain technical support from BMC Software 24 hours a day, 7 days a week at [http://www.bmc.com/support\\_home](http://www.bmc.com/support_home). From this Web site, you can

- read overviews about support services and programs that BMC Software offers
- find the most current information about BMC Software products
- search a database for problems similar to yours and possible solutions
- order or download product documentation
- report a problem or ask a question
- subscribe to receive e-mail notices when new product versions are released
- find worldwide BMC Software support center locations and contact information, including e-mail addresses, fax numbers, and telephone numbers

### Support by Telephone or E-mail

In the United States and Canada, if you need technical support and do not have access to the Web, call 800 537 1813. Outside the United States and Canada, please contact your local support center for assistance. To find telephone and e-mail contact information for the BMC Software support center that services your location, refer to the Contact Customer Support section of the Support page on the BMC Software Web site at [http://www.bmc.com/support\\_home](http://www.bmc.com/support_home).

### Before Contacting BMC Software

Before you contact BMC Software, have the following information available so that Customer Support can begin working on your problem immediately:

- product information
  - product name
  - product version (release number)
  - license number and password (trial or permanent)
- operating system and environment information
  - machine type
  - operating system type, version, and service pack or other maintenance level such as PUT or PTF
  - system hardware configuration
  - serial numbers
  - related software (database, application, and communication) including type, version, and service pack or maintenance level
- sequence of events leading to the problem
- commands and options that you used
- messages received (and the time and date that you received them)
  - product error messages
  - messages from the operating system, such as `file system full`
  - messages from related software



---

# Contents

About This Book .....	xv
-----------------------	----

<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Preparing to Install and Customize the Administrative Products</b>
	Overview..... 1-2
	About the OS/390 and z/OS Installer..... 1-3
	Standard Method of Installation..... 1-3
	Methods of Distribution..... 1-3
	Prerequisites..... 1-5
	System Software Requirements..... 1-5
	Worklist Parallelism Requirements..... 1-8
	Estimated Space Requirements..... 1-9
	Installation Authorization Requirements..... 1-13
	Product Authorization..... 1-13
	Installation and Customization Considerations..... 1-14
	Reusing Installation Profiles..... 1-14
	Installing BMC Software Products at Different Times..... 1-14
	Improving Performance..... 1-14
	Migrating Data..... 1-14
	Reusing DB2 Structures..... 1-15
	Installing the Administrative Products on Additional and
	Multiple DB2 Subsystems..... 1-15
	Installing Multiple Product Releases on a Single DB2 Subsystem .. 1-17
	Generating ISPF Interfaces..... 1-17
	Enabling Product CLISTs..... 1-18
	Using Worklist Parallelism..... 1-19
	Where to Go from Here..... 1-21

<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>Customizing the Administrative Products</b>
	Overview..... 2-2
	Customizing the Products by Using the OS/390 and z/OS Installer..... 2-2
	Specifying Customization Options..... 2-3
	Establishing the Installation Default Options Module..... 2-5
	Using the Product Options File..... 2-6
	Specifying the Product Identifiers..... 2-7

Generating and Running Customization JCL . . . . .	2-12
Reusing BMC Software Objects for New Releases . . . . .	2-15
Customizing XIM . . . . .	2-17
Using Catalog Indirection . . . . .	2-18
Implementing and Maintaining Catalog Indirection. . . . .	2-19
Specifying the Default Options Module . . . . .	2-19
Specifying Synonym Qualifiers . . . . .	2-21
Using a Copy of the Catalog. . . . .	2-21
Using a Copy of the Catalog to Reduce Catalog Contention . . . . .	2-22
Using a View of the Catalog . . . . .	2-23
Using a View of the Catalog to Control Catalog Access . . . . .	2-23
Installing Catalog Indirection . . . . .	2-24
Installing Products on Multiple DB2 Subsystems. . . . .	2-25
Performing an SSID Installation. . . . .	2-26
Performing an MSSID Installation . . . . .	2-29
Upgrading ALTER to CHANGE MANAGER . . . . .	2-31
Migrating Data From ALTER to CHANGE MANAGER . . . . .	2-32
Where to Go from Here. . . . .	2-34

## Chapter 3

### Performing Post-Installation Tasks for the Administrative Products

Performing Post-Installation Tasks for the Administrative Products . . . . .	3-3
Applying Fixes and Resolutions . . . . .	3-3
Creating Indexes to Improve Performance . . . . .	3-5
Creating Indexes on the DB2 Catalog Tables . . . . .	3-6
Creating Indexes on Copies of the DB2 Catalog Tables. . . . .	3-7
Verifying Product Authorization . . . . .	3-7
Granting User Authorization for XIM. . . . .	3-8
Controlling Access to Plans, Objects, and Features . . . . .	3-8
Restricting Access to ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER Plans . . . . .	3-10
Restricting Access to ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER Objects . . . . .	3-11
Restricting Access to the Worklist Parallelism Feature . . . . .	3-11
Controlling the Execution of XIM . . . . .	3-13
Restricting Access to CATALOG MANAGER Plans. . . . .	3-19
Providing Access to Catalog Information by Specifying Dynamic SQL or Static SQL . . . . .	3-20
Restricting Access to DASD MANAGER PLUS Plans . . . . .	3-21
Restricting Access to the Execution Component Plans . . . . .	3-22
Executing Worklists in CATALOG MANAGER . . . . .	3-23
Implementing Product Features. . . . .	3-24
Implementing the CHANGE MANAGER Catalog to Catalog Comparison Feature. . . . .	3-24
Enabling the Use of the DASD MANAGER PLUS INFOBMC Command in CHANGE MANAGER . . . . .	3-27
Implementing the QMF Report Feature in DASD MANAGER PLUS . . . . .	3-28
Enabling Use of Stored Procedures in CATALOG MANAGER . . . . .	3-29
Upgrading Shared Components. . . . .	3-31

---

Binding a Product to Shared Components . . . . .	3-32
Editing and Compiling SLIBs . . . . .	3-33
Specifying Generation Data Groups . . . . .	3-35
Enabling Interaction among the Administrative Products and BMC Software Utility Products . . . . .	3-36
Enabling Interaction between ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER and BMC Software Utilities . . . . .	3-37
Enabling Interaction between CATALOG MANAGER and BMC Software Utilities . . . . .	3-39
Enabling Interaction between DASD MANAGER PLUS and BMC Software Utilities . . . . .	3-41
Modifying the BMCDB2PR Panel . . . . .	3-44
Adding Products to the BMCDB2PR Panel . . . . .	3-45
Modifying and Validating the DB2 Catalog Access Option on the BMCDB2PR Panel . . . . .	3-47
Working with CLISTs . . . . .	3-48
Enabling the Implicit Execution of CLISTs . . . . .	3-49
Creating a User Message File . . . . .	3-50
Editing the BMCDB2 CLIST . . . . .	3-51
Setting the Variables in the BMCDB2 CLIST . . . . .	3-52
Modifying the Control Table in the BMCDB2 CLIST . . . . .	3-53
Enabling the Use of DASD MANAGER PLUS within ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER . . . . .	3-59
Modifying the Application ID in the BMCDB2 CLIST . . . . .	3-60
Updating the BMCDB2 CLIST for Support of Subsequent DB2 Subsystems . . . . .	3-62
Updating the BMCDB2 CLIST to Support Catalog Indirection . . . . .	3-62
Specifying the Servers in the BMCDB2 CLIST . . . . .	3-63
Prohibiting Access to CATALOG MANAGER Functions Other Than Data Editing . . . . .	3-65
Specifying an Entry Panel in CATALOG MANAGER . . . . .	3-67
Specifying the Locking Options for Editing Data in CATALOG MANAGER . . . . .	3-69
Setting the Session Profile in CATALOG MANAGER . . . . .	3-71
Integrating CATALOG MANAGER with SQL Explorer for DB2 . . . . .	3-71
Invoking the BMCDB2 CLIST . . . . .	3-72
Invoking the BMCDB2 Command . . . . .	3-73
Verifying the Installation of the Administrative Products . . . . .	3-76
Using Fast Path Navigation . . . . .	3-77
Refreshing Values in the User Profiles . . . . .	3-79
Refreshing DOPTs Values in the User Profile . . . . .	3-79
Refreshing POF Values in the User Profile . . . . .	3-80
Where to Go from Here . . . . .	3-81

<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Performing Post-Installation Tasks for the BMC Admin Server</b>	
	Overview . . . . .	4-3
	Performing Post-installation Tasks for the BMC Admin Server. . . . .	4-3
	Configuring TCP/IP . . . . .	4-4
	Configuring APPC SNA. . . . .	4-8
	Setting Up the BMC Admin Server . . . . .	4-9
	Setting Up the SNA Gateway Server . . . . .	4-16
	Setting Up the SNA Client . . . . .	4-20
	Confirming the Host-Code Page for the BMC Admin Server . . . . .	4-22
	Enabling the Use of Secondary Authorization IDs. . . . .	4-23
	Installing the Client . . . . .	4-24
	Before You Begin . . . . .	4-24
	Supported Environments. . . . .	4-24
	Verifying Server Networking . . . . .	4-26
	Selecting the Type of Installation . . . . .	4-27
	Installing a Client to Run Locally. . . . .	4-28
	Installing the Client on a Network Drive . . . . .	4-30
	Installing a Client (Command-Line Interface) . . . . .	4-31
	Installing the Client Using Distribution Software . . . . .	4-33
	Verifying Installed Files . . . . .	4-34
	Troubleshooting the Client Installation . . . . .	4-34
	Starting and Configuring the Client . . . . .	4-35
	Starting the Client. . . . .	4-35
	Configuring the Client . . . . .	4-35
	Where to Go from Here . . . . .	4-37
	Maintaining the Client. . . . .	4-37
	Adding a Client. . . . .	4-38
	Uninstalling a Client (GUI) . . . . .	4-39
	Uninstalling a Client (Command-Line Interface). . . . .	4-40
	Reinstalling a Client . . . . .	4-41
<b>Appendix A</b>	<b>ALTER Default Options</b>	
	Default Options . . . . .	A-2
	Descriptions of Default Options . . . . .	A-5
<b>Appendix B</b>	<b>CATALOG MANAGER Default Options</b>	
	Default Options . . . . .	B-2
	Descriptions of Default Options . . . . .	B-5
<b>Appendix C</b>	<b>CHANGE MANAGER Default Options</b>	
	Default Options . . . . .	C-2
	Descriptions of Default Options . . . . .	C-6
<b>Appendix D</b>	<b>DASD MANAGER PLUS Default Options</b>	
	Default Options . . . . .	D-2
	Descriptions of Default Options . . . . .	D-4



---

<b>Appendix E</b>	<b>JCL Generation Product Options</b>	
	Overview.....	E-2
	Product Options File.....	E-4
	Descriptions of Keywords.....	E-11
<b>Appendix F</b>	<b>Cross-System Image Manager Parameters</b>	
	Overview.....	F-2
	Global Parameters versus MVS Image Parameters .....	F-2
	Parameter Specifications.....	F-3
	Parameter Syntax Rules .....	F-5
<b>Appendix G</b>	<b>Moving to a Different Version of DB2</b>	
	Overview.....	G-2
	Migrating from DB2 Version 6 to Version 7.....	G-3
	Migrating from DB2 Version 5 to Version 6.....	G-7
<b>Index</b>		

---

---

# Figures

Figure 2-1	Sample Installation Batch Jobs	2-16
Figure 3-1	Result of STATUS Command	3-14
Figure 3-2	Result of QUIESCE Command	3-15
Figure 3-3	XIMACM1 Member	3-18
Figure 3-4	BMCDDB2PR Panel	3-47
Figure 3-5	Setting the GENTABLE Variable in the BMCDDB2 CLIST	3-52
Figure 3-6	BMCDDB2 CLIST Control Table	3-53
Figure 3-7	BMCDDB2 CLIST with Control Table Data Set	3-53
Figure 3-8	Adding CHANGE MANAGER to the Control Table	3-54
Figure 3-9	Specifying the Location of CHANGE MANAGER Libraries	3-54
Figure 3-10	Enabling Access to Additional Members	3-55
Figure 3-11	Adding CHANGE MANAGER to Subsystem DB61	3-56
Figure 3-12	Adding CHANGE MANAGER to Subsystem DB71	3-56
Figure 3-13	Running DB71 Administrative Products from the DB61 BMCDDB2 CLIST	3-56
Figure 3-14	Updated BMCDDB2 CLIST	3-57
Figure 3-15	Adding DASD MANAGER PLUS to the Control Table	3-59
Figure 3-16	Sample BMCDDB2 CLIST	3-61
Figure 3-17	CATALOG MANAGER CONNECT Command Servers	3-63
Figure 3-18	BMCDDB2 CLIST for Multiple SSID Installation	3-63
Figure 3-19	BMCDDB2 CLIST—CATALOG MANAGER Initial Command	3-65
Figure 3-20	BMCDDB2 CLIST—CATALOG MANAGER Entry Panel	3-67
Figure 3-21	Edited BMCDDB2 CLIST—CATALOG MANAGER Entry Panel	3-68
Figure 3-22	BMCDDB2 CLIST—Lock Options Command	3-69
Figure 3-23	BMCDDB2 Command	3-73
Figure 3-24	BMCDDB2 Command—Display Options	3-74
Figure 4-1	Example of INI#ACV Member	4-5
Figure 4-2	ISPF Edit Panel	4-6
Figure 4-3	Sample Logon Mode Definition	4-11
Figure 4-4	Sample Local LU Definition for VTAM	4-12
Figure 4-5	Sample Local LU Definition for APPC/MVS	4-13
Figure 4-6	Sample APPC/MVS Configuration File	4-14
Figure 4-7	Sample APPC LU Definition for an SNA Gateway Server	4-16
Figure 4-8	IP Configuration	4-26

---

Figure 4-9	Modifying the PDB_Install.ini File (Client Installation) . . . . .	4-31
Figure 4-10	Connection Wizard Screen . . . . .	4-36
Figure A-1	ALTER Default Options Module . . . . .	A-2
Figure B-1	CATALOG MANAGER Default Options Module . . . . .	B-2
Figure C-1	CHANGE MANAGER Default Options Module . . . . .	C-2
Figure D-1	DASD MANAGER PLUS Default Options Module . . . . .	D-2
Figure E-1	Product Options File . . . . .	E-4
Figure F-1	Sample XIM Parameter List . . . . .	F-3
Figure F-2	Default XIM Parameter List . . . . .	F-3

---

---

# Tables

Table 1-1	Reference Documents for Installation and Customization Tasks . . . .	1-2
Table 1-2	System Requirements for Administrative Products . . . . .	1-5
Table 1-3	System Requirements for Client . . . . .	1-6
Table 1-4	Version Equivalents for Mainframe, Server, and Client . . . . .	1-6
Table 1-5	Space Estimates for ALTER Objects . . . . .	1-9
Table 1-6	Space Estimates for ALTER Distribution Data Sets . . . . .	1-9
Table 1-7	Space Estimates for CATALOG MANAGER Objects . . . . .	1-10
Table 1-8	Space Estimates for CATALOG MANAGER Distribution Data Sets . . . . .	1-10
Table 1-9	Space Estimates for CHANGE MANAGER Objects . . . . .	1-11
Table 1-10	Space Estimates for CHANGE MANAGER Distribution Data Sets . . . . .	1-11
Table 1-11	Space Estimates for XIM Distribution Data Sets . . . . .	1-12
Table 1-12	Space Estimates for DASD MANAGER PLUS Objects . . . . .	1-12
Table 1-13	Space Estimates for DASD MANAGER PLUS Distribution Data Sets . . . . .	1-13
Table 1-14	Installation and Customization Tasks . . . . .	1-21
Table 2-1	Tasks for Customizing the Utility Products . . . . .	2-2
Table 2-2	Product Codes for the Administrative Products . . . . .	2-3
Table 2-3	DOPTs and Job Module Defaults . . . . .	2-5
Table 2-4	Synonym Qualifier Variables . . . . .	2-8
Table 2-5	Synonym Qualifier Defaults . . . . .	2-8
Table 2-6	Examples of Synonym Qualifiers . . . . .	2-8
Table 2-7	Collection ID Variables . . . . .	2-9
Table 2-8	Collection ID Defaults . . . . .	2-9
Table 2-9	Examples of Collection IDs . . . . .	2-10
Table 2-10	Examples of Collection Nicknames . . . . .	2-10
Table 2-11	Database and Creator Name Variables . . . . .	2-11
Table 2-12	Database and Creator Name Defaults . . . . .	2-11
Table 2-13	Generated Jobs for Customizing the Products . . . . .	2-13
Table 2-14	DOPTs Module Variables . . . . .	2-20
Table 2-15	Examples of DOPTs Modules . . . . .	2-20
Table 2-16	Additional Tasks . . . . .	2-34
Table 3-1	Post-Installation Tasks . . . . .	3-3

---

Table 3-2	Authorizing XIM Procedures . . . . .	3-8
Table 3-3	Plan Name Variables . . . . .	3-9
Table 3-4	Examples of Plan Names . . . . .	3-9
Table 3-5	ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER Plans . . . . .	3-10
Table 3-6	CHANGE MANAGER Plans . . . . .	3-11
Table 3-7	CATALOG MANAGER Plans . . . . .	3-19
Table 3-8	DASD MANAGER PLUS Plans . . . . .	3-21
Table 3-9	Execution Plans . . . . .	3-22
Table 3-10	Member Names for Jobs for BIND Packages and Plans . . . . .	3-32
Table 3-11	DASD MANAGER PLUS Table Synonyms for REORG PLUS and LOADPLUS . . . . .	3-41
Table 3-12	DASD MANAGER PLUS Table Synonyms for COPY PLUS . . . . .	3-42
Table 3-13	BMC Software Products for BMCDB2PR Panel . . . . .	3-45
Table 3-14	Administrative Products CLISTs . . . . .	3-48
Table 3-15	BMCDB2 CLIST Tasks . . . . .	3-51
Table 3-16	Program Names . . . . .	3-74
Table 3-17	Fast Path Navigation Commands . . . . .	3-77
Table 4-1	Post-Installation Tasks for BMC Admin Server . . . . .	4-3
Table 4-2	OS/390 Commands . . . . .	4-9
Table 4-3	APPC/MVS Configuration Parameter Descriptions . . . . .	4-14
Table 4-4	Installation Parameters . . . . .	4-21
Table 4-5	Code Page Values . . . . .	4-22
Table 4-6	Client Installation Options . . . . .	4-27
Table 4-7	Client Installation Directories . . . . .	4-34
Table G-1	Minimum Release Levels Required for DB2 Support . . . . .	G-2
Table G-2	Migrating DB2 Version 6 to Version 7 . . . . .	G-3
Table G-3	Creating a New DB2 Version 7 Catalog . . . . .	G-6
Table G-4	Migrating DB2 Version 5 to Version 6 . . . . .	G-7
Table G-5	Creating a New DB2 Version 6 Catalog . . . . .	G-10

---

# About This Book

This book contains detailed information about the Administrative products for DB2. It is intended for use by the system programmer or database administrator (DBA) who will install the following BMC Software products and solutions from the Administrative products for DB2 distribution tapes, CD, or Electronic Software Distribution (ESD) image:

- ALTER
- CATALOG MANAGER
- CHANGE MANAGER
- DASD MANAGER PLUS
- Administrative Assistant
- Database Administration
- Database Performance
- SmartDBA System Performance

To use this book you should be familiar with the following items:

- IBM® DB2 Universal Database for OS/390 and z/OS
- job control language (JCL)
- Interactive System Productivity Facility (ISPF)
- your client and host operating systems

For example, you should know how to respond to ISPF panels and how to perform common actions in a window environment (such as choosing menu items and resizing windows).

---

# How This Book Is Organized

This book is organized as follows. This book also contains an index.

Chapter/Appendix	Description
Chapter 1, "Preparing to Install and Customize the Administrative Products"	provides information that you need to prepare to install and customize the Administrative products
Chapter 2, "Customizing the Administrative Products"	provides information that you need to customize the Administrative products
Chapter 3, "Performing Post-Installation Tasks for the Administrative Products"	describes the post-installation tasks that you should perform after you complete the installation and customization process
Chapter 4, "Performing Post-Installation Tasks for the BMC Admin Server"	describes the post-installation tasks that you should perform after you install the BMC Admin Server for use with the client for ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER This chapter also provides information about installing, configuring, and starting the client for ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER.
Appendix A, "ALTER Default Options"	describes each default option and shows an example of the default option module
Appendix B, "CATALOG MANAGER Default Options"	describes each default option and shows an example of the default option module
Appendix C, "CHANGE MANAGER Default Options"	describes each default option and shows an example of the default option module
Appendix D, "DASD MANAGER PLUS Default Options"	describes each default option and shows an example of the default option module
Appendix E, "JCL Generation Product Options"	describes the product options and shows an example of a product options file
Appendix F, "Cross-System Image Manager Parameters"	describes the parameters that are needed to establish the scope of XIM processing in a sysplex environment, including parameters that are set at a global level and parameters that are set at the MVS image level
Appendix G, "Moving to a Different Version of DB2"	describes how to migrate from one version of DB2 to another



---

## Related Documents

The Administrative products are supported by several types of documents. In addition to this customization guide, the related books and notices that are listed in the following table contain useful information about the installation, customization, and use of the products.

Category	Availability	Document Title or Document Type	Description
installation	printed and shipped with products	<i>OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide</i>	provides information about the BMC Software OS/390 and z/OS Installer and the product installation tape set
product use	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• online</li><li>• document CD</li></ul>	<i>Administrative Products for DB2 Messages Manual</i>	contains descriptions and responses for the information, warning, and error messages that the Administrative products and solutions generate
		<i>ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER for DB2 User Guide</i>  <i>CATALOG MANAGER for DB2 User Guide</i>  <i>DASD MANAGER PLUS for DB2 User Guide</i>	present a task-oriented, step-by-step approach to using the products In addition, they document the high-level processes of the products and solution components
		<i>ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER for DB2 Reference Manual</i>  <i>DASD MANAGER PLUS for DB2 Reference Manual</i>	explains the functions, commands, and keywords for the products
notices	printed and shipped with products	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• release notes</li><li>• flashes</li><li>• technical bulletins</li></ul>	provide updates to the installation instructions, last-minute product information, and updated product information between releases
online Help	delivered within product	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ISPF help panels</li><li>• windows that are accessible from the graphical user interface</li></ul>	detailed information about specific tasks, options, or terms

## Online and Printed Books

The books that accompany BMC Software products are available in online and printed formats. Online books are formatted as Portable Document Format (PDF) files and, in some cases, as HTML files. You can access online books by using your Internet browser.

---

## To Access Online Books

To view any online book that BMC Software offers, visit the support page on the BMC Software Web site at [http://www.bmc.com/support\\_home](http://www.bmc.com/support_home). You can also access PDF books from the document compact disc (CD) that accompanies your product.

Use the free Acrobat Reader from Adobe Systems to view, print, or copy PDF files. In some cases, installing the Acrobat Reader and downloading the online books is an optional part of the product installation. For information about downloading the free reader from the Web, see the Adobe Systems site at <http://www.adobe.com>.

## To Request Printed Books

To request printed copies of BMC Software books, visit the support page on the BMC Software Web site at [http://www.bmc.com/support\\_home](http://www.bmc.com/support_home).

## Online Help

The Administrative products include online Help. In each Administrative product's ISPF interface, you can access Help by pressing HELP from any ISPF panel. In the graphical user interface (GUI) for ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER, you can access Help from the **Help** menu or in the following ways:

- by pressing **F1** from any window or dialog box
- by clicking the Help button that is provided in most dialog boxes

## Notices

The latest versions of notices are also available online from the support page of the BMC Software Web site at [http://www.bmc.com/support\\_home](http://www.bmc.com/support_home).

---

# Conventions

This section provides examples of the conventions used in this book and explains how to read syntax statements.

## General Conventions

This book uses the following general conventions:

Item	Example
information that you are instructed to type	Type <b>SEARCH DB</b> in the designated field.
specific (standard) keyboard key names	Press <b>Enter</b> .
field names, text on a panel	Type the appropriate entry in the <b>Command</b> field.
directories, file names, Web addresses	The BMC Software home page is at <b><a href="http://www.bmc.com">http://www.bmc.com</a></b> .
nonspecific key names, option names	Use the HELP function key.  KEEPDICTIONARY option
MVS calls, commands, control statements, keywords, parameters, reserved words	Use the SEARCH command to find a particular object.  The product generates the SQL TABLE statement next.
code examples, syntax statements, system messages, screen text	//STEPLIB DD  The table <i>table_name</i> is not available.
emphasized words, new terms, variables	The instructions that you give to the software are called <i>commands</i> .  In this message, the variable <i>file_name</i> represents the file that caused the error.
GUI menu sequence	Choose <b>File =&gt; Open</b> .

This book uses the following types of special text:

**Note:** Notes contain important information that you should consider.

**Warning!** Warnings alert you to situations that could cause problems, such as loss of data, if you do not follow instructions carefully.

**Tip:** Tips contain useful information that may improve product performance or that may make procedures easier to follow.

---

---

# Chapter 1      Preparing to Install and Customize the Administrative Products

This chapter presents the following topics:

Overview .....	1-2
About the OS/390 and z/OS Installer .....	1-3
Standard Method of Installation .....	1-3
Methods of Distribution .....	1-3
Prerequisites .....	1-5
System Software Requirements .....	1-5
Worklist Parallelism Requirements .....	1-8
Estimated Space Requirements .....	1-9
Installation Authorization Requirements .....	1-13
Product Authorization .....	1-13
Installation and Customization Considerations .....	1-14
Reusing Installation Profiles .....	1-14
Installing BMC Software Products at Different Times .....	1-14
Improving Performance .....	1-14
Migrating Data .....	1-14
Reusing DB2 Structures .....	1-15
Installing the Administrative Products on Additional and Multiple DB2 Subsystems .....	1-15
Installing Multiple Product Releases on a Single DB2 Subsystem ..	1-17
Generating ISPF Interfaces .....	1-17
Enabling Product CLISTs .....	1-18
Using Worklist Parallelism .....	1-19
Where to Go from Here .....	1-21

# Overview

The Administrative Products for DB2 are installed on OS/390 and z/OS by using an Interactive System Productivity Facility (ISPF) application that is named the BMC Software OS/390 and z/OS Installer.

Before you install the Administrative products, you must gather certain information and consider how and where you plan to run the products. This chapter provides the following information to help you plan your installation:

- an overview of the OS/390 and z/OS Installer
- prerequisites for installing, configuring, and running the Administrative products
- additional information that you should consider before you install or customize any of the Administrative products

Table 1-1 lists the documents that you need to complete the installation and customization tasks for the Administrative products.

**Table 1-1**      **Reference Documents for Installation and Customization Tasks**

Task	Reference Document
Prepare to install and customize the Administrative products.	release notes, flashes, and technical bulletins
	Product Authorization Letter
	Chapter 1, <i>OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide</i>
	Chapter 1, <i>Administrative Products for DB2 Customization Guide</i>
Unload the OS/390 and z/OS Installer and the Administrative products from the distribution media.	<i>OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide</i>
Set up the installation session.	<i>OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide</i>
Customize the Administrative products by assigning values to default options and preparing the products for use.	Chapter 2 through Appendix G, <i>Administrative Products for DB2 Customization Guide</i> You perform some of the customization tasks by using the OS/390 and z/OS Installer. Therefore, you should have the <i>OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide</i> available during the customization part of the process.

# About the OS/390 and z/OS Installer

The OS/390 and z/OS Installer combines tape images, copies files to your system, and generates a set of batch jobs in job control language (JCL). You use the installation batch jobs to unload and customize products from one or more distribution media.

The *OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide* includes detailed instructions for using the OS/390 and z/OS Installer to install the Administrative products.

**Warning!** The OS/390 and z/OS Installer does not support products that were delivered with earlier BMC Software installation systems. Do not use the OS/390 and z/OS Installer to install products from any tape that includes the reference "DB2 Common Install System" on its label.

Furthermore, you cannot use your DB2 Common Install System installation user profile with the OS/390 and z/OS Installer. You must specify your installation options again.

## Standard Method of Installation

The Standard method for installing the Administrative products provides a fast installation process by using the IEBCOPY utility.

## Methods of Distribution

The Administrative products are distributed by the following methods.

### Hard Media (Tape or CD)

The tape set for the Administrative products consists of the following items:

- C-series tape set, which contains the BMC Software OS/390 and z/OS Installer and the code for the Administrative products (except the graphical user interface clients for the ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER products). The following products and solutions are included on the C-series tape set:
  - ALTER for DB2 version 7.3.01
  - CATALOG MANAGER for DB2 version 7.3.01
  - CHANGE MANAGER for DB2 version 7.3.01

- DASD MANAGER PLUS for DB2 version 6.2.00
  - Cross-System Image Manager (XIM) version 1.3.01
  - Administrative Assistant for DB2 version 7.3.01
  - Database Administration for DB2 version 2.1.00
  - Database Performance for DB2 version 2.0.00
- base installation (BMI) tape

The BMI tape contains the OS/390 and z/OS Installer. Use the BMI tape if only you are installing products or components from a tape set other than the C-series tape set in a single installation session.

The graphical user interface (GUI) clients for the ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER products are distributed on a CD.

**Note:** The SmartDBA System Performance for DB2 solution includes a component of the CATALOG MANAGER product. Other components of the SmartDBA System Performance solution are contained on the M-series tape set.

## Electronic Software Distribution Image

The Electronic Software Distribution (ESD) image for the Administrative products consists of the product data sets. These data sets have been compressed into one or more sequential files. During the first part of an ESD installation, the DASD requirements are twice the requirements for a tape installation. However, after the temporary ESD files are deleted, the DASD requirements are equivalent.

For instructions about downloading ESD images, see the *OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide*.



## Prerequisites

The products on the media or image have certain requirements for their installation, customization, and use. This section describes the following prerequisites:

- system requirements—versions of the operating system, database, and other associated software that each product requires
- estimated space requirements—the number of tracks that the distribution data sets for each product require
- installation authorization requirements—the authorization that is required to run the jobs that the installation system generates

## System Software Requirements

System requirements for using the installation system are documented in the *OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide*. Table 1-2 lists specific system requirements for running each product and solution.

**Table 1-2 System Requirements for Administrative Products**

Operating System Requirements	DB2 Requirements	Additional Requirements and Recommended Options
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IBM OS/390 version 2.6 or later, or IBM z/OS version 1.1 or later</li> <li>• ISPF version 3.1 or later</li> <li>• TSO/E version 1.4 or later</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IBM DB2 version 6 or later</li> <li>• product LOAD libraries that are authorized with the authorized program facility (APF)</li> </ul>	<p>IEBCOPY job to copy all load modules to a single APF library</p> <p>The following apply to the XIM technology:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XCF services running in a multisystem environment.</li> <li>• JES2 or JES3</li> <li>• sufficient system linkage indexes (LXs) for your MVS subsystems (one per XIM)</li> </ul>

## Additional Requirements

Note these additional requirements for installing the Administrative products.

### ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER

The RECOVER PLUS component of CHANGE MANAGER provides additional functionality, such as the ability to migrate data from image copies. RECOVER PLUS is installed with CHANGE MANAGER and requires no additional license or password for use.

ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER must be installed in a separate library for each DB2 version.

The ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER clients have additional requirements for use as shown in Table 1-3.

**Table 1-3 System Requirements for Client**

Operating System Platforms	Communication Protocols	Minimum Hardware	Free Disk Space
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Microsoft Windows NT 4.0 with Service Pack 4 or later applied</li> <li>Microsoft Windows 98 Second Edition</li> <li>Microsoft Windows 2000</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IBM TCP/IP for OS/390 version 3.1 or later</li> <li>IBM APPC/MVS for MVS version 4.3 or later</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>64 MB RAM</li> <li>200 MHz Pentium</li> <li>VGA video (at least 600 X 800)</li> <li>4X or faster CD-ROM drive</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>69.5 MB</li> <li>6 MB in the <b>temp</b> directory for temporary files created during installation</li> </ul> <p><b>temp</b> is typically defined in the <b>autoexec.bat</b> file. If it is not, 6 MB of free space in the <b>windows</b> (or <b>winnt</b>) directory is required.</p>

The server and client version of ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER requires a specific version of the mainframe version of the product. Table 1-4 lists which server and client versions are equivalent to specific mainframe product versions.

**Table 1-4 Version Equivalents for Mainframe, Server, and Client**

Mainframe Version	Server Version	Client Version
7.3.01	7.3.01	7.1.01
7.2.01	7.2.01	7.1.01
7.1.01	7.1.01	7.1.01

If your users generate large worklists for creating or modifying PeopleSoft environments, you might need to modify the values for space allocation for dynamically allocated data sets. To do so, increase the appropriate operating system defaults in the `ALLOCxx` member of `SYS1.PARMLIB`.

## CATALOG MANAGER

CATALOG MANAGER requires at least 4 MB of region size for each user who signs on.

## CHANGE MANAGER

The Compare component of CHANGE MANAGER requires the following conditions to perform a catalog to catalog comparison:

- The catalogs that are used as input sources must be located on subsystems that are installed with version 6.1 or later.
- Remote locations must be defined in the `SYSIBM.LOCATIONS` table of the local DB2 subsystem and be connected using the distributed data facility (DDF) of DB2. Refer to the *IBM DB2 Universal Database for OS/390 and z/OS Administration Guide* for instructions on how to define a location name with `SYSIBM.LOCATIONS`.
- CHANGE MANAGER must be installed on the local and remote DB2 subsystems. CHANGE MANAGER can be installed either completely or partially on the remote DB2 subsystem.
- CHANGE MANAGER must be at the same version, release, and maintenance level on both DB2 subsystems.

## DASD MANAGER PLUS

DASD MANAGER PLUS requires the IBM GDDM with the Presentation Graphics Feature (PGF) to use the DASD MANAGER PLUS graphics option.

## Worklist Parallelism Requirements

In version 2.1.00 of the Database Administration solution, CHANGE MANAGER can execute worklist commands in parallel across a single OS/390 or z/OS image, or in a DB2 data sharing group across a sysplex. This feature is called worklist parallelism. Before you can use the worklist parallelism feature in the Database Administration solution, the following requirements must be met:

- You must have the Database Administration solution installed. A password for the Database Administration solution is required to enable worklist parallelism.
- If version 1.3.00 or earlier of the BMC Software Cross-System Image Manager (XIM) for DB2 or for IMS is already installed on your subsystem in an authorized library or in a linklist data set, you must upgrade to version 1.3.01 of XIM. Version 2.1.00 of the Database Administration solution requires version 1.3.01 of XIM. Only one XIM started task procedure can be active on each image with the same group name for XIM.
- You must start XIM on every image on which you want to run a worklist in parallel.
- The dispatch priority for the XIM started task procedure must be set to a higher level than the dispatch priority for a CHANGE MANAGER batch job.
- You must have sufficient system linkage indexes (LXs) for your OS/390 or z/OS subsystems. One LX is required for each XIM address space.
- An available entry must exist in the IBM Cross-System Coupling Facility (XCF) for XIM to define the group.
- If you use data sharing, consider the following requirements:
  - All the members in the data sharing group must be at the same version level of DB2.
  - The CHANGE MANAGER product libraries must be APF authorized on all the images in the data sharing group.
  - XIM initiators for any of the members in the data sharing group must use the same DSNLOAD and DSNEXIT concatenation.
  - If you want to use all the members in the data sharing environment, invoke CHANGE MANAGER by using the group attachment name for the SSID in the BMCDB2 CLIST.

## Estimated Space Requirements

During the unload process, the installation system allocates various data sets according to the products that you select for installation. The following sections describe the data sets that the installation system allocates for each product.

*HLQ* represents the high-level qualifier that you have chosen for the BMC Software products. To determine your total space requirements, add the space required for each product that you are installing.

**Note:** If you are using DB2-defined objects, you must have a previously defined storage group (STOGROUP). The installation system does not define STOGROUPs.

### ALTER

Table 1-5 provides space estimates for ALTER objects.

**Table 1-5 Space Estimates for ALTER Objects**

Object (Default)	Primary Quantity (KB)	Secondary Quantity (KB)	Estimated Tracks, 3380	Estimated Tracks, 3390
table space	15200	1360	380	695
index space	2960	1440	30	30

Table 1-6 provides the space estimates for ALTER distribution data sets.

Because RECOVER PLUS is installed with ALTER, Table 1-6 also includes space estimates for RECOVER PLUS objects.

**Table 1-6 Space Estimates for ALTER Distribution Data Sets (Part 1 of 2)**

Distribution Data Set	RECFM	LRECL	Block Size	Estimated Tracks, 3380	Estimated Tracks, 3390
HLQ.CLIST	VB	255	3120	32	16
HLQ.CNTL	FB	80	3120	82	41
HLQ.DBRM	FB	80	3120	168	84
HLQ.LOAD	U	0	23476	2557	2557
HLQ.MLIB	FB	80	3120	48	24
HLQ.MSGS	FB	80	3120	1459	1265
HLQ.MSGTEXT	VB	255	27998	16	8

**Table 1-6 Space Estimates for ALTER Distribution Data Sets (Part 2 of 2)**

<b>Distribution Data Set</b>	<b>RECFM</b>	<b>LRECL</b>	<b>Block Size</b>	<b>Estimated Tracks, 3380</b>	<b>Estimated Tracks, 3390</b>
HLQ.PLIB	FB	80	3120	140	70
HLQ.SCRIPT	VB	255	6124	16	14
HLQ.SLIB	FB	80	3120	34	17
HLQ.TLIB	FB	80	3120	18	9
HLQ.ISPPLIB	FB	80	3120	17	14
HLQ.ISPLLIB	U	0	23476	32	32

## CATALOG MANAGER

Table 1-7 provides space estimates for CATALOG MANAGER objects.

**Table 1-7 Space Estimates for CATALOG MANAGER Objects**

<b>Object (Default)</b>	<b>Primary Quantity (KB)</b>	<b>Secondary Quantity (KB)</b>	<b>Estimated Tracks, 3380</b>	<b>Estimated Tracks, 3390</b>
table space	13392	3336	335	279
index space	992	464	25	10

Table 1-8 provides space estimates for CATALOG MANAGER distribution data sets.

**Table 1-8 Space Estimates for CATALOG MANAGER Distribution Data Sets (Part 1 of 2)**

<b>Distribution Data Set</b>	<b>RECFM</b>	<b>LRECL</b>	<b>Block Size</b>	<b>Estimated Tracks, 3380</b>	<b>Estimated Tracks, 3390</b>
HLQ.CLIST	VB	255	3120	41	21
HLQ.CNTL	FB	80	3120	45	23
HLQ.DBRM	FB	80	3120	93	47
HLQ.LOAD	U	0	23476	2622	2622
HLQ.MLIB	FB	80	3120	62	62
HLQ.MSGS	FB	80	3120	1378	1195
HLQ.PLIB	FB	80	3120	449	225
HLQ.SLIB	FB	80	3120	49	25

**Table 1-8 Space Estimates for CATALOG MANAGER Distribution Data Sets (Part 2 of 2)**

Distribution Data Set	RECFM	LRECL	Block Size	Estimated Tracks, 3380	Estimated Tracks, 3390
HLQ.TLIB	FB	80	3120	32	16
HLQ.LOADE	U	0	23476	258	258

## CHANGE MANAGER

Table 1-9 provides space estimates for CHANGE MANAGER objects.

**Table 1-9 Space Estimates for CHANGE MANAGER Objects**

Object (Default)	Primary Quantity (KB)	Secondary Quantity (KB)	Estimated Tracks, 3380	Estimated Tracks, 3390
table space	29800	5120	745	107
index space	7600	3320	190	69

Table 1-10 provides space estimates for CHANGE MANAGER distribution data sets.

Because RECOVER PLUS is installed with CHANGE MANAGER, Table 1-10 also includes space estimates for RECOVER PLUS objects.

**Table 1-10 Space Estimates for CHANGE MANAGER Distribution Data Sets (Part 1 of 2)**

Distribution Data Set	RECFM	LRECL	Block Size	Estimated Tracks, 3380	Estimated Tracks, 3390
HLQ.CLIST	VB	255	3120	32	16
HLQ.CNTL	FB	80	3120	99	50
HLQ.DBRM	FB	80	3120	200	100
HLQ.LOAD	U	0	23476	2834	2834
HLQ.MLIB	FB	80	3120	64	32
HLQ.MSGS	FB	80	3120	1458	1264
HLQ.MSGTEXT	VB	255	27998	15	8
HLQ.PLIB	FB	80	3120	324	162
HLQ.SCRIPT	VB	255	6124	16	14
HLQ.SLIB	FB	80	3120	34	17
HLQ.TLIB	FB	80	3120	17	9

**Table 1-10 Space Estimates for CHANGE MANAGER Distribution Data Sets (Part 2 of 2)**

Distribution Data Set	RECFM	LRECL	Block Size	Estimated Tracks, 3380	Estimated Tracks, 3390
HLQ.ISPPLIB	FB	80	3120	16	14
HLQ.ISPLLIB	U	0	23476	32	32

XIM is installed with the Database Administration solution. provides space estimates for XIM distribution data sets.

**Table 1-11 Space Estimates for XIM Distribution Data Sets**

Distribution Data Set	RECFM	LRECL	Block Size	Estimated Tracks, 3380	Estimated Tracks, 3390
HLQ.CNTL	FB	80	3120	2	2
HLQ.LOAD	U	0	23476	20	20

## DASD MANAGER PLUS

Table 1-12 provides space estimates for DASD MANAGER PLUS objects.

**Table 1-12 Space Estimates for DASD MANAGER PLUS Objects**

Object (Default)	Primary Quantity (KB)	Secondary Quantity (KB)	Estimated Tracks, 3380	Estimated Tracks, 3390
table space	51840	15840	1296	1080
index space	18000	9000	450	375

Table 1-13 provides space estimates for DASD MANAGER PLUS distribution data sets.



**Table 1-13 Space Estimates for DASD MANAGER PLUS Distribution Data Sets**

Distribution Data Set	RECFM	LRECL	Block Size	Estimated Tracks, 3380	Estimated Tracks, 3390
HLQ.CLIST	VB	255	3120	64	32
HLQ.CNTL	FB	80	3120	52	26
HLQ.DBRM	FB	80	3120	81	41
HLQ.LOAD	U	0	23476	1471	1471
HLQ.MLIB	FB	80	3120	47	24
HLQ.MSGS	FB	80	3120	805	698
HLQ.PLIB	FB	80	3120	138	69
HLQ.QMFFORM	V	85	89	16	16
HLQ.QMFPROC	FB	79	3160	16	14
HLQ.QMFQRY	FB	79	3160	16	14
HLQ.SLIB	FB	80	3120	33	17
HLQ.TLIB	FB	80	3120	33	33

**Note:** The *HLQ.QMFQRY*, *HLQ.QMFPROC*, and *HLQ.QMFFORM* data sets can be edited in the JCL from the \$B05UNLD job.

## Installation Authorization Requirements

When you install the Administrative products, you must have a DB2 authorization of SYSADM to run the batch jobs that the installation system generates. However, you do not need DB2 authorization to run the installation system or to generate the batch jobs.

You must install the load modules for XIM into an authorized program facility (APF) library.

## Product Authorization

To activate a BMC Software product, you must use the password for the product. By using the installation system, you can establish the license authority to access and use the products. For more information about obtaining product passwords and establishing license authority, see the *OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide*.

# Installation and Customization Considerations

Consider the information in the following sections when you install the Administrative products.

## Reusing Installation Profiles

The OS/390 and z/OS Installer uses a profile repository to provide a means of storing and managing installation variables for many products, across multiple installation sessions. If you installed the Administrative products previously by using the DCI Install System, you will not be able to use your DCI Install System installation user profile with the OS/390 and z/OS Installer. You must specify your installation options again. For more information about managing installation profiles, see the *OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide*.

## Installing BMC Software Products at Different Times

If you are installing products from different distribution media at different times, install the Utilities products and the Backup and Recovery products before you install the Administrative products.

## Improving Performance

The Administrative products use Structured Query Language (SQL) to access the DB2 catalog. Before you install the Administrative products, run the IBM RUNSTATS utility on the DB2 catalog. When you run the RUNSTATS utility, up-to-date statistics are available to the DB2 Optimizer when it determines access paths that could improve performance.

## Migrating Data

Effective with DB2 version 7, if you are installing a product that requires a utility for data migration, the installation system prompts you to specify whether you are using BMC Software utilities or IBM utilities for this purpose. If you specify BMC Software utilities, you are also prompted to provide the location of the utility load modules so that they will be properly referenced in generated jobs.

## Reusing DB2 Structures

The Administrative products use a new set of DB2 structures for each new release. Most of the BMC Software Utility products and Backup and Recovery products use the same set of DB2 structures from one release to the next. You are prompted during the installation for the names of the existing DB2 structures. For information, see “Reusing BMC Software Objects for New Releases” on page 2-15.

## Installing the Administrative Products on Additional and Multiple DB2 Subsystems

The installation system enables you to clone the Administrative products to other DB2 subsystems.

### Installing the Products on an Additional SSID

The subsystem ID (SSID) installation path is available for the installation of BMC Software products that require you to create a unique set of DB2 objects for each DB2 subsystem. This installation path has the following characteristics:

- uses product libraries that are created during the standard installation
- enables the creation of new DB2 objects
- provides an interface with other BMC Software products
- supports the use of your own VSAM data sets (when supported by the selected product and when you specify the Advanced installation navigation mode)
- supports data migration from an earlier release (when you specify the Advanced installation navigation mode)

Because the installation system saves the parameter values that you provide in the first installation, the SSID installation option generates the installation batch jobs quickly and easily. You change only those parameters that are different on each DB2 subsystem.

When you specify the SSID option, the installation system generates installation batch jobs for the specified subsystem, but it does not unload data sets from the distribution tape. Instead, the installation system uses the data sets that were unloaded during the original installation to install the software on the specified DB2 subsystem.

Consider the following requirements before you choose the SSID installation option. For a subsequent installation on a different DB2 subsystem that does not meet these requirements, install the product again.

- The SSID installation option applies only to those products that can share BMC Software product libraries.

**Note:** ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER must have separate product libraries for each version of DB2.

- The DB2 subsystem that you choose during an SSID installation must have the same version of DB2 as the one on which you installed the selected product.

### Installing the Products on Multiple SSIDs

The Multiple SSID (MSSID) installation path provides a way for you to use an initial product installation as a model for installations on other DB2 subsystems. All the considerations that apply to the SSID installation option also apply to the MSSID installation option.

In the MSSID model, subsystem characteristics must be similar for all the DB2 subsystems. Installation parameters for subsequent subsystems cannot differ significantly from the initial installation process. However, the following installation information can differ between subsystems:

- job card information
- library name for the generated batch jobs
- DB2 LOAD and EXIT library names
- APF library name
- DOPTs names
- STOGROUP names
- VSAM catalog (VCAT) names (including VCAT volume and DASD type)

You can easily propagate the names for multiple subsystem installations if the name or part of the name differs only by the DB2 SSID. During the MSSID installation process, the installation system inserts the correct SSID when it generates the installation batch jobs.

**Note:** If the DB2 subsystems differ in characteristics that are outside the scope of the MSSID installation process, you must perform a standard SSID installation for each subsystem, using a new installation user profile.

## Installing Multiple Product Releases on a Single DB2 Subsystem

You might need to perform acceptance testing on a new release before you can upgrade it to production. To facilitate this requirement, you can run multiple releases of some BMC Software products within a single DB2 subsystem. If you plan to install multiple releases of the BMC Software products, follow these rules:

- Use a unique HLQ that is different from the qualifier currently in use. The installation system creates a new set of BMC Software product libraries to support the new release.
- Do not copy the load modules to the APF library that is currently in use.
- Use the Advanced installation mode.
- Use a DB2-synonym qualifier for the product that is different from the qualifier currently in use.
- Use naming conventions that are different from the conventions currently in use for plans and collection IDs.

For information about the naming conventions for synonym qualifiers, plans, and collection IDs, see “Specifying the Product Identifiers” on page 2-7.

- If you do not want to share the existing DB2 objects with the new release of the products, use DBNAME and CREATOR names that are different from other BMC Software objects.

The installation system generates a new ISPF interface to access the newly installed set of products. You must continue to use the old ISPF interface to access the older set of products.

## Generating ISPF Interfaces

For those BMC Software products that provide an online dialog panel, the installation system generates a BMC Software-supplied ISPF interface based on the options and products that you specify during installation. BMC Software products that are installed with different high-level qualifiers (that is, products that are installed individually and that might reside in different libraries) can be accessed from the interface.

The interface consists of a CLIST (BMCDB2) and panels (BMCDB2PR, BMCDB2P2, BMCDB2TB, and BMCDB2H). You can use this combination without making changes to your TSO logon procedure. BMC Software recommends that new users use the supplied ISPF interface. The Administrative products require you to execute the CLIST from one of the ISPF dialog panels in your system.

The BMCDB2 CLIST uses the ISPF LIBDEF command to allocate all the BMC Software product libraries. The installation system customizes BMCDB2 and BMCDB2PR to include the data set names that you used when you installed the products. The installation system specifies up to two DB2 load libraries and specifies the default options (DOPTs) module name for each product to support the DB2 subsystem where the product is installed.

If you install the products individually using the same installation data set, the BMCDB2 CLIST and BMCDB2PR panel are generated using the options only for the last product that was installed. Therefore, you might not be able to access the previously installed product unless you manually edit the BMCDB2 CLIST.

## Enabling Product CLISTs

CLISTs are shipped with the Administrative products and are generated by the installation system. These CLISTs must be made available for implicit execution. If the TSO ALTLIB command is available on your system, on the Install System ALTLIB Values Panel, select to use the ALTLIB command to dynamically add libraries to the SYSPROC file. For more information about the product CLISTs, see “Enabling the Implicit Execution of CLISTs” on page 3-49.

## Using Worklist Parallelism

You should consider the following items before you enable worklist parallelism for the Database Administration solution:

- XIM must be started on every OS/390 or z/OS image on which you want to run a worklist in parallel.
- Do not use stacked tapes.
- Allocate the `//SYSUDUMP DD` to a permanent data set.

If the `//SYSUDUMP DD` is allocated to `SYSOUT=*`, XIM will not replicate the allocation for each of the initiators. As a result, if an abend occurs, a dump is not created. To ensure that the allocation for each of the initiators is replicated, allocate the `//SYSUDUMP DD` to a permanent data set.

- Ensure that you have enough space to allocate permanent work data sets (such as `SYSUT`, `SUT`, `SORT`, `SORTP`, and `SYSER`) for each initiator, in addition to the base data sets.

More DASD is required when you run a worklist in parallel. To help estimate the amount of DASD, consider the following items:

- Work data sets are sized for the largest object in the scope of the worklist.
- Numerous data sets are allocated for each initiator. Thus, as you increase the number of initiators that you use, you also increase the amount of DASD that is required.
- The DASD must be shared across all of the images on which a parallel worklist is run.
- For new data sets that are dynamically allocated (such as unload, copy, and discard data sets):
  - Ensure that the statistics information for the DB2 objects is current.
  - If statistics are unavailable, or if the table spaces are compressed, modify the values for the `PCTPRIM` and `NBRSECD DOPTs` for the `UNLOAD PLUS` utility. For more information about dynamically allocated data sets, see the *UNLOAD PLUS for DB2 Reference Manual*.

- Configure your SMS environment properly so that UNLOAD PLUS can dynamically adjust allocation parameters.
- For DB2 version 7 and later, new data set prefixes exist for the following permanent work and image copy data sets:
  - baseline recovery
  - discard
  - local primary and backup copy
  - recovery primary and backup copy
  - primary SYSREC

These prefixes ensure the uniqueness of the name of the data set when the data set is dynamically allocated. The product options file (POF) that is generated in the *HLQ.CNTL* data set includes the new prefixes. If you copy an existing POF during installation to the *HLQ.CNTL* data set, you might need to modify the data set prefixes.

- For data sets that are not dynamically allocated (static), follow the procedures for setting the JCL debugging, display, and execution options in the *ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER for DB2 User Guide*. Choose to include comments that show the statistics that are used to determine the sizes of the data sets in the generated JCL.
- In the execution JCL for the worklist, you can specify a percentage of the available computing resources or system capacity that should be reserved for running a worklist in parallel.
- Enable the worklist parallelism feature only for worklists that contain a large number of objects or that need to be processed quickly.
- Determine the minimum and maximum number of XIM initiators that you want to use for each job that is to be run in parallel. BMC Software recommends that you use the default values of 2 as the minimum number and 3 as the maximum number.

The maximum number of initiators controls the number of permanent work data sets that the product allocates in the execution JCL. If the maximum number of XIM initiators that you specify is greater than the number of objects in the scope of the worklist that you want to run in parallel, your DASD might not be used efficiently.



## Where to Go from Here

Now that you have the information that you need to consider how and where you plan to run the products, you can install and customize the Administrative products. Refer to Table 1-14 to determine where to find the information that you need to perform these tasks.

**Table 1-14      Installation and Customization Tasks**

<b>Task</b>	<b>Where to Go</b>
Unload the installation system and product files.	<i>OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide</i>
Customize the products.	Chapter 2, "Customizing the Administrative Products" in this book



---

# Chapter 2 Customizing the Administrative Products

This chapter presents the following topics:

Overview . . . . .	2-2
Customizing the Products by Using the OS/390 and z/OS Installer. . . . .	2-2
Specifying Customization Options. . . . .	2-3
Establishing the Installation Default Options Module. . . . .	2-5
Using the Product Options File . . . . .	2-6
Specifying the Product Identifiers . . . . .	2-7
Generating and Running Customization JCL. . . . .	2-12
Reusing BMC Software Objects for New Releases. . . . .	2-15
Customizing XIM. . . . .	2-17
Using Catalog Indirection. . . . .	2-18
Implementing and Maintaining Catalog Indirection . . . . .	2-19
Specifying the Default Options Module. . . . .	2-19
Specifying Synonym Qualifiers . . . . .	2-21
Using a Copy of the Catalog . . . . .	2-21
Using a Copy of the Catalog to Reduce Catalog Contention. . . . .	2-22
Using a View of the Catalog. . . . .	2-23
Using a View of the Catalog to Control Catalog Access . . . . .	2-23
Installing Catalog Indirection. . . . .	2-24
Installing Products on Multiple DB2 Subsystems . . . . .	2-25
Performing an SSID Installation . . . . .	2-26
Performing an MSSID Installation. . . . .	2-29
Upgrading ALTER to CHANGE MANAGER. . . . .	2-31
Migrating Data From ALTER to CHANGE MANAGER . . . . .	2-32
Where to Go from Here . . . . .	2-34

## Overview

After you use the OS/390 and z/OS Installer to unload the Administrative products, you must use it to customize your products. Table 2-1 lists the tasks that you should perform to customize the Administrative products, as well as optional tasks that you can perform. The References column shows the location of the task instructions.

**Table 2-1**      **Tasks for Customizing the Utility Products**

Task	References
perform basic customization tasks for the products that you are installing	"Specifying Customization Options" on page 2-3
generate and run customization jobs to apply the values to the default options	"Generating and Running Customization JCL" on page 2-12
<i>(optional)</i> implement catalog indirection	"Using Catalog Indirection" on page 2-18
<i>(optional)</i> perform an SSID installation for an additional DB2 subsystem	"Performing an SSID Installation" on page 2-26
<i>(optional)</i> perform a Multiple SSID installation for several DB2 subsystems	"Performing an MSSID Installation" on page 2-29

## Customizing the Products by Using the OS/390 and z/OS Installer

From the OS/390 and z/OS Installer, you can perform the following customization tasks for the Administrative products:

- Specify library names.
- Specify DB2 parameters.
- Specify installation authorization IDs.
- Specify values for product options.
- Specify default options.
- Specify product identifiers.
- (ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER) Specify server options.
- Specify interface options.
- Generate and run the customization JCL.
- Use the existing DB2 object names for a new release of the BMC Software products.

The following procedures describe how to perform these tasks.

---

## Specifying Customization Options

---

**Summary:** After you run the installation system to unload the products from the distribution media, you can customize the products for use on your system. When you customize the products, the installation system assigns values to default options.

This procedure describes how to specify your customization options.

---

### Before You Begin

Before you use the OS/390 and z/OS Installer to specify customization options, unload and install the product files, as instructed in the *OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide*.

Many of the installation variables and options include a two- or three-character product code (*prd* or *pp*) as part of the value. The Administrative products use the product codes that are listed in Table 2-2.

**Table 2-2** Product Codes for the Administrative Products

Product	Code
ALTER	AL or ALU
CATALOG MANAGER	ACT
CHANGE MANAGER	CM or ACM
DASD MANAGER PLUS	ASU
Execution component	AEX

### To Specify Customization Options

**Step 1** From the installation system main menu, select **Product Customization**.

**Step 2** Press **Enter**.

**Note:** If you have previously run the installation system, you will see a Checkpoint panel. You can choose to start over or you can resume from one of the listed checkpoints.

The Product Verification panel lists the products that you selected to customize.

**Step 3** Verify that the listed products are the products that you want to customize.

**Step 4** Press **Enter** to continue.

The installation system presents a series of panels that enable you to specify information for each product that you selected to customize.

**Step 5** Complete the fields in the panels.

**Step 6** Press **Enter** to continue.

Review the topics in this chapter for additional information about the default options module (see page 2-5), the product options file (see page 2-6), and product identifiers (see page 2-7). When you have completed the panels, the Final Tasks panel is displayed.

**Step 7** Use the BMC Software Security Facility to apply product passwords.

**7.A** From the installation system Final Tasks panel, select **Product Authorization**.

**7.B** Press **Enter**.

**7.C** Follow the instructions in the procedure “Managing Product Licenses” in the *OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide*.

**Step 8** Review your customization choices.

**8.A** From the installation system Final Tasks panel, select **Review Customization**.

**8.B** Press **Enter**.

**8.C** If necessary, modify the choices as instructed on each panel. When you are satisfied, press **Enter** to continue.

## Where to Go from Here

After you specify the basic customization options, generate and run the customization JCL. For information, see “Generating and Running Customization JCL” on page 2-12.

## Establishing the Installation Default Options Module

When you use the installation system to install the Administrative products, the installation process generates a customized installation data set (*HLQ.INSTALL.JCL*). This data set contains customized jobs that are created to install these products into your specific DB2 environment. One of these jobs establishes the default processing option values. The job name begins with a \$ character, followed by a three-character identifier (*xnn*) that varies, depending on how you installed the products. The last four characters are always DOPT.

The *\$xnnDOPT* member of the installation data set contains an assembly language program with an options macro call that establishes the default processing values in the installation default options (DOPTs) module. You can tailor the installation of the product, including changing plan names, by editing the default values in the *\$xnnDOPT* member. If you modify any of the values in the *\$xnnDOPT* member after installation, you must rerun the *\$xnnDOPT* job for these changes to occur.

You can also modify the options for a specific product by editing and running the stand-alone DOPTs job for that product in the *HLQ.CNTL* product library. When run, this job creates a DOPTs module in the products' APF-authorized load library. The default name of the DOPTs stand-alone job and module is *prdDOPD1*, where *prd* is the three-letter product code. The module *prdDOPD1* establishes default processing options for a particular product. Table 2-3 lists the default values for the DOPTs modules.

**Table 2-3 DOPTs and Job Module Defaults**

Product	Default
ALTER	ALUDOPD1
CATALOG MANAGER	ACTDOPD1
CHANGE MANAGER	ACMDOPD1
DASD MANAGER PLUS	ASUDOPD1

For a list of the options that are provided for each of the Administrative products, see the product appendixes in this book.

Because you can override many of the default processing option parameters for Administrative products through the ISPF panels, you do not need to establish a separate *prdDOPD1* module on each DB2 SSID for each product. You can generate one DOPTs module for all of a product's SSIDs to share, or you can generate customized DOPTs modules for each SSID.

## Using a Single Options Module

If the DB2 subsystems are using the same product load library, they can optionally share the same options load module in that library. If you generate only one options module for the load library, users must override the options that relate to a specific DB2 subsystem at the beginning of a session for each product. These parameters are saved in the user's profile and are preserved across ISPF sessions.

## Using Multiple Options Modules

You can specify separate *prdDOPD1* modules for each SSID by using a unique name for each module. The installation system panels prompt you for the names, and you can assign names that identify the SSIDs on which you are installing the product.

You do not need to specify different plan names or object names for subsequent products or SSID systems. When you start the product through the installation system's ISPF interface, the unique name of the DOPTs module for each SSID is passed to the product.

Unlike the other DOPTs parameters, the plan names are used directly by the product. If you must specify different plan-name values for each subsystem, you need multiple DOPTs modules.

## Using the Product Options File

A parameter in the DOPTS module, POFDS, specifies an 80-character sequential file. This file, the product options file (POF), contains parameters and values for the JCL Generation options. The POF is built during the installation of the products. The file is located in the *HLQ.CNTL* data set. When you install the products, only one POF is created. This POF, referred to as the initial POF, is initialized and populated with the default ISPF variables and values from the installation panels. This POF is shared among several products, if those products are installed at the same time.

**Note:** The POF is generated in the JCL only if you invoke the Install System JCL Generation File Information panel or the Install System JCL Generation File Review panel. If you regenerate the JCL to a new partitioned data set for a reason other than to edit the POF, then you must invoke the Install System JCL Generation File Review panel to create a POF in the new JCL data set.



With the POF, products are configured to use the same application ID (or profile) at installation. This single application ID enables the JCL Generation options to be shared among the Administrative products. Thus, when you specify an option for generating JCL in one product, your selection applies to all the products. Although BMC Software recommends that you use a single shared application ID, you can choose to use individual product application IDs on the BMCDB2PR panel.

## Specifying the Product Identifiers

During installation, you can specify names for synonym qualifiers, collection IDs, database names, and creator names. For CATALOG MANAGER, you can also specify the name of the command module.

### Specifying Synonym Qualifiers

When you install a product, you can specify a synonym qualifier to own all the product's synonyms. Each BMC Software product that accesses DB2 tables uses its own set of synonym names to access its own DB2 tables and the DB2 catalog tables. These synonyms are created by the installation system.

When the BMC Software products run, the owner of the synonyms is obtained from the QUALIFIER value of the processing plan. When the owner is known, the object to which the synonym applies is also known.

When you specify a synonym qualifier, select one of the following options:

- Select NEW status if the qualifier is currently not in use by any other BMC Software product in the target DB2 subsystem.
- Select USED/REUSE status if the BMC Software product is currently using the qualifier, but this usage can be replaced.

For example, if you previously installed a BMC Software product with a qualifier of ALU33D and want to install a new release of the same product using the same qualifier, select USED/REUSE. Synonyms referencing the old environment are dropped so that synonyms referencing the new environment can be created.

**Warning!** Reusing existing qualifiers invalidates processing of the product release that is already installed.

Synonym qualifiers use the following conventions:

- *prdvrmy* (CATALOG MANAGER and DASD MANAGER PLUS)
- *prdvrmcy* (ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER)

Table 2-4 lists the variables for the synonym qualifier.

**Table 2-4**      **Synonym Qualifier Variables**

Variable	Represents
<i>prd</i>	product code
<i>v</i>	version level
<i>r</i>	release level
<i>m</i>	maintenance level
<i>c</i>	exploited DB2 version (E=6.1, and F=7.1 or later)
<i>y</i>	access type (D=direct, I=indirect)

Table 2-5 lists the default values for the synonym qualifier.

**Table 2-5**      **Synonym Qualifier Defaults**

Product	Default
ALTER	ALUvrmcD
CATALOG MANAGER	ACTvrmD
CHANGE MANAGER	ACMvrmcD
DASD MANAGER PLUS	ASUvrmD

**Note:** The access type for DASD MANAGER PLUS must be direct (D).

Table 2-6 shows examples of the synonym qualifiers.

**Table 2-6**      **Examples of Synonym Qualifiers**

Example	Description
ALU731FD	ALTER 7.3.01 DB2 version 7 direct access
ALU731FI	ALTER 7.3.01 DB2 version 7 indirect access
ACT731D	CATALOG MANAGER 7.3.01 direct access

## Specifying Collection IDs

Collection IDs use the following conventions:

- *prdvrmc\_y\_MAIN* (ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER)
- *prdvrm\_y\_#\_MAIN* (CATALOG MANAGER indirect access)
- *prdvrm\_y\_MAIN* (CATALOG MANAGER and DASD MANAGER PLUS direct access)

Table 2-7 lists the variables for the collection IDs.

**Table 2-7**      **Collection ID Variables**

Variable	Represents
<i>prd</i>	product code
<i>v</i>	version level
<i>r</i>	release level
<i>m</i>	maintenance level
<i>c</i>	exploited DB2 version (E=6.1, and F=7.1 or later)
<i>y</i>	access (D=direct, I=indirect)
<i>#</i>	a unique qualifier for the indirect catalog on that subsystem

**Note:** The access type for DASD MANAGER PLUS must be direct (D).

Table 2-8 lists the default values for the collection IDs.

**Table 2-8**      **Collection ID Defaults**

Product	Default
ALTER	ALUvrmc_D_MAIN
ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER Server	ACVvrm_D_MAIN
CATALOG MANAGER	ACTvrm_D_MAIN
CHANGE MANAGER	ACMvrmc_D_MAIN
DASD MANAGER PLUS	ASUvrm_D_MAIN

**Note:** To enable the MAINVIEW® for DB2 product to access CATALOG MANAGER functionality on multiple subsystems, ensure that the collection ID for CATALOG MANAGER is the same on each subsystem.

Table 2-9 shows examples of collection IDs.

**Table 2-9 Examples of Collection IDs**

Example	Description
ACT731_I_1_MAIN	CATALOG MANAGER 7.3.01 indirect access, first instance of indirection
ACM731F_D_MAIN	CHANGE MANAGER 7.3.01 DB2 version 7 direct access
ASU620_D_MAIN	DASD MANAGER PLUS 6.2.00 direct access

## Specifying Collection Nicknames

With CATALOG MANAGER, you can have more than one indirect catalog. Each indirect catalog requires a unique collection ID. You can assign a meaningful “nickname” to the collection ID. This nickname provides CATALOG MANAGER users with easy-to-remember names of collections.

Table 2-10 shows an example of collection IDs that are on the test system DB2T that access indirect copies of production systems DB2P1 and DB2P2, and the corresponding nicknames that could be used.

**Table 2-10 Examples of Collection Nicknames**

Collection ID	Collection Nickname
ACT721_I_1_MAIN	DB2P1I
ACT721_I_2_MAIN	DB2P2I

The nickname can be up to 13 characters long and cannot contain any blanks.

## Specifying Database and Creator Names

Because the Administrative products are DB2 applications, they use DB2 objects and data structures. The product database and creator names use the following conventions:

- *BMCppvrc* (ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER)
- *BMCprdvr* (CATALOG MANAGER and DASD MANAGER PLUS)

Table 2-11 lists the variables for the database and creator names.

**Table 2-11 Database and Creator Name Variables**

Variable	Represents
<i>pp</i> or <i>prd</i>	product code
<i>v</i>	version level
<i>r</i>	release level
<i>c</i>	exploited DB2 version (E=6.1, and F=7.1 or later)

Table 2-12 lists the default values for the database and creator name.

**Table 2-12 Database and Creator Name Defaults**

Product	Default
ALTER	BMCAL <i>vr</i> c
CATALOG MANAGER	BMCACT <i>vr</i>
CHANGE MANAGER	BMCCM <i>vr</i> c
DASD MANAGER PLUS	BMCASU <i>vr</i>

## Specifying the Command Module for CATALOG MANAGER

CATALOG MANAGER defines the table of commands that you can use in a command module. The default name of the module is ACTCOMND. BMC Software also enables you to create a custom or user-specified command module. The name of the module can be a maximum of eight characters.

If you install CATALOG MANAGER on multiple subsystems, and if you want to have commands that are unique to the subsystem, you must use a separate command module for each subsystem.

## Generating and Running Customization JCL

---

**Summary:** After you specify values for the basic customization options, you are ready to generate and run customization batch jobs for the BMC Software products that you are installing.

This procedure describes how to generate and run the product customization JCL.

---

### Before You Begin

Before you use the OS/390 and z/OS Installer to generate the customization JCL, complete the following tasks:

- Unload and install the product files, as instructed in the *OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide*.
- Specify values for default options and product identifiers, as instructed in “Specifying Customization Options” on page 2-3.

### To Generate and Run the Customization JCL

**Step 1** From the Final Tasks panel of the installation system, select **JCL Generation**.

**Step 2** In the JCL Generation Option panel, select **Generate install JCL in HLO.JCL**.

**Note:** If you specify the **Skip generation process and display the next panel** option, no customization batch jobs are created. You can return to this panel later to generate the customization jobs.

**Step 3** Press **Enter** to generate the batch jobs.

The installation system generates the batch job streams that customize the products. If customization batch jobs already exist in the specified data set, they are overwritten. The status of the JCL generation is updated on the panel as it occurs.

**Step 4** After all the required jobs are generated, press **Enter** to display the list of generated jobs.

- Step 5** Review the appropriate documentation for additional customization requirements.

Some products and circumstances have specific requirements for submitting the customization batch jobs. Refer to the following sources to determine the requirements for each product that you are customizing:

- the \$C00DOC member of the customization batch jobs
- release notes, flashes, and technical bulletins that are distributed with the products
- the subsequent chapters of this book

- Step 6** Review the jobs that are listed in Table 2-13 that the installation system generated in your *HLQ*.JCL library. You can modify the JCL, if necessary, but read any comments in the JCL before you make any modifications.

**Table 2-13** Generated Jobs for Customizing the Products

JCL Member	Description
\$C10VSAM	defines the VSAM message data sets that are required for the products that you have selected for installation
\$C30DOPT	creates and assembles the default options modules for the products that you have selected for this installation
\$C35BNDI	binds the installation plan that is needed to install DB2 products
\$C40INST	runs a series of worklists to create the DB2 environment for the products that you have selected for this installation
\$C45COMD	assembles the CATALOG MANAGER command table
\$C45COPY	copies customized members from <i>HLQ</i> .JCL and members from <i>HLQ</i> .INSTALL to the product data sets
\$C57LDTB	loads the CATALOG MANAGER utility profile tables

Some of these jobs may not be generated for your product. When you are satisfied that the jobs are correct, proceed to the next step.

- Step 7** Submit the jobs in the order that is listed in Table 2-13 or for the particular conditions under which you are installing the product.

**Note:** Return codes greater than 0 are specific to the installation job that is run and the products that are referenced. Refer to the comment block near the beginning of each installation job and its members for information about return codes greater than 0.

You might receive a return code 4 during the bind steps when installing some products on various DB2 versions. Refer to the comment block near the beginning of members *prdINIT6* (where *prd* is the product code) for information about return codes greater than 0.

**Step 8** Press END to exit.



## Reusing BMC Software Objects for New Releases

---

**Summary:** You can install a new release and then copy the data from the old release to the new release, using identical DB2 object names (for example, database and table names). To use your existing DB2 object names for a new release of BMC Software products, you must change the sequence in which the installation jobs are executed by following this procedure. An example job listing is provided in Figure 2-1 on page 2-16.

If you are following the standard procedure in which new BMC Software DB2 objects are created for the new release, you do not need to follow this resequencing procedure.

---

**Warning!** Using the same object names for new releases is not recommended because it replaces your current DB2 structures.

- Step 1** When the Object/Storage Verification panel prompts you, select the option to migrate data.
- Step 2** Change the DB2 object names of the BMC Software product to your naming conventions.
- Step 3** After you generate the installation batch jobs, run all the jobs that are listed before `$xnnINST`.
- Step 4** Run the first `$xnnMIG` job to unload the data from the current DB2 databases.
- Step 5** Drop the current DB2 databases for the BMC Software product, using the drop job from the previous install JCL.
- Step 6** Resume installation with job `$xnnBNDI` (to bind the install plan just freed) until you get to the first `$xnnMIG` job.
- Step 7** Run the second `$xnnMIG` job to load the data into the new tables.
- Step 8** Run the remaining jobs, starting with `$xnnCOPY` and ending just before the drop job.

**Warning!** Do not run `#D98DROP`, `#D99DLTE`, or `#D99DVSM` until you are ready to uninstall the product.

**Figure 2-1 Sample Installation Batch Jobs**

EDIT BMC.Vvrm.DB2T.JCL			Row 00001 of 00070		
Command ==>			Scroll ==> PAGE		
	Name	Prompt	Size	Changed	Init
	. \$B00DOC	<div>Step 3</div>	51	2003/10/15 07:33:08	51
	. \$B04DCMP		124	2003/10/15 07:33:59	124
	. \$B05UNLD		1033	2003/10/15 07:35:40	1033
	. \$C00DOC		181	2003/10/15 16:01:37	181
	. \$C10VSAM		51	2003/10/15 16:01:39	51
	. \$C30DOPT	<div>Step 6</div>	404	2003/10/15 16:01:54	404
	. \$C35BNDI		43	2003/10/15 16:01:56	43
	. \$C40INST		381	2003/10/15 16:05:59	381
	. \$C55ICPY		210	2003/10/15 16:02:53	210
	. \$C57LDTB	<div>Step 4</div>	254	2003/10/15 16:01:56	254
	. \$C65MIG		84	2003/10/15 16:02:51	84
<div>Step 7</div>	. \$C66MIG	<div>Step 8</div>	102	2003/10/15 16:02:54	102
	. \$C67COPY		121	2003/10/15 16:02:58	121
	. \$C70IVP		557	2003/10/15 16:01:56	557
	. \$C97DOC		15	2003/10/15 16:01:58	15
	. #D98DROP		675	2003/10/15 16:03:34	675
	. #D99DLTE		68	2003/10/15 07:33:21	68
	. #D99DVSM		33	2003/10/15 16:03:35	33

---

## Customizing XIM

---

**Summary:** The customization process constructs the XIM started task procedure and the XIM initiator procedure in the *HLQ.JCL* data set. Customizing XIM involves copying these procedures into the appropriate libraries.

---

### Before You Begin

Complete the following tasks before you perform these additional customization tasks:

- Submit all applicable installation jobs. See “Generating and Running Customization JCL” on page 2-12.
- Apply the appropriate product fixes.

### To Customize XIM

**Step 1** Copy the XIM started task procedure from the *HLQ.JCL* data set into a procedure library that is recognized by your JES subsystem.

**Note:** The default name of the XIM started task procedure in the *HLQ.JCL* data set is *XIMACM*.

**Step 2** Specify the SUFFIX parameter (within the XIM started task procedure) that XIM receives as part of the XIM parameter options member name.

The SUFFIX parameter identifies the last one to five characters of a partitioned data set (PDS) member that begins with the character string XIM (*XIMxxxxx*).

**Step 3** Copy the XIM initiator procedure from the *HLQ.JCL* data set into a procedure library that is recognized by your JES system.

**Note:** The default name of the XIM initiator procedure in the *HLQ.JCL* data set is either the name that you entered as the value for the INIT\_PROC option or the default of *XIMACMI*.

You do not need to specify a valid SSID parameter within the XIM initiator procedure. XIM generates this value internally.

Do not include a STEPLIB DD statement in your initiator procedure. If you include this statement, you can encounter abends in the initiator.

## Using Catalog Indirection

After you install and customize the Administrative products, you can implement catalog indirection for ALTER, CATALOG MANAGER, or CHANGE MANAGER. Catalog indirection is an optional method of implementing and maintaining these products. To accomplish catalog indirection, the products use synonyms that point either to a copy of the DB2 catalog or to user-created views of the catalog.

Catalog indirection allows products to query the DB2 catalog indirectly. Catalog indirection applies only to catalog queries. Any action that changes information in the catalog must operate on the actual catalog, not on a view of the catalog or a copy of the catalog. For example, when you issue a command through CATALOG MANAGER to update the catalog, the action affects the actual catalog. The Execution Monitor in ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER also runs a worklist against the actual catalog. In contrast, the Analysis component in ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER can use either the actual catalog or catalog indirection when it creates worklists.

General points about catalog indirection are as follows:

- The Administrative products are set up to access the DB2 catalog directly. After the installation, you can use the installation system to implement and maintain catalog indirection.
- The synonyms that reference the DB2 catalog are hardcoded in the products. You direct the synonyms to the catalog, copy, or views during installation by providing information on the installation system panels.
- You can use the same copy or view of the catalog for all the products, or you can implement catalog indirection through separate copies or views for each product.
- Catalog indirection can provide the following benefits:
  - reduces contention for the DB2 catalog
  - provides an additional level of security for sensitive data in the catalog

**Note:** Although you can implement a view of a copy of the catalog and simultaneously reap both benefits of catalog indirection, this approach is extremely complex to maintain and is not recommended.

## Implementing and Maintaining Catalog Indirection

Successful implementation of catalog indirection requires an in-depth understanding of the DB2 environment and its catalog structure, and experience in maintaining DB2 applications. Each method of implementing catalog indirection should be managed as if catalog indirection were a DB2 application. Test the products fully without catalog indirection before you implement catalog indirection.

### Implementing Catalog Indirection

You can install catalog indirection for one or more of the products on one DB2 subsystem at a time. When you implement catalog indirection, the products use the existing product libraries and support the use of your own VSAM data sets (which requires the Advanced mode). Optionally, the products can create a copy of the DB2 catalog by using the CREATE LIKE DDL syntax and create views of the DB2 catalog.

### Maintaining Catalog Indirection

You can apply maintenance to catalog indirection on one or more products on one DB2 subsystem at a time. You should perform maintenance if you have an existing copy or view of the DB2 catalog and have performed a new installation of the products.

## Specifying the Default Options Module

When a product runs, it uses its own DOPTs module that was built during installation. The BMCDB2 CLIST allocates the DOPTs module when you start the product. When accessing the DB2 catalog with catalog indirection, the BMCDB2 CLIST allocates an indirect DOPTs module. This *indirect* DOPTs module must have a different name than the *direct* DOPTs module that was previously built.

The DOPTs module, the plan and collection IDs, and the synonym qualifier are all crucial for the implementation of catalog indirection. The qualifier of the plan and the packages is used to resolve synonyms that point to either a view of the DB2 catalog or a copy of the DB2 catalog, depending on the method of implementation. You should understand their use and interaction before you implement catalog indirection.

**Note:** To help maintain catalog indirection, follow the naming conventions that follow and that are described in “Specifying the Product Identifiers” on page 2-7. Naming conventions enable you to look at the DOPTs module or allocated plan and determine whether indirect access or direct access is being used.

The DOPTs module uses the convention *prdDOPyz*. Table 2-14 describes the variables for the DOPTs module.

**Table 2-14 DOPTs Module Variables**

Variable	Represents
<i>prd</i>	product code
<i>y</i>	access type (D=direct, I=indirect)
<i>z</i>	SSID indicator

Table 2-15 shows examples of DOPTs modules.

**Table 2-15 Examples of DOPTs Modules**

Example	Description
ALUDOPDT	ALTER direct access test subsystem
ALUDOPIT	ALTER indirect access test subsystem

Unlike ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER, CATALOG MANAGER is designed to use a single default options (DOPTs) module for both direct and indirect access. The BMCDB2 CLIST allocates the same DOPTs module and thus the same plan for direct access and indirect access. The plan that is accessed contains two distinct collection IDs that are used to access direct or indirect catalogs. To implement a single DOPTs module, the installation dialog panels must process the CATALOG MANAGER DOPTs module differently from the DOPTs module of ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER.

The processing differences for CATALOG MANAGER are described as follows:

- During installation of catalog indirection, the installation dialog panel prompts you for the creator of the CATALOG MANAGER indirect synonyms, for the indirect collection ID, and for the name of the direct options module. All other DOPTs module information has been previously gathered.
- During the batch JCL assembly step, the DOPTs module assembly step disassembles the existing DOPTs, applies the indirect synonym creator that you specified in the preceding step, and reassembles and links the DOPTs module using the same name. The step also resolves the indirect collection ID that is located in a subsequent BIND package step. Because the installation dialog panel does not prompt you for this information, it must obtain the information from the existing DOPTs module by disassembling it.

**Note:** If at any time you regenerate the catalog indirect JCL for CATALOG MANAGER and then resume the installation at a step later than the DOPTs module assembly step, the BINDs for the packages will fail because the value of the indirect collection ID is unresolved. You must run the DOPTs assembly step to resolve this value.

## Specifying Synonym Qualifiers

If you are applying maintenance to catalog indirection, you must specify the synonym qualifier that is currently the owner of the products' synonyms. This qualifier must be the qualifier that you supplied when you originally installed catalog indirection for the products. The installation system sets the qualifier status to USED/REUSE automatically. Maintenance for catalog indirection does not create any new DB2 objects, but it does re-create the existing synonyms. Because the installation system sets the qualifier status to USED/REUSE automatically, the synonyms are dropped and then re-created.

## Using a Copy of the Catalog

Maintaining a copy of the catalog uses additional DASD space. The amount of space that is required equals the size of your DB2 catalog and can vary greatly, depending on your DB2 system.

You need to update the copy of the catalog on a timely basis to keep it accurate. Running the copy job does not have a significant impact on catalog contention but does consume other system resources. How often you should run the job depends on the amount of catalog change activity in your DB2 system and the type of users who are restricted to accessing a copy. A high-activity data center might need to run the job several times a day.

In addition, the job that updates the catalog copy prevents users from accessing the current copy of the catalog while the job runs. This restriction might have a negative impact on the products if you must run the copy job during a high-activity period.

**Note:** The SEARCH command in CATALOG MANAGER uses dynamic structured query language (SQL). To enable the SEARCH command to work on the copy of the catalog that catalog indirection uses, either run GRANT SELECT ON TABLE statements or bind with Dynamic Rules (BIND) on the main plan.

## Using a Copy of the Catalog to Reduce Catalog Contention

Contention for the DB2 catalog can be a problem for data centers that have high DB2 transaction rates. Because the products require frequent access to the DB2 catalog, they can contribute to catalog contention.

To improve performance by reducing catalog contention, you can perform the following actions:

- Direct the information queries from specific groups of users to a recent copy of the DB2 catalog. The products also perform better because they do not have to compete with other applications for DB2 catalog information.
- Tune the copy of the catalog.
- Add your own indexes to the copy of the catalog.
- Reorganize the tables or table spaces of the copy of the catalog.

For more information about performance considerations, see “Creating Indexes to Improve Performance” on page 3-5.

For catalog indirection to be effective, you must ensure that the copy of the catalog reflects the status of the actual catalog. The degree of accuracy that is required depends on the types of users who are involved and the purpose of their information queries. The job that updates the catalog copy temporarily halts all information queries made through the copy.



## Using a View of the Catalog

To control access to sensitive information in your catalog tables, you must design a view or a set of views on your system catalog that achieves the control that you need. To define the view that a particular catalog indirection access method uses, you must edit the CREATE VIEW statements in the BMCCVIEW member that the installation system generated. You must also add to the BMCCVIEW member the DML search criteria that limits access to selected rows of the catalog.

You must manage the authorizations to the groups of users who are allowed to access the DB2 catalog through a view or views. When a user attempts to access catalog information that a view filters out, an SQL error occurs.

## Using a View of the Catalog to Control Catalog Access

Data centers with highly sensitive information might need to restrict how users access specific tables in the DB2 catalog. To restrict catalog access, you can implement catalog indirection through one or more user-created views that filter out specified columns within the DB2 catalog tables. You can allow specific user groups to use the products in a limited fashion without compromising the security of the data or data structures that are defined in the catalog tables.

For example, assume that a user uses the products to perform an activity that changes information in the DB2 catalog. The user then completes a task that performs an information query against the copy of the catalog. In this case, it might seem that the first activity did not succeed. However, if you implement catalog indirection only for users who are already restricted to information-only queries, this problem might not occur. For example, you could implement catalog indirection for those ALTER users who are not allowed to run the Execution Monitor.

## Installing Catalog Indirection

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to install catalog indirection for ALTER, CATALOG MANAGER, or CHANGE MANAGER.

---

**Step 1** From the installation system Main Menu, select **Additional Options**.

The Additional Options Menu lists additional tasks and installations that you can perform.

**Step 2** Press **Enter**.

**Step 3** On the Additional Options Menu, select **Additional Installs**.

**Step 4** Press **Enter**.

The Administrative Products for DB2 Other Systems panel lists additional options for installation.

**Step 5** On the Administrative Products for DB2 Other Systems panel, select **Catalog Indirection**.

**Step 6** Press **Enter**.

The installation system presents a series of panels that request information related to implementing catalog indirection.

**Step 7** If necessary, modify the choices as instructed on each panel. When you are satisfied with the choices, press **Enter**.

The installation system uses a <--- **C-I Parm** indicator to mark values that must be different from the direct access specification. When you see this indicator, supply unique names.

**Step 8** In the JCL Generation Option panel, select **Generate install JCL in HLQ.JCL**.

**Note:** If you specify the **Skip generation process and display the next panel** option, no customization batch jobs are created. You can return to this panel later to generate the customization jobs.

**Step 9** Press **Enter** to generate the batch jobs.

The installation system generates the batch job streams that customize the products. If customization batch jobs already exist in the specified data set, they are overwritten. The status of the JCL generation is updated on the panel as it occurs.

- Step 10** After all the required jobs are generated, press **Enter** to display the list of generated jobs.
- Step 11** Review the jobs that the installation system generated in your *HLQ.JCL* library. You can modify the JCL, if necessary, but read any comments in the JCL before you make any modifications.
- Step 12** Submit the jobs.
- Step 13** Press END to exit.

### Where to Go from Here

After you install catalog indirection, see “Performing Post-Installation Tasks for the Administrative Products” on page 3-3 for information about how to perform post-installation tasks for catalog indirection.

## Installing Products on Multiple DB2 Subsystems

The installation system enables you to *clone* the Administrative products to other DB2 subsystems. To clone the products, you perform a subsequent installation for an SSID or multiple SSIDs.

Before you perform an SSID or multiple SSID installation, review the installation considerations described in “Installing the Administrative Products on Additional and Multiple DB2 Subsystems” on page 1-15.

## Performing an SSID Installation

---

**Summary:** The SSID installation process duplicates the installation of the selected products for each additional DB2 subsystem. This duplication involves assembling default options, creating tables and synonyms, and binding plans on the additional DB2 subsystems.

This procedure describes how to perform a subsequent installation for an SSID.

---

### Before You Begin

Use the standard installation path to install the selected product on a single DB2 subsystem.

If you choose not to reuse the repository profile that you specified in the standard installation path, you must perform the following steps:

**Step 1** From the installation system Main Menu, select **Manage Repository/Profile**.

**Step 1** Press **Enter**.

The Repository/Profile Options panel is displayed.

**Step 2** Specify the options for the profile.

**2.A** Specify a new **Repository Profile ID**.

**2.B** Type **Y** to manage profiles.

**2.C** Press **Enter**.

The Repository Listing panel is displayed.

**Step 3** Type **C**, which indicates the profile type, adjacent to the profile that you used to customize a product in the standard installation path.

The Copy Install Profile panel is displayed.

**Step 4** Specify the name of a fully-qualified profile data set, with PROF as the rightmost qualifier, for example, specify *HLQ.T1SV1312.V721PROF* as the data set name.

**Step 5** Press **Enter**.

**Step 6** Press **END** until the installation system Main Menu is displayed.

**To Perform an SSID Installation**

**Step 1** From the installation system Main Menu, select **User Options**.

**Step 2** Press **Enter**.

The User Options panel lists options for installing the products.

**Step 3** Select **Advanced** and **Automatic Navigation Mode**.

**Step 4** Specify a new installation JCL data set.

**Step 5** Press **Enter**.

**Step 6** From the installation system Main Menu, select **Additional Options**.

The Additional Options Menu lists additional tasks and installations that you can perform.

**Step 7** Press **Enter**.

**Step 8** From the Additional Options Menu, select **Product Cloning**.

**Step 9** Press **Enter**.

The Propagation Menu lists options for installing the products on additional SSIDs.

**Step 10** From the Propagation Menu, select **SSID Install**.

**Step 11** Press **Enter**.

**Step 12** When you are prompted, supply the requested information or verify the displayed information. To continue, press **Enter**.

When you have completed the panels, the Final Tasks panel is displayed.

**Step 13** Review your SSID installation choices.

**13.A** From the installation system Final Tasks panel, select **Review Customization**.

**13.B** Press **Enter**.

**13.C** If necessary, modify the choices as instructed on each panel. When you are satisfied, press **Enter** to continue.

## **Where to Go from Here**

After you specify the options for the SSID installation, generate and run the customization JCL. For information, see “Generating and Running Customization JCL” on page 2-12.

## Performing an MSSID Installation

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to perform an MSSID installation for several DB2 subsystems.

---

### Before You Begin

Use the standard installation path to install the selected product on a single DB2 subsystem.

### To Perform an MSSID Installation

**Step 1** From the installation system Main Menu, select **Additional Options**.

The Additional Options Menu lists additional tasks and installations that you can perform.

**Step 2** Press **Enter**.

**Step 3** From the Additional Options Menu, select **Product Cloning**.

**Step 4** Press **Enter**.

The Propagation Menu lists options for installing the products on additional SSIDs.

**Step 5** From the Propagation Menu, select **Multiple SSID Install**.

**Step 6** Press **Enter**.

**Step 7** When you are prompted, supply the requested information or verify the displayed information. To continue, press **Enter**.

**Step 8** From the Create Model Data Set panel, select **Generate Model Data set**.

**Step 9** Press **Enter**.

The installation system generates batch job streams that model a data set. If customization batch jobs already exist in the specified data set, they are overwritten. The status of the model generation is updated on the panel as it occurs.

After all the required jobs are generated, the SSID Optional Installation panels are displayed.

**Step 10** When you are prompted, supply the requested information or verify the displayed information for the SSIDs. To continue, press **Enter**.

**Step 11** From the JCL Generation Option panel, select **Generate install JCL**.

**Step 12** Press **Enter** to generate the jobs.

The installation system generates the batch job streams that customize the products. If customization batch jobs already exist in the specified data set, they are overwritten. The status of the JCL generation is updated on the panel as it occurs.

**Step 13** After all the required jobs are generated, press **Enter** to display the list of generated jobs.

**Step 14** Review the jobs that the installation system generated in your *HLQ*.JCL library. You can modify the JCL, if necessary, but read any comments in the JCL before you make any modifications. When you are satisfied that the jobs are correct, proceed to the next step.

**Step 15** Submit the jobs.

**Note:** Return codes greater than 0 are specific to the installation job that is run and the products that are referenced. Refer to the comment block near the beginning of each installation job and its members for information about return codes greater than 0.

You might receive a return code 4 during the bind steps when installing some products on various DB2 versions. Refer to the comment block near the beginning of members *prdINIT6* (where *prd* is the product code) for information about return codes greater than 0.

**Step 16** Press END to exit.



# Upgrading ALTER to CHANGE MANAGER

If you already have ALTER installed, you can upgrade to CHANGE MANAGER in one of the following ways:

- To upgrade to CHANGE MANAGER without migrating your existing data in ALTER, install CHANGE MANAGER.
- To upgrade to CHANGE MANAGER and to migrate your existing data from ALTER to CHANGE MANAGER, follow the instructions in the procedure “Migrating Data From ALTER to CHANGE MANAGER” on page 2-32.

## Migrating Data From ALTER to CHANGE MANAGER

---

**Summary:** This task describes how you can migrate data from an existing ALTER product environment to the CHANGE MANAGER product environment.

---

### To Install CHANGE MANAGER and Build an Image Copy Job

- Step 1** To install CHANGE MANAGER and to build a valid \$C67COPY image copy job, from the installation system Main Menu, select **Product Customization**.
- Step 2** Press **Enter**.
- 2.A** From the Install System Previous Release of Product panel, select an installed release level of CHANGE MANAGER.
- Note:** Do not select NONE.
- 2.B** From the Install System CHANGE MANAGER Object/Storage Verification panel, type / to **Select to migrate data from Change Manager v.r.**
- 2.C** From the Install System CHANGE MANAGER Migration Verification panel, remove the asterisk (\*) from the **Creator Name**. The **Creator Name** can be any name.
- Step 3** From the installation system Final Tasks panel, select **JCL Generation**.
- Step 4** In the JCL Generation Option panel, select **Generate customization batch jobs in the installation JCL data set**.
- Note:** If you specify **Skip batch-job generation and display the next panel**, no customization batch jobs are created. You can return to this panel later to generate the customization jobs.
- Step 5** Press **Enter** to generate the batch jobs.
- The installation system generates the batch job streams that customize the products. If customization batch jobs already exist in the specified data set, they are overwritten. The status of the JCL generation is updated on the panel as it occurs.
- Step 6** After all the required jobs are generated, press **Enter** to display the list of generated jobs.

- Step 7** Run all the installation jobs prior to \$C65MIG, \$C66MIG, and \$C67COPY. Do not run \$C65MIG, \$C66MIG, and \$C67COPY.
- Step 8** Press **END** to exit.

### To Build Valid Data Migration Jobs

- Step 1** To build the valid \$C65MIG and \$C66MIG data migration jobs, from the installation system Main Menu, select **Product Customization**.
- Step 2** Press **Enter**.
- 2.A** From the Install System Previous Release of Product panel, select the current installed release level for ALTER.
- 2.B** From the Install System ALTER Object/Storage Verification panel, perform the following actions:
1. Type the **Database Name** and the **Creator Name** that you used in Step 1 during the CHANGE MANAGER installation.
  2. Type / to **Select to migrate data from ALTER v.r.**
- 2.C** From the Install System ALTER Migration Table Verification panel, type the **Creator Name** for the existing ALTER tables.
- Step 3** From the installation system Final Tasks panel, select **JCL Generation**.
- Step 4** In the JCL Generation Option panel, select **Generate customization batch jobs in the installation JCL data set**.
- Note:** If you specify **Skip batch-job generation and display the next panel**, no customization batch jobs are created. You can return to this panel later to generate the customization jobs.
- Step 5** Press **Enter** to generate the batch jobs.
- The installation system generates the batch job streams that customize the products. If customization batch jobs already exist in the specified data set, they are overwritten. The status of the JCL generation is updated on the panel as it occurs.
- Step 6** After all the required jobs are generated, press **Enter** to display the list of generated jobs.

**Step 7** Run only the \$C65MIG and \$C66MIG installation jobs.

**Step 8** Press END to exit.

### To Complete the Migration

Run the \$C67COPY installation job that was created when you installed CHANGE MANAGER.

### To Fallback to ALTER

Run the #D98DROP, #D99DLTE, and #D99DVSM installation jobs that were created when you installed CHANGE MANAGER.

**Warning!** Any data that you added while you had CHANGE MANAGER installed will be lost when you run the #D98DROP, #D99DLTE, and #D99DVSM installation jobs.

## Where to Go from Here

After you complete the tasks in this chapter, you have completed the customization for the products that you selected. You can now perform post-installation tasks that are listed in Table 2-16.

**Table 2-16 Additional Tasks**

Task	Where to Go
perform post-installation tasks for the Administrative products	"Performing Post-Installation Tasks for the Administrative Products" on page 3-3
perform post-installation tasks for the BMC Admin Server	"Performing Post-installation Tasks for the BMC Admin Server" on page 4-3
migrate to a different version of DB2	Appendix G, "Moving to a Different Version of DB2"

---

# Chapter 3 Performing Post-Installation Tasks for the Administrative Products

This chapter presents the following topics:

Performing Post-Installation Tasks for the Administrative Products . . . .	3-3
Applying Fixes and Resolutions . . . . .	3-3
Creating Indexes to Improve Performance . . . . .	3-5
Creating Indexes on the DB2 Catalog Tables . . . . .	3-6
Creating Indexes on Copies of the DB2 Catalog Tables . . . . .	3-7
Verifying Product Authorization . . . . .	3-7
Granting User Authorization for XIM . . . . .	3-8
Controlling Access to Plans, Objects, and Features . . . . .	3-8
Restricting Access to ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER Plans . . .	3-10
Restricting Access to ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER Objects .	3-11
Restricting Access to the Worklist Parallelism Feature . . . . .	3-11
Controlling the Execution of XIM . . . . .	3-13
Restricting Access to CATALOG MANAGER Plans . . . . .	3-19
Providing Access to Catalog Information by Specifying Dynamic SQL or Static SQL . . . . .	3-20
Restricting Access to DASD MANAGER PLUS Plans . . . . .	3-21
Restricting Access to the Execution Component Plans . . . . .	3-22
Executing Worklists in CATALOG MANAGER . . . . .	3-23
Implementing Product Features . . . . .	3-24
Implementing the CHANGE MANAGER Catalog to Catalog Comparison Feature . . . . .	3-24
Enabling the Use of the DASD MANAGER PLUS INFOBMC Command in CHANGE MANAGER . . . . .	3-27
Implementing the QMF Report Feature in DASD MANAGER PLUS .	3-28
Enabling Use of Stored Procedures in CATALOG MANAGER . . . .	3-29
Upgrading Shared Components . . . . .	3-31

---

Binding a Product to Shared Components .....	3-32
Editing and Compiling SLIBs.....	3-33
Specifying Generation Data Groups.....	3-35
Enabling Interaction among the Administrative Products and BMC Software Utility Products .....	3-36
Enabling Interaction between ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER and BMC Software Utilities.....	3-37
Enabling Interaction between CATALOG MANAGER and BMC Software Utilities.....	3-39
Enabling Interaction between DASD MANAGER PLUS and BMC Software Utilities.....	3-41
Modifying the BMCDB2PR Panel .....	3-44
Adding Products to the BMCDB2PR Panel .....	3-45
Modifying and Validating the DB2 Catalog Access Option on the BMCDB2PR Panel .....	3-47
Working with CLISTs .....	3-48
Enabling the Implicit Execution of CLISTs .....	3-49
Creating a User Message File .....	3-50
Editing the BMCDB2 CLIST .....	3-51
Setting the Variables in the BMCDB2 CLIST .....	3-52
Modifying the Control Table in the BMCDB2 CLIST.....	3-53
Enabling the Use of DASD MANAGER PLUS within ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER .....	3-59
Modifying the Application ID in the BMCDB2 CLIST.....	3-60
Updating the BMCDB2 CLIST for Support of Subsequent DB2 Subsystems .....	3-62
Updating the BMCDB2 CLIST to Support Catalog Indirection ....	3-62
Specifying the Servers in the BMCDB2 CLIST.....	3-63
Prohibiting Access to CATALOG MANAGER Functions Other Than Data Editing.....	3-65
Specifying an Entry Panel in CATALOG MANAGER .....	3-67
Specifying Locking Options for Editing Data in CATALOG MANAGER 3-69	
Setting the Session Profile in CATALOG MANAGER .....	3-71
Integrating CATALOG MANAGER with SQL Explorer for DB2....	3-71
Invoking the BMCDB2 CLIST .....	3-72
Invoking the BMCDB2 Command.....	3-73
Verifying the Installation of the Administrative Products.....	3-76
Using Fast Path Navigation.....	3-77
Refreshing Values in the User Profiles .....	3-79
Refreshing DOPTs Values in the User Profile .....	3-79
Refreshing POF Values in the User Profile .....	3-80
Where to Go from Here.....	3-81

# Performing Post-Installation Tasks for the Administrative Products

After you install and customize the Administrative products, you might need to perform several additional tasks to complete and verify the installation. Table 3-1 lists the procedures that you use to complete these tasks. You perform these procedures outside the installation system dialog panels.

**Table 3-1 Post-Installation Tasks**

Procedure	Page
Apply fixes and resolutions.	3-3
Create indexes.	3-5
Verify the product authorization.	3-7
Control access to plans and objects.	3-8
Implement product features.	3-24
Upgrade shared components.	3-31
Enable interaction among the Administrative and Utility products.	3-36
Modify the BMCDB2PR panel.	3-44
Work with the CLISTs.	3-48
Invoke the BMCDB2 CLIST.	3-72
Verify the installation of the products.	3-76

## Applying Fixes and Resolutions

The Administrative products might have zaps, fixes, or resolutions for specific releases. This procedure describes the steps that you must take to download and apply product fixes and resolutions, and then verify that the fixes and resolutions have been applied.

**Step 1** Go to the Customer Support page on the BMC Software Web site at [http://www.bmc.com/support\\_home](http://www.bmc.com/support_home).

**Step 2** Log on to the page.

To log on if you are a first-time user:

- If you have purchased a product, you can request a permanent user name and password by registering at the Customer Support page.

- If you have not purchased a product, you can request a temporary user name and password from your BMC Software sales representative.

**Step 3** Click the **Search Knowledge Database** link, and then select the product name and version information.

**Step 4** Download and apply all fixes and resolutions.

**Note:** For ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER, apply the fixes and resolutions that correspond to the version, release, and maintenance level and the exploited version of DB2 that you have installed. For example, if you have version 7.3.01 of CHANGE MANAGER installed on a DB2 version 7 subsystem, apply the fixes and resolutions for the items which contain V7.3.01F in the subject line.

**Step 5** Complete the following steps to verify that the fixes and resolutions were applied for each installed product:

- In ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER:
  1. At the main menu, type **ENVI** on the **Command** line.
  2. On the Environment panel, type **MAINT** to verify which zaps and resolutions have been applied.
- In CATALOG MANAGER, on the Primary Menu panel or any list panel, type **ENVI** on the **Command** line.

In the list that is displayed, the applied fixes and resolutions appear between the “BMC Products Supported” and “Plans” sections. If the list shows no fixes or resolutions, none have been applied.

- In DASD MANAGER PLUS:
  1. At the main menu, select option **5 User Options**.
  2. Select option **4 Current environment information**.
  3. On the Environment panel, type **MAINT** to verify which zaps and resolutions have been applied.



# Creating Indexes to Improve Performance

DB2 versions 6 and later support indexes on the catalog. To improve performance, BMC Software recommends that you create indexes on the following DB2 catalog tables:

- SYSIBM.SYSCOLAUTH
- SYSIBM.SYSDBRM
- SYSIBM.SYSFIELDS
- SYSIBM.SYSFOREIGNKEYS
- SYSIBM.SYSRELS
- SYSIBM.SYSSTMT
- SYSIBM.SYSSYNONYMS
- SYSIBM.SYSTABAUTH
- SYSIBM.SYSTABLES
- SYSIBM.SYSVIEWDEP

Depending on the functionality used in a product, you might be able to create several other indexes that improve the performance of the product. The following procedures describe how to create indexes on the catalog tables, and on copies of the catalog tables (if you are using catalog indirection).

## Creating Indexes on the DB2 Catalog Tables

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to create indexes on the DB2 catalog tables.

---

- Step 1** *(optional)* To create indexes for tables in the SYSGROUP table space, perform the following:
- 1.A** Execute the AMS commands to create VSAM data sets prior to running the indexes.
  - 1.B** Uncomment the SYSVOLUMES and SYSSTOGROUP indexes.
  - 1.C** Change the VCAT name from \*\*VCATNM to the high-level qualifier that you used when you executed the AMS commands.
- Step 2** Use an AUTHID that has BIND authorization of the Administrative products packages.
- Step 3** Run RUNSTATS on the catalog.
- Step 4** REBIND the packages for the Administrative products to each SSID on which you want to improve performance. JCL to bind the packages is located in *HLQ.CNTL(XXXSSIDP)*.
- Note:** *HLQ* is the high-level qualifier that you used during installation. *XXX* is the product code (see Table 2-2 on page 2-3) and *SSID* refers to the DB2 subsystem.

---

## Creating Indexes on Copies of the DB2 Catalog Tables

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to create indexes on copies of the DB2 catalog tables. Use this procedure when you are implementing catalog indirection.

---

- Step 1** Use an AUTHID that has BIND authorization of the Administrative products packages.
- Step 2** Execute the worklist as a single step in a copy of the JCL member \$X##INST, which was used when you installed the Administrative products.
- Step 3** REBIND the packages for the Administrative products to each SSID on which you want to improve performance. JCL to bind the packages is located in *HLQ.CNTL(XXXSSIDZ)*.

**Note:** *HLQ* is the high-level qualifier that you used during installation. *XXX* is the product code (see Table 2-2 on page 2-3) and *SSID* refers to the DB2 subsystem.

## Verifying Product Authorization

You can enter your BMC Software Authorization passwords when you install the Administrative products. If you are a licensed user and have already received and entered the permanent BMC Software Authorization passwords, ensure that the appropriate authorization modules are saved and copied to the new load library after you install the products. The authorization modules are created when you add the password.

Alternatively, you can use the BMC Software Product Authorization utility to apply passwords and to change your CPU configuration. To use the Product Authorization utility, see the *OS/390 and z/OS Installer Guide*.

**Note:** You can choose not to input passwords during installation of the Database Administration solution. Before you can use the products, you must copy or input passwords into both the SME/E LOAD library and the SMP/E BBLINK library.

If you are installing UNLOAD PLUS or LOADPLUS and you are migrating data from an earlier release using UNLOAD PLUS or LOADPLUS, you must input passwords for these products before you run the migration jobs.

## Granting User Authorization for XIM

If your site uses RACF or CA-Top Secret security, you can authorize the procedures for the XIM subsystem as started tasks in the started procedures table. If your site uses CA-ACF2 security, you can authorize the procedures for the XIM subsystem as started tasks under the started task control. Table 3-2 describes authorization for XIM.

**Table 3-2 Authorizing XIM Procedures**

Product	Task
RACF or CA-Top Secret	<p>Authorize the procedures for the following subsystems as started tasks in the started procedures table:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XIM performance subsystem</li> <li>• XIM extended job entry subsystem</li> </ul> <p>If you are running RACF version 2.1 or later, you can use the STARTED class to add or modify RACF security definitions for started procedures without having to IPL the system. The STARTED class allows you to modify the security definitions dynamically through the RDEFINE, RALTER, and RLIST commands. For more information about using the STARTED class, see the <i>OS/390 Security Server (RACF) Security Administrator's Guide</i>.</p>
CA-ACF2	<p>Authorize the procedures for the following subsystems as started tasks under the started task control:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• XIM performance subsystem</li> <li>• XIM extended job entry subsystem</li> </ul> <p>See the appropriate CA-ACF2 publication for more information.</p>

## Controlling Access to Plans, Objects, and Features

Maintaining security over the functions, components, and objects of the Administrative products is an important consideration. In CHANGE MANAGER, for example, executing a worklist usually changes the definitions of your DB2 objects as they are defined in the DB2 system catalog tables. In addition, you can also change data when you perform several different kinds of tasks.

Plans that are provided with the Administrative products access the components or functions of the products. You can restrict access to these components or functions by controlling the authorization that is granted to these plans. The names of the plans vary, depending on the version and release of the product that you are using.

The plan names have the following convention:

- *prdvrmyz* (CATALOG MANAGER and DASD MANAGER PLUS)
- *ppvrmyz* (ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER)
- *prdvrmnn* (Execution component of ALTER, CHANGE MANAGER, and DASD MANAGER PLUS)

Table 3-3 lists the variables for the plan names.

**Table 3-3 Plan Name Variables**

Variable	Represents
<i>prd</i> or <i>pp</i>	product code
<i>v</i>	version level
<i>r</i>	release level
<i>m</i>	maintenance level
<i>c</i>	exploited DB2 version (E=6.1, and F=7.1 or later)
<i>y</i>	access type (D=direct, I=indirect)
<i>z</i> or <i>nn</i>	plan's function or unique plan identifier

**Note:** The access type for DASD MANAGER PLUS must be direct (D).

Table 3-4 shows examples of plan names.

**Table 3-4 Examples of Plan Names**

Example	Description
AL731FDF	ALTER 7.3.01 DB2 version 7 direct access Front End plan
AL731FIF	ALTER 7.3.01 DB2 version 7 indirect access Front End plan
ASU620DD	DASD MANAGER PLUS 6.2.00 direct access Object Definition plan

## Restricting Access to ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER Plans

Table 3-5 lists the plans that are used by the components in ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER.

**Table 3-5** ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER Plans

Plan	Name	Description
ALvrmcDA (ALTER)  CMvrmcDA (CHANGE MANAGER)	Analysis	provides users access to the Analysis component to analyze changes and to generate a worklist You cannot make actual changes to DB2 objects and data by <i>creating a worklist</i> . The Specification and Analysis plans provide a way for users to <i>request</i> and <i>analyze changes</i> . For this reason, you can usually place minimum restrictions on using Specification and Analysis.
ALvrmcDE (ALTER)  CMvrmcDE (CHANGE MANAGER)	Environment	enables users to invoke the ENVI command to review the system environment Because this plan is not accessed outside of the other components, you can usually grant PUBLIC access to this plan. This plan does not control the use of the ENV keyword with batch components.
ALvrmcDF (ALTER)  CMvrmcDF (CHANGE MANAGER)	Front End	controls access to the ISPF interface Authority to use this plan enables you to create and maintain the product's objects and perform other Front End functions. If the Distributed Data Facility (DDF) is installed, the -BIND statement for this plan adds a reference to the remote package list.
ALvrmcDI (ALTER)  CMvrmcDI (CHANGE MANAGER)	Import	provides users with the ability to import files into the Change Definition (CD) tables This plan accesses the Import component. For ALTER, it enables users to import DDL into the CD tables. For CHANGE MANAGER, it enables users to import DDL, CDL, and worklists into the CD tables.
ACVvrmDM	Display Catalog and SQL Information	displays catalog and SQL generation and execution information Access to this plan is required to use the GUI. If the DDF is installed, the -BIND statement for this plan adds a reference to the remote package list.
ALvrmcDS (ALTER)  CMvrmcDS (CHANGE MANAGER)	Specification	provides a way for users to <i>request</i> changes to database objects and data This plan accesses the Specification component. With access to Specification, users can also search and review groups of objects. Note that while Specification does not enable you to actually perform changes, it does enable you to specify changes and to view existing data structures. If the DDF is installed, the -BIND statement for this plan adds a reference to the remote package list.

Table 3-6 lists additional plans that are used by the components in CHANGE MANAGER.

**Table 3-6 CHANGE MANAGER Plans**

Plan	Name	Description
CMvrmcDB	Baseline	provides users with the ability to establish and delete baselines Because baselines (especially full-recovery baselines) contain critical information that is used for database recovery, you should restrict access to this plan to informed users.
CMvrmcDC	Compare	provides users with the ability to compare data structure definitions Because no DB2 data structures are modified, you can usually grant wide access to this plan. If the DDF is installed, the -BIND statement for this plan adds a reference to the remote package list.
CMvrmcDR	Report	provides users with the ability to create baseline reports You can grant wide access to this plan.

## Restricting Access to ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER Objects

The security features of ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER provide you with the ability to restrict access to objects and to separate projects that access the same set of tables. The ability to maintain the security features is restricted to users who have been granted SELECT and UPDATE authority on the security table, as follows:

*tbcreator.Vvr\_CM\_SECURITY*

The variable *tbcreator* is the ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER creator ID that is specified at installation, and the variable *vr* is the version and release of the product.

The installation system executes GRANT statements only on plans and collections. It does not execute grants on tables. If you want non-SYSADM users to be security administrators, execute the necessary GRANT SELECT and UPDATE statements.

## Restricting Access to the Worklist Parallelism Feature

With the Database Administration solution, you can use the worklist parallelism feature to execute portions of a CHANGE MANAGER worklist concurrently. CHANGE MANAGER uses the BMC Software Cross-System Image Manager (XIM) technology to provide sysplex performance improvements by enabling the distribution and management of discrete units of work (UOW) across one or more IBM OS/390 and z/OS images.

By default, user access to run portions of a worklist concurrently and to dynamically start XIM is not restricted. You can control access to these functions for a user or a group of users by performing the following tasks:

1. Apply a zap.
2. If you are using the Resource Access Control Facility (RACF), specify a general resource profile.

**Note:** If you are using another security package that is compatible with the System Authorization Facility (SAF), contact BMC Software Customer Support.

### Applying a Zap

To enable the restriction of access to these functions, apply the following zap to the Execution function of CHANGE MANAGER:

```
NAME  AEXPMAIN MAINRACC
VER 003E 47F0,C1D8
REP 003E 4700,0000
CHECKSUM 0916482E
```

### Specifying a General Resource Profile

In RACF, general resource profiles are used to protect the resources that are defined in the class descriptor table, such as programs. To restrict a user's or group's access to each of the worklist parallelism functions, you must add general resource profiles with the following profile information:

- CLASS => FACILITY
- PROFILE => BMCACM.*ssid*.PARALLEL.*object*

The profile definition contains the following values:

- BMCACM specifies that the profile is for CHANGE MANAGER.
- *ssid* represents the name of the DB2 subsystem or a DB2 group attachment name (wildcard characters can be used to match one or more characters).
- PARALLEL represents the function that is secured.
- *object* represents the object or resource name that is secured.
  - For executing a worklist, the *object* is EXECUTE.
  - For starting XIM dynamically, the *object* is DYNSTART.



Each user or group that is given access to a resource profile must have an access level of CONTROL or higher.

## Controlling the Execution of XIM

The Database Administration solution uses XIM to manage UOWs. XIM executes as a separate OS/390 or z/OS started task. You must start XIM on each image where CHANGE MANAGER will use XIM as a distribution point for UOWs. XIM uses the services of the IBM Cross-System Coupling Facility (XCF) to locate and connect to other instances of itself within the OS/390 or z/OS parallel sysplex.

Your systems programmer can issue XIM console commands from an OS/390 or z/OS console to start, stop, and modify the XIM environment. This section describes the commands to use and the procedures to follow to perform the following tasks:

- determine the status of XIM
- start XIM
- inactivate XIM
- shut down XIM
- activate XIM
- modify MVS image variables
- troubleshoot the execution of XIM

For more information about XIM, see the *Cross-System Image Manager (XIM) User Guide*.

### Determining the Status of XIM

You can use the STATUS command to display information about XIM instances in the sysplex or jobs connected to an XIM initiator. To determine whether XIM is running, issue the following command:

```
/F XIMACM, STATUS
```

An excerpt from the JES log (see Figure 3-1) shows the result of issuing the STATUS command where XIM is active.

**Figure 3-1 Result of STATUS Command**


---

```

BMC95100I XIM STATUS Command Accepted, XIM STATUS in progress XIMACM
BMC95181I STATUS, 3 XIM Members(s) ACTIVE in XIM Group XIMACM XIMACM
BMC95159I Jobname   Jobid     Smfid   Cvtlname   Status
BMC95184I XIMACM    STC01000 DB2A    DB2A      Active      16 inits    0 active
BMC95184I XIMACM    STC08798 SYSN    SYSN      Active      16 inits    0 active
BMC95184I XIMACM    STC08638 DB2B    DB2B      Active      16 inits    0 active

```

---

## Starting XIM

**Note:** Before you start XIM, ensure that the STEPLIB library is APF authorized.

Start XIM on each OS/390 or z/OS image that processes work for CHANGE MANAGER. To start XIM, issue the following command:

```
/S XIMACM
```

XIMACM is the name of the started task. The XIMACM procedure is located in a system PROCLIB data set. (When the product was installed, the procedure should have been copied to this data set.)

**Note:** If you have installed the worklist parallelism feature of the Database Administration solution in one environment (for example, production) and you later install a new version of the solution in a different environment (for example, test), you must ensure that the XIM started task name is unique for each version of the solution. In addition, BMC Software recommends that the XIM started task procedure name that is specified on the Execution Worklist Parallelism Options panel match the name of the started task. (For information about specifying the procedure name, see the *ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER for DB2 User Guide*.)

The Execution function attempts to start XIM automatically on the image on which Execution is running under the following conditions:

- XIM is not started.
- You attempt to execute a worklist that has worklist parallelism enabled.
- The XIMSTART YES parameter is specified in the AEXPIN input stream in the execution JCL for a worklist.

XIM is not started on any image other than the image on which a job was submitted.

## Inactivating XIM Initiators

You can use the QUIESCE command to prevent additional work from being accepted. Work that is in progress is allowed to finish. Typically, you would issue this command prior to shutting XIM down. To inactivate the XIM initiators, issue the following command:

```
/F XIMACM, QUIESCE
```

An excerpt from the system log (see Figure 3-2) shows the result of issuing the QUIESCE command.

**Figure 3-2**      **Result of QUIESCE Command**

```
BMC95100I XIM QUIESCE Command Accepted, XIM QUIESCE in progress XIMACM
BMC95100I XIM STOP Command Accepted, Initiator termination in progress
BMC98522I Initiator shutdown request received in ASID(01F6). XJS1
BMC98212I XJS initiator ended in ASID(01F6). XJS1
```

**Note:** The XIM initiators are inactivated only on the image on which the QUIESCE command was issued. If more than one image is participating in a group, issue the QUIESCE command on each image.

## Shutting Down XIM

You can use the SHUTDOWN command to terminate inactive XIM initiators and XIM. To terminate the XIMACM address space completely, first issue the QUIESCE command and then issue the following command:

```
/F XIMACM, SHUTDOWN
```

**Note:** If any XIM initiators are active, the SHUTDOWN command fails. This command must be issued on each image.

## Activating XIM Initiators

You can use the ACTIVATE command to allow initiators to be scheduled again after the issuance of a QUIESCE command. To restart the XIM initiators, issue the following command:

```
/F XIMACM, ACTIVATE
```

## Modifying the MVS Image Variables

If you want to modify variables that are specific to an OS/390 or z/OS image, you can modify the member from which active parameters are loaded. To determine the location from which the parameters are loaded, perform the following steps:

1. Using your normal method to review SYSOUT, review the active XIMACM started task.

Alternatively, you can review the XIMACM procedure in your system PROCLIB library.

2. Locate the partitioned data set (PDS) that is allocated to the XIMPARM ddname.
3. On the //EXEC PGM=XIMMAIN statement, locate the PARM option. A keyword specifies SUFFIX=xxxx.
4. To determine the member name, append the SUFFIX to “XIM”.

For example, if SUFFIX=PARM, the active parameters are loaded from the XIMPARM member, as shown in the following line of JCL:

```
//XIMPARM DD DSN=RCDTJP.XIM.CNTL(XIMPARM)
```

To modify the variables, perform the following steps:

1. Edit the XIMxxxx member in the data set that is referenced by the //XIMPARM DD statement.
2. Modify the INITIATORS variable.

In the example shown in Figure 3-3 on page 18, the member contains global variables and MVS image variables. The variables in the MVS image variables section override the same variables in the global variable section. For example, the default value for the global number of initiators is 8. However, for the DB2A subsystem ID, the number of initiators is 16.

**Note:** Typically, you should not modify other variables unless you are directed to do so by BMC Software Customer Support. However, if you have installed the worklist parallelism feature of the Database Administration solution in one environment (for example, production) and you later install a new version of the solution in a different environment (for example, test), you must ensure that the values for the XIM\_GROUP and XCF\_GROUP variables are unique for each version. In addition, the XIM group name that is specified on the Execution Worklist Parallelism Options panel must match the name of the group. (For information about specifying the group name, see the *ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER for DB2 User Guide*.)

**Figure 3-3 XIMACM1 Member**


---

```

*   XIM STARTUP PARM FOR CHANGE MANAGER FOR DB2
*
*
*   SYNTAX RULES:
*   USE COL 1 - 71
*   USE ONE PARAMETER PER STATEMENT
*   DO NOT CONTINUE A PARM ONTO A SECOND LINE
*   ANYTHING FOLLOWING A PARM AND ITS VALUE IS A COMMENT
*   THE EQUAL SIGN IS THE REQUIRED DELIMITER
*   SPACES TO THE LEFT AND RIGHT OF THE = ARE PERMITTED
*   BLANK LINES AND LINES BEGINNING WITH * ARE IGNORED
* *****
*   GLOBAL VARIABLE SECTION *****
*   XIM_GROUP=XIMACM
*   XCF_GROUP=XIMACMCF
*   INITIATORS=8
*   INIT_PROC=XIMACMI      *   PROC FOR TARGET INITIATORS
*
*   RESPONSE TIMEOUT INTERVAL (SECONDS)
*   RESPONSE_TIMEOUT=90    *   RESPONSE TIME OUT (SECONDS)
*   WORKLOAD_REFRESH=1     *   WORKLOAD REFRESH INTERVAL (MINUTES)
*   ENVIRONMENT_TIMER=60   *   ENVIRONMENT TIMER INTERVAL (SECONDS)
*
*   LOCAL MVS IMAGE VARIABLES (COMMENTED TO SHOW AS AN EXAMPLE)
*   DO DB2A
*   INITIATORS=16      *   # OF INITIATORS AT STARTUP
*   END
*

```

---

3. Save the changes to the member.
4. Inactivate XIM by issuing the QUIESCE command  
(/F XIMACM,QUIESCE).
5. Verify the status of XIM by issuing the STATUS command  
(/F XIMACM,STATUS).
6. Shut down XIM by issuing the SHUTDOWN command  
(/F XIMACM,SHUTDOWN).
7. Start XIM by issuing the start command (/S XIMACM).

The new instance of XIMACM uses the new parameters.

8. To verify the new parameters, issue the STATUS command  
(/F XIMACM,STATUS).
9. Review the values that XIM displays in the system log.

10. If you use data sharing, repeat step 4. through step 9. for each OS/390 or z/OS image.

### Troubleshooting the Execution of XIM

If your job could not connect with XIM, perform the following tasks to determine the cause:

- Issue the STATUS command (/F XIMACM,STATUS) to verify whether XIM was started.
- If you are using a data sharing environment, ensure that XIM was started on all of the images.
- Ensure that the STEPLIB library was APF authorized.
- Review the output from the XIMACM started task procedure.
- Review the XIM job or the system log for error messages that were issued by the XIM started task or by the CHANGE MANAGER batch job. Search the log by using your job name for enqueue type messages for the IBM Global Resource Serialization (GRS) or Unicenter CA-MIM products. If you are using a data sharing environment with multiple OS/390 or z/OS images and you previously canceled a parallel job, an initiator might still be running and holding data sets. This initiator might be preventing another initiator from starting.
- If necessary, specify the TRACE YES keyword in the AEXPIN input stream and run the job again. (For more information, see the *ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER for DB2 User Guide*.)

## Restricting Access to CATALOG MANAGER Plans

Table 3-7 lists the plans that are used by the functions in CATALOG MANAGER.

**Table 3-7 CATALOG MANAGER Plans (Part 1 of 2)**

Plan	Name	Description
ACTvrmDB	Bind and Rebind	reserved for future use
ACTvrmDE	Data Editing and Browsing	enables access to the data editing and browsing functions This plan does not override DB2 table authorizations.
ACTvrmDG	Generate SQL	reserved for future use

**Table 3-7 CATALOG MANAGER Plans (Part 2 of 2)**

Plan	Name	Description
ACTvrmDH	Utility Status Display	enables the display of the status of BMC Software utilities Grant EXECUTE authority on this plan to users who should be able to display or terminate BMC Software utilities.
ACTvrmDK	Command Generation and Execution	enables the generation and execution of DB2 operator commands Grant EXECUTE authority on this plan to users who should be able to issue DB2 operator commands, such as START, STOP, DISPLAY, and TERM.
ACTvrmDL	Log Table Maintenance	includes authority to browse and archive rows in the CATALOG MANAGER Audit, Session, and Drop Recovery logs Grant EXECUTE authority on this plan to users who are responsible for administering CATALOG MANAGER.
ACTvrmDM	Display DB2 Catalog and SQL Information	displays DB2 catalog and SQL generation and execution information This plan allows the minimum access that is required to use CATALOG MANAGER.
ACTvrmDS	Search	reserved for future use
ACTvrmDU	Grant Authorities and Submit BMC Software Utilities or IBM Utilities	enables generation and submission of JCL for BMC Software utilities and IBM utilities Grant EXECUTE authority on this plan to users who should be able to grant authorities or submit IBM or BMC Software utilities.

## Providing Access to Catalog Information by Specifying Dynamic SQL or Static SQL

In the CATALOG MANAGER installation default options, you can specify whether to use static SQL or dynamic SQL to access DB2 catalog tables.

- If you specify static SQL, CATALOG MANAGER observes the privileges of the owner of the package rather than the privileges of the user who lists the tables.
- If you specify dynamic SQL, CATALOG MANAGER observes the privileges of the user who lists the tables. You can specify individual tables to be accessed using dynamic SQL.

CATALOG MANAGER does not bypass any DB2 security when it generates and executes SQL, DML, or DB2 commands. DB2 rejects any action requested by CATALOG MANAGER for which the user is not authorized by DB2.

DB2 requires that users have at least the SELECT privilege to access catalog tables. The CATALOG MANAGER DOPTS settings, whether for static SQL or dynamic SQL, cannot override the DB2 SELECT authorization requirement.



## Restricting Access to DASD MANAGER PLUS Plans

Table 3-8 lists the plans that are used by the functions in DASD MANAGER PLUS.

**Table 3-8 DASD MANAGER PLUS Plans**

Plan	Name	Description
ASUvrnDJ	BMCTRIG Utility Job Generation	controls access to utility-job generation from BMCTRIG Any user needing to perform online or BMCTRIG JCL generation should be authorized to use this plan.
ASUvrnDR	Report Display	controls access to the display of reports Any user needing to report events and exceptions online should be authorized to use this plan.
ASUvrnDS	Statistics Collection DB2 Catalog Update	controls access to statistics collection and to the operations that update the catalog Any user needing to run BMCSTATS should be authorized to use this plan.
ASUvrnDX	Cross Reference Utility Access	controls access to the Cross Reference Utility Any user needing to use this utility should be authorized to use this plan.
ASUvrnDZ	Browse DASD MANAGER PLUS Database Statistics	controls access to the Browse function, which displays statistics from the DASD MANAGER PLUS databases Any user needing to display statistics online should be authorized to use this plan. You can place minimum restriction on the online programs to allow a user to define objects and to specify and analyze changes.

## Restricting Access to the Execution Component Plans

Table 3-9 lists the plans that are used by the Execution component in ALTER, CHANGE MANAGER, and DASD MANAGER PLUS.

**Table 3-9 Execution Plans**

Plan	Product	Name	Description
AEXvrmAA	ALTER	Execution Monitor Entry (Authorization)	enables users to execute a worklist when EXECUTE authority is granted You should carefully consider who receives authorization to use this plan.
AEXvrmHA	CHANGE MANAGER		
AEXvrmDA	DASD MANAGER PLUS		
AEXvrmAM	ALTER	Execution Monitor	<p>provides users with the ability to attach to DB2 with alternate authorization IDs for the -AUTH commands This plan does not control who has authorization to execute a worklist. Because this plan does not affect who can run Execution, you can grant PUBLIC authority to this plan.</p> <p>The execution plan contains some packages that use dynamic SQL. Some of these packages cause long-running SQL and might need to be added to your RLST. The packages are described as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AEXAUNLD is the package that unloads data from tables.</li> <li>• AEXSQLIO is the package that performs all worklist -SQL commands, including deletions before a data-only migration -LOAD or -BMCL command.</li> <li>• For ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER only, AEXESTDL is the package that performs some of the restart logic before the restart of a -LOAD command, including the deleting of previously loaded rows.</li> </ul> <p>By restricting authorization to run the Execution plans, you can control what change and migrate functions users can perform. For example, by giving wide access to Specification and Analysis while controlling access to the Execution Monitor Entry, you can allow your users to run ALTER for training purposes or use it as a system dictionary.</p> <p>Further control over the Execution component's authorization switching function is provided by the Execution Security Exit.</p>
AEXvrmHM	CHANGE MANAGER		
AEXvrmDM	DASD MANAGER PLUS		

## Executing Worklists in CATALOG MANAGER

In CATALOG MANAGER, you can execute a worklist through the Execution component by using the plans provided with ALTER, CHANGE MANAGER, or DASD MANAGER PLUS when the following requirements are met.

- ALTER, CHANGE MANAGER, or DASD MANAGER PLUS is installed.
- The CATALOG MANAGER AOPTS default option or BOPTS default option specifies the DOPTS module name for ALTER, CHANGE MANAGER, or DASD MANAGER PLUS, as follows:
  - To use the ALTER execution plans, in CATALOG MANAGER specify the name of the ALTER DOPTS module for the AOPTS default option.
  - To use the CHANGE MANAGER execution plans, in CATALOG MANAGER specify the name of the CHANGE MANAGER DOPTS module for the AOPTS default option.
  - To use the DASD MANAGER PLUS execution plans, in CATALOG MANAGER specify the name of the DASD MANAGER PLUS DOPTS module for the BOPTS default option.

## Implementing Product Features

You must perform additional tasks to implement the following product features:

- CHANGE MANAGER catalog to catalog comparisons
- use of the DASD MANAGER PLUS INFOBMC command in CHANGE MANAGER
- DASD MANAGER PLUS QMF Report feature

### Implementing the CHANGE MANAGER Catalog to Catalog Comparison Feature

The CHANGE MANAGER product's Compare component enables you to perform a catalog to catalog comparison. You use a catalog to catalog comparison to compare a specified set of DB2 objects from a catalog to DB2 objects of the same type from another catalog. You can also compare objects of the same type within the same catalog.

You can compare DB2 objects using the following catalog combinations:

- local catalog to remote catalog
- remote catalog to local catalog
- remote catalog to remote catalog
- local catalog to local catalog

To implement the catalog to catalog comparison feature for local and remote comparisons, you must install the CHANGE MANAGER Compare component on both the local and the remote subsystems.

#### Install CHANGE MANAGER on the Local Subsystem with DDF Active

When you install CHANGE MANAGER, the installation system builds synonyms that access the communications database. When the DDF is installed, the -BIND statement for the Front End, Specification, Compare, and Catalog and SQL Information plans adds a reference to the remote package list.

## Install CHANGE MANAGER on the Remote Subsystem

The following list describes the options for installing CHANGE MANAGER:

- If the remote subsystem has the same version of DB2 that is installed on the local subsystem, install the same version and release of CHANGE MANAGER on the remote subsystem and select the DDF option. When the DDF is installed, the -BIND statement for the Front End, Specification, Compare, and Catalog and SQL Information plans adds a reference to the remote package list.

If the same naming convention for the collection IDs and plans is used on both subsystems (such as using the defaults from BMC Software, for example), the CHANGE MANAGER product's catalog to catalog comparison feature is ready to use.

- If you are *not* installing the same version and release level of CHANGE MANAGER on the remote subsystem as you have installed on the local subsystem, perform the following steps:

1. Install the features that are required for the catalog to catalog comparison feature on the remote subsystem.

A. Edit the ACMC2CO member in the *HQL*.CNTL data set.

B. Follow the instructions in the member. The member contains data definition language (DDL) for execution at the remote subsystem via DB2I SPUFI.

2. Bind the packages and the plan that are needed for the remote subsystem.

A. Edit the ACMC2CB member in the *HQL*.CNTL data set.

B. Follow the instructions in the member.

C. Follow the instructions in the ACMC2CG member to grant EXECUTE authority for the collection IDs.

**Note:** Collection IDs and the Compare plan name must be identical on both DB2 subsystems.

- If the remote subsystem has a version of DB2 that is different from the version of DB2 that is installed on the local subsystem, use the following steps as an example for implementing the catalog to catalog comparison feature for subsystems with DB2 versions 6 and 7:

1. On the subsystem that has DB2 version 6, install CHANGE MANAGER version *vrnE* with DDF active (variable *vrn* indicates the version, release, and maintenance level). Use the collection ID *ACMvrnE\_D\_MAIN* and the compare plan name *CMvrnEDC*.
2. On the subsystem that has DB2 version 7, install CHANGE MANAGER version *vrnF* with DDF active. Use the collection ID *ACMvrnF\_D\_MAIN* and the compare plan name *CMvrnFDC*.
3. On the subsystem that has DB2 version 7, install the Compare features that were installed on the DB2 version 6 subsystem.
  - A. Customize the *ACMC2CO*, *ACMC2CB*, and *ACMC2CG* members of the *HLQ.CNTL* data set, using the JCL for DB2 version 6 for CHANGE MANAGER.
  - B. In the *ACMC2CB* member, bind the packages using the DB2 version 6 level *DBRMLIB* into a collection ID that matches the ID used on DB2 version 6 (*ACMvrnE\_D\_MAIN*).

The plan name in the *ACMC2CB* member must match the plan name (*CMvrnEDC*) that was used on the DB2 version 6 subsystem.

**Note:** The collection ID and the plan name must differ from those used for the exploitation version of CHANGE MANAGER.

4. Execute the catalog to catalog comparison feature from the DB2 version 6 subsystem to the DB2 version 7 subsystem so that the DB2 version 6 load library, collection ID (packages), and plan are used.

**Note:** The Compare1 or Compare2 fields can be set to local or remote.

See the *ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER for DB2 User Guide* for an example of the steps that are required to run a catalog to catalog comparison.

## Enabling the Use of the DASD MANAGER PLUS INFOBMC Command in CHANGE MANAGER

---

**Summary:** The CHANGE MANAGER product's Compare component has the capability to use the INFOBMC command if the DASD MANAGER PLUS product is also installed. The INFOBMC command gathers and displays DB2 and DASD MANAGER PLUS statistics in Change Definition Language™ (CDL®).

This feature is automatically available if you are installing CHANGE MANAGER and DASD MANAGER PLUS simultaneously or if you have already installed DASD MANAGER PLUS and choose to activate the interfaces. However, if these conditions are not met, you can perform the steps in this procedure to bind a DBRM member to obtain this functionality.

---

### Before You Begin

Install CHANGE MANAGER and DASD MANAGER PLUS.

### To Bind the DBRM Member

- Step 1** Edit the BIND JCL for the Compare component that is located in the *HLQ.CNTL* data set. The member name is *prdssidP*, where *prd* is ACM or ASU, and *ssid* is the subsystem ID.
- Step 2** Add a package bind for the ACMCLDM DBRM member.
- Step 3** Execute the BIND.

## Implementing the QMF Report Feature in DASD MANAGER PLUS

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to implement the QMF Report feature that is included with DASD MANAGER PLUS.

---

**Step 1** Build views for the DASD MANAGER PLUS QMF reports.

To build the necessary views for the DASD MANAGER PLUS QMF reports (supplied with DASD MANAGER PLUS), invoke SPUFI and specify the *HLQ.CNTL* data set and member ASURVIEW.

**Note:** If you are installing DASD MANAGER PLUS on multiple DB2 subsystems, execute this SPUFI job for each DB2 SSID where the DASD MANAGER PLUS QMF reports will be used.

**Step 2** Import the DASD MANAGER PLUS QMF Reports into QMF.

**2.A** Edit all members of the *HLQ.QMFPROC* data set:

- Change *HLQ* to the high-level qualifier for DASD MANAGER PLUS data sets at your installation.
- Change U\*\*\*\*\* to the user ID of the person who is running the QMF install.

**2.B** From QMF, execute the following:

```
IMPORT PROC FROM 'HLQ.QMFPROC' (M=LOADPROC)
```

**Note:** The data set name should be typed in uppercase (capital) letters. The IMPORT command can be executed either from the first panel of QMF or from the Query panel.

**Step 3** To run the procedure, press **F2** or enter the **RUN** command. This action imports all the BMC Software-supplied DASD MANAGER PLUS QMF reports.



## Enabling Use of Stored Procedures in CATALOG MANAGER

**Summary:** CATALOG MANAGER provides a library of external stored procedures for performing common DBA tasks. You can run the product using stored procedures by default or you can use stored procedures only when you choose.

This procedure describes how to customize CATALOG MANAGER to take advantage of stored procedures.

### After Installation

Complete the following steps after installing CATALOG MANAGER, but before invoking the product.

- Step 1** Ensure that the workload manager (WLM) environment that you named during installation exists. For information about creating WLM environments, see the *IBM DB2 Universal Database for OS/390 and z/OS Administration Guide*.
- Step 2** Verify that an *HLQ.LOAD* library exists. If it does not exist, then you did not specify **Y** in the **Permanent Data Set Options SMS Managed** field of the Install System High Level Qualifier(s) and Allocation Options panel during the product unload part of the installation.
- Step 3** In the steplib of the WLM procedure, add a DD statement that references the *HLQ.LOAD* library that was unloaded during installation.
- Step 4** Quiesce and resume the WLM environment.

### To Invoke CATALOG MANAGER Using Stored Procedures by Default

Complete the following steps to run CATALOG MANAGER with stored procedures.

- Step 1** In the control table, add the following line:  
  

```
SPRC ssid Y
```

\*
- Step 2** Invoke CATALOG MANAGER.
- Step 3** From the **Command** line of the Primary Menu panel or a list panel, generate the list of stored procedures. As a qualifier, use the schema name that you identified during installation.

**Step 4** On the **Command** line of the procedure list panel, enter **\START ALL**.

When CATALOG MANAGER is invoked, stored procedures will automatically be called.

#### To Enable Users to Choose When to Run CATALOG MANAGER with Stored Procedures

You can optionally set up CATALOG MANAGER so that users can turn the use of stored procedures on and off.

**Step 1** Invoke CATALOG MANAGER.

**Step 2** From the **Command** line of the Primary Menu panel or a list panel, generate the list of stored procedures. As a qualifier, use the schema name that you specified during installation.

**Step 3** On the **Command** line of the procedure list panel, enter **\START ALL**.

To turn the use of stored procedures on and off, users can perform either of the following actions:

- On the DB2 Special Registers/CATALOG MANAGER Switches panel, toggle the **STORED PROC** switch ON and OFF.
- From the **Command** line of the Primary Menu panel or a list panel, issue the **SET PROC ON** and **SET PROC OFF** commands.

**Note:** The **STORED PROC** switch and the **SET PROC** commands are valid when CATALOG MANAGER has been set up to run stored procedures by default.

# Upgrading Shared Components

All Administrative products share the following components:

- JCL Generation, which controls the JCL generation process
- Execution Monitor, which controls worklist processing by reading and performing worklist commands

When you unload the Administrative products, these components are also unloaded. The installation system copies these components to an APF-authorized load library that is shared by any of the Administrative products.

If you install the products at different times or if you are applying maintenance and any of the products share the same APF-authorized load library, you must bind each product to the new level of the shared JCL Generation and Execution Monitor components.

For example, you have installed ALTER version 7.2.01 and DASD MANAGER PLUS version 6.2.00, both of which use JCL Generation and Execution Monitor version 7.2.01, and you are using the same APF-authorized load library. If you want to upgrade to ALTER version 7.3.01, you need to bind DASD MANAGER PLUS to the new JCL Generation and Execution Monitor version 7.3.01 DBRMs.

**Note:** If you do not properly bind all Administrative products that share the common components, any attempts to generate JCL or to run worklists can cause SQLCODES -805 and -818. The product that has not been bound or upgraded will not run.

You do not have to bind a product separately to the shared components if the following conditions exist:

- You are using the same APF-authorized load library and you are upgrading all your products at the same time. The binds are done during the upgrade.
- You are using separate APF-authorized load libraries for your products.

## Binding a Product to Shared Components

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to bind an Administrative product to the JCL Generation and Execution Monitor components.

---

**Step 1** Edit the product's BIND packages and plans, which are in the *HLQ.CNTL* data set. Table 3-10 lists the member names for the jobs. The variable *prd* is the product code, and *ssid* is the subsystem ID.

**Table 3-10 Member Names for Jobs for BIND Packages and Plans**

Member Name	Job
<i>prdssidP</i>	package BIND jobs for direct access
<i>prdssidB</i>	plan BIND jobs (including CATALOG MANAGER plan BIND jobs for indirection)
<i>prdssidZ</i>	package and plan BIND jobs for indirection (except CATALOG MANAGER plan BIND jobs)

**Step 2** Concatenate the new *HLQ.DBRM* library ahead of the old *HLQ.DBRM* library in the DBRMLIB DD statement in these members.

**Step 3** Submit the BIND jobs.

**Step 4** Repeat for the next product if applicable.

## Editing and Compiling SLIBs

---

**Summary:** The Administrative products share a common component called JCL Generation. This component generates the JCL that is needed to execute all the batch functions that use ISPF file tailoring. You might need to change members of the BMC Software product skeleton library (SLIB) to generate environment-specific JCL. This procedure describes the steps you must perform to edit, test, and compile the SLIB.

---

**Step 1** Edit the appropriate SLIB members in *HLQ*.SLIB to change the way the JCL is generated.

**Note:** Any customizations that you have made to the SLIB members for an earlier release are not included in your current installation.

**1.A** (*optional*) Edit the AJX#USRV member and change the EXEC REGION parameter.

The EXEC REGION parameter is set by default to REGION=0M in the AJX#USRV member that resides in the SLIB. If you do not change the IBM-supplied default limits in the IEALIMIT or IEFUSI exit routine modules, this parameter requests that the job step get all the available storage above and below the 16 MB line.

**1.B** Edit the AJX#USRV member and uncomment the AJXJES3=Y statement to generate JCL for JES3 systems.

Users encounter a problem on systems that use JES3 when they attempt to close a data set through a subtask other than the subtask that opened the data set. This action can result in a 1FB ABEND. You can circumvent this problem by uncommenting the statement.

**1.C** Edit the AJX#DSNS member to generate JCL for generation data groups (GDGs).

The Administrative products use the product options file (POF) for generation of JCL for GDGs when operating on versions 6 and 7 of DB2.

**Step 2** Use JCLGEN to test the changes to the SLIB.

For more information about testing the SLIB members, see the following BMC Software books:

- *ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER for DB2 User Guide*
- *CATALOG MANAGER for DB2 User Guide*
- *DASD MANAGER PLUS for DB2 User Guide*

**Step 3** Compile the SLIB members that you edited.

For a sample compile JCL, refer to member AJXCOMPS in the *HLQ.CNTL* data set. For more information about compiling the SLIB members, see the following BMC Software books:

- *ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER for DB2 User Guide*
- *CATALOG MANAGER for DB2 User Guide*
- *DASD MANAGER PLUS for DB2 User Guide*

## Specifying Generation Data Groups

---

**Summary:** You can specify GDGs by adding a symbolic variable to the primary and recovery copy parameters. As a result, the data set names are resolved using the symbolic variables, and include the GDG.

This procedure describes how to specify GDGs.

---

### To Specify the GDG for ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER (DB2 version 6 and later), CATALOG MANAGER, and DASD MANAGER PLUS

**Step 1** Find the member in the *HLQ*.CNTL library that has the same name as the DOPTs module. Locate the name of the POF in the POFDS parameter. Find the POF member in the *HLQ*.CNTL library.

**Step 2** Add the symbolic (&GDG) to the end of the following keywords in the POF member:

- PCPY1\_PREFIX
- PCPY2\_PREFIX
- RCPY1\_PREFIX
- RCPY2\_PREFIX

For example, set

PCPY1='&PREFIX..&OBNOD..P&PART(&GDG)'

For a description of the keywords, see Appendix E, “JCL Generation Product Options.”

## Enabling Interaction among the Administrative Products and BMC Software Utility Products

When you merge the media for the BMC Software Utility, Backup and Recovery, and Administrative products, the installation system automatically enables the Administrative products to interact with the other products. If you did not merge the media when you installed the products, or if one of the following conditions exist, you must perform additional steps to enable the products to interact with each other:

- you installed the products at different times and you did not select to allow the products to interact with one another on the Install System Product to Product Interface Panel
- synonyms in the products do not point to the correct utility tables

The following tasks describe how to enable the interaction among the products.



## Enabling Interaction between ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER and BMC Software Utilities

---

**Summary:** ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER can interact with the BMC Software Utilities BMCUTIL and BMCSYNC tables to provide STARTOVER capability. ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER accesses the utility tables during batch processing.

For example, while you are performing a reorganization by using the BMC Software REORG PLUS utility from the CHANGE MANAGER product, you receive an error and the utility stops running. You can request a STARTOVER that deletes the utility ID in the BMCUTIL and BMCSYNC tables before proceeding with the reorganization. If the CHANGE MANAGER synonyms do not point to the correct tables, you must delete the utility ID manually in the BMCUTIL and BMCSYNC tables before starting over.

This procedure describes how to enable the interaction and to use a different utilities load library.

---

### To Enable the Interaction

The *HLQ*.INSTALL member T1S#AEXU provides an example of a worklist for this procedure.

**Step 1** Drop the current utility synonyms for ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER.

ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER use the following synonyms for the tables:

- BMC\_UTILITY for the BMCUTIL table
- BMC\_UTIL\_SYNC and BMC\_UTIL\_SYNC2 for the BMCSYNC table

**Step 2** Create the new ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER utility synonyms by using the same synonym names, but with the correct table names.

**Step 3** Bind the package AEXEUTID into the main collection ID for ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER.

### To Use a Different Utilities Load Library

If the utilities are installed in a different load library, complete the following steps:

- Step 1** Find the member in the *HLQ*.CNTL library that has the same name as the DOPTs module.
- Step 2** For DB2 version 6 or later, in the member, locate the name of the POF in the POFDS parameter. Find the POF member in the *HLQ*.CNTL library.
- Step 3** Update the ADDLOAD1, ADDLOAD2, CHECK+\_LOAD, COPY+\_LOAD, LOAD+\_LOAD, RECOVER+\_LOAD, REORG+\_LOAD, and UNLOAD+\_LOAD keywords in the POF member to use the different utilities load library. For a description of the keywords, see Appendix E, “JCL Generation Product Options.”
- Step 4** If necessary, add any additional load libraries to SLIB member AJXSTEPV. For more information, see “Editing and Compiling SLIBs” on page 3-33.

## Enabling Interaction between CATALOG MANAGER and BMC Software Utilities

---

**Summary:** CATALOG MANAGER can interact with the BMCUTIL, BMCHIST, and BMCSYNC tables to provide BMC Software utility control, status, and history information. Note that history information is not provided for the BMC Software RECOVER PLUS for DB2 product. CATALOG MANAGER accesses the utility tables during batch processing and when using online commands.

This procedure describes how to enable the interaction and to use a different utilities load library.

---

### To Enable the Interaction

The *HLQ*.INSTALL member T1S#ACTU provides an example of a worklist for this procedure.

**Step 1** Drop the CATALOG MANAGER utility synonyms.

CATALOG MANAGER uses the following synonyms for the tables:

- BMC\_UTILITY for the BMCUTIL table
- REORG\_HISTORY for the BMCHIST table
- BMC\_UTIL\_SYNC and BMC\_UTIL\_SYNC2 for the BMCSYNC table

**Step 2** Create new CATALOG MANAGER utility synonyms by using the same synonym names, but with the correct table names.

**Step 3** Bind the packages ACTCSQRH, ACTDDQRH, and ACTCSQBU into the main collection ID for CATALOG MANAGER.

**Step 4** Bind the CATALOG MANAGER BMC Software Utility History Plan. BMC Software specifies this plan as ACT $vrm$ DH, where  $vrm$  is the version, release, and maintenance level. Use the existing plan bind source to create this plan, and then change the name.

**Step 5** Edit the member in the *HLQ*.CNTL library that has the same name as the DOPTs module. Change the value of HPLAN to the plan that was created in Step 4.

**Step 6** Submit this member to reassemble the DOPTs module.

### To Use a Different Utilities Load Library

If the utilities are installed in a different load library, complete the following steps:

- Step 1** Find the member in the *HLQ.CNTL* library that has the same name as the DOPTs module. Locate the name of the POF in the POFDS parameter. Find the POF member in the *HLQ.CNTL* library.
- Step 2** Update the ADDLOAD1, ADDLOAD2, CHECK+\_LOAD, COPY+\_LOAD, LOAD+\_LOAD, RECOVER+\_LOAD, REORG+\_LOAD, UNLOAD+\_LOAD, and DATA\_PACKER\_LOAD keywords in the POF member to use the different utilities load library. For a description of the keywords, see Appendix E, “JCL Generation Product Options.”
- Step 3** If necessary, add any additional load libraries to SLIB member AJXSTEPU. For more information, see “Editing and Compiling SLIBs” on page 3-33.

## Enabling Interaction between DASD MANAGER PLUS and BMC Software Utilities

**Summary:** You can use DASD MANAGER PLUS with the BMC Software REORG PLUS, LOADPLUS®, or COPY PLUS for DB2 products. To do so, the synonyms must refer to the correct tables. This procedure describes how to refer the utility synonyms to the appropriate DASD MANAGER PLUS tables and refer the DASD MANAGER PLUS synonyms to the appropriate utility tables. DASD MANAGER PLUS accesses the utility tables during batch processing.

### Before You Begin

If the BMCSTATS runtime option is used, REORG PLUS, LOADPLUS, or COPY PLUS can update the DASD MANAGER PLUS statistics tables to update statistical information. Table 3-11 shows the synonyms that the REORG PLUS and LOADPLUS utilities use to reference the corresponding tables for DASD MANAGER PLUS.

The variables in Table 3-11 and Table 3-12 are defined as follows:

- *prd* is the product code ARU for REORG PLUS or AMU for LOADPLUS.
- *vr* is the version and release installed for REORG PLUS and LOADPLUS.
- *yy* is the version and release number of your current DASD MANAGER PLUS product. These table names are the default names as shipped and might have changed when DASD MANAGER PLUS was installed.

**Table 3-11 DASD MANAGER PLUS Table Synonyms for REORG PLUS and LOADPLUS**

Synonym	DASD MANAGER PLUS Table
<i>prdv</i> _RS_TABSPACE	BMCASUyy.Vyy_RS_TABLESPACE
<i>prdv</i> _RS_TABLEPART	BMCASUyy.Vyy_RS_TABLEPART
<i>prdv</i> _RS_TABLES	BMCASUyy.Vyy_RS_TABLES
<i>prdv</i> _RS_INDEXES	BMCASUyy.Vyy_RS_INDEXES
<i>prdv</i> _RS_INDEXPART	BMCASUyy.Vyy_RS_INDEXPART

Table 3-12 shows the synonyms that the COPY PLUS utility uses to reference the corresponding tables for DASD MANAGER PLUS.

**Table 3-12 DASD MANAGER PLUS Table Synonyms for COPY PLUS**

Synonym	DASD MANAGER PLUS Table
BMCACP_BMCXTBSP	BMCASUyy.Vyy_RS_TABLESPACE
BMCACP_BMCXTBPT	BMCASUyy.Vyy_RS_TABLEPART
BMCACP_BMCXTBLS	BMCASUyy.Vyy_RS_TABLES

Examine these synonyms and verify that the table names are correct.

### To Refer the Utility Synonyms to the DASD MANAGER PLUS Tables

If your current REORG PLUS, LOADPLUS, or COPY PLUS synonyms do not point to the tables that are listed in Figure 3-11 on page 3-41 or Figure 3-12 on page 3-42, complete the following steps to update them.

The *HLQ*.INSTALL member T1S#ASUR for REORG PLUS, member T1S#ASUL for LOADPLUS, and member T1S#ASUC for COPY PLUS provide examples of a worklist for Step 1 and Step 2.

- Step 1** Drop the REORG PLUS, LOADPLUS, or COPY PLUS synonyms.
- Step 2** Create the new REORG PLUS, LOADPLUS, or COPY PLUS synonyms by using the same synonym names, but with the correct DASD MANAGER PLUS PLUS table names.
- Step 3** Bind the REORG PLUS, LOADPLUS, or COPY PLUS BMCSTATS plan. BMC Software specifies this plan as ARUTvrmm, AMUTvrmm, or ACPCvrmm, where *vrmm* is the version, release, and maintenance level.
- Note:** If DASD MANAGER PLUS tables are not connected or installed when you install REORG PLUS, LOADPLUS, or COPY PLUS, the plan binds will complete with RC=4.
- Step 4** If you want to use DASD MANAGER PLUS with COPY PLUS, run the ACPssidC ICOPY installation job.

**To Refer the DASD MANAGER PLUS Synonyms to the Utility Tables**

The *HLQ*.INSTALL member T1S#AEXU provides an example of a worklist for this procedure.

**Step 1** Drop the current utility synonyms for DASD MANAGER PLUS PLUS.

DASD MANAGER PLUS uses the following synonyms for the tables:

- BMC\_UTILITY for the BMCUTIL table
- BMC\_UTIL\_SYNC and BMC\_UTIL\_SYNC2 for the BMCSYNC table

**Step 2** Create the new DASD MANAGER PLUS PLUS utility synonyms by using the same synonym names, but with the correct table names.

**Step 3** Bind the package AEXEUTID into the main collection ID for DASD MANAGER PLUS PLUS.

**To Use a Different Utilities Load Library**

If the utilities are installed in a different load library, complete the following steps:

**Step 1** Find the member in the *HLQ*.CNTL library that has the same name as the DOPTs module.

**Step 2** Update the first available STEPLIB keyword (SL1, SL2, and so on) in the DASD MANAGER PLUS DOPTs member to use the different utilities load library. For a description of the STEPLIB keywords, see the appendix for DASD MANAGER PLUS in this guide.

**Step 3** Reassemble the DOPTs module.

**Step 4** If necessary, add any additional load libraries to SLIB member AJXSTEPU. For more information, see “Editing and Compiling SLIBs” on page 3-33.

## Modifying the BMCDB2PR Panel

The BMCDB2PR panel is part of the BMC Software-supplied ISPF interface that the installation system generates. This panel includes a product selection list from which you can select a product. It also includes a DB2 catalog access field, in which you can specify whether to use the DB2 catalog data directly or to use a copy or a view of the DB2 catalog.

You may need to add additional products to the selection list or modify the catalog access field after you install and customize the Administrative products. The following tasks describe how to perform these procedures.



---

## Adding Products to the BMCDB2PR Panel

---

**Summary:** The installation system enables you to add products that are not included on the media for the Administrative products to the BMCDB2PR panel. This procedure describes how to add the products to the panel.

---

### Before You Begin

The BMC Software products that are listed in Table 3-13 can be added to the BMCDB2PR panel.

**Table 3-13 BMC Software Products for BMCDB2PR Panel**

Product	Product Code
ACTIVITY MONITOR for DB2	DOM
APPTUNE for DB2	ASQ
CHANGE ACCUMULATION PLUS	ACA
COORDINATED RECOVERY MANAGER	CRR
COPY PLUS for DB2	ACP
EXTENDED BUFFER MANAGER	XBM
Log Master for DB2	ALP
OPERTUNE® for DB2	DDT
OPERTUNE for MQSeries	DDM
PACLOG for DB2	ALM
RECOVERY MANAGER for DB2	ARM
RECOVERY MANAGER for OS/390	MRM

Determine the following information:

- location of the BMCDB2PR panel
- location of the product's CLIST
- the three-character code for the product

## To Add the Products

The UPDTBMC CLIST and the UPDTDB2 macro can be found in a customized installation library that the user creates while installing products from multiple tapes, or in the base installation library from a single product tape.

- Step 1** Copy the UPDTBMC CLIST from the *HLQ*.INSTALL library to a library in your SYSPROC concatenation.
- Step 2** Copy the UPDTDB2 macro from the *HLQ*.INSTALL library to a library in your SYSPROC concatenation.
- Step 3** To execute the CLIST, type **TSO UPDTBMC** on the **Command** line.

## Modifying and Validating the DB2 Catalog Access Option on the BMCDB2PR Panel

---

**Summary:** The BMCDB2PR panel might need slight customization before you run the Administrative products with catalog indirection. This procedure describes how to modify and validate the catalog access option.

---

**Step 1** Edit the BMCDB2PR panel in *HLQ*.PLIB.

**Step 2** Add **,Indirect**, as follows:

```
+ DB2 Catalog Access . . . . . _Z +(Direct,Indirect)
```

**Step 3** To validate the Indirect option, make the changes shown in Figure 3-4.

**Figure 3-4** BMCDB2PR Panel

---

```
ver (&catopt,nb,list,'DIRECT','INDIRECT',D,I) -- Uncomment this line
/*****/
/*ver ($catopt,nb,list,'DIRECT',D) */          -- Comment out this line
```

---

**Step 4** Press END to exit.

## Working with CLISTs

The installation system generates the CLISTs for the Administrative products that are listed in Table 3-14. All CLISTs are located in the *HLQ*.CLIST library.

**Table 3-14 Administrative Products CLISTs**

CLIST	Description
ACTPSS	defines the integration of CATALOG MANAGER and SQL Explorer for DB2
BMCDDB2	invokes the Administrative products
BMCDRIVC	defines user libraries for the product driver panels
BMCMMSG	processes the product messages
CHKSQNUM	determines whether any out-of-sequence numbers exist in an ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER worklist
FIXSQSUM	corrects out-of-sequence numbers in an ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER worklist
RSTRIG	calls the DASD MANAGER PLUS BMCTRIG Restart program
WL2DDL	converts an ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER worklist to a DDL file
XGRANT	creates an additional ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER worklist that contains -SETS and -SQL authorization commands only

If multiple versions of the products are installed and the version and release numbers of the products on one subsystem are later than the version and release numbers of the products on another subsystem, use the CLIST for the later version and release of the products. Ensure that a current copy of the appropriate CLIST is in the same SYSPROC concatenated library as your other CLISTs.

For example, if you installed version 7.1 of the products on subsystem DBDA and you installed version 7.3 of the products on subsystem DBDB, and you want to use one CLIST, use the CLIST for the version 7.3 products on DBDB.

**Note:** If you are installing the Database Administration solution or the Administrative Assistant solution and you already have one or more components of the solution installed, you must combine the CLISTs.

The following tasks describe how to enable the CLISTs, modify the BMCDDB2 CLIST, and invoke the BMCDDB2 CLIST.

## Enabling the Implicit Execution of CLISTs

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes the steps that you must perform to enable the implicit execution of the CLISTs that are generated for the Administrative products.

---

**Step 1** Enable the BMCDRIVC CLIST.

Copy the CLIST from the *HLQ*.JCL library or the *HLQ*.CLIST library to a library in your SYSPROC concatenation.

**Step 2** Perform one of the following tasks to enable the BMCMSG CLIST to be implicitly invoked from TSO without having to invoke an Administrative product:

- Add the *HLQ*.CLIST library to your SYSPROC concatenation.
- Copy the CLIST from the *HLQ*.CLIST library to a library in your SYSPROC concatenation.

The messages that the Administrative products generate are available in an MVS data set that is downloaded during installation. For each message, the data set includes an explanation and suggests a user response. The MVS data set is called *HLQ*.MSGs (where *HLQ* is the high-level qualifier that is specified during installation). The BMCMSG CLIST, which can be used to view the messages, is customized and copied to the product CLIST library during installation.

**Step 3** Perform one of the following tasks to enable the ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER CLISTs (XGRANT, WL2DDL, FIXSQSUM, and CHKSQNUM) to be implicitly invoked from within a worklist:

- Add the *HLQ*.CLIST library to your SYSPROC concatenation.
- Copy the CLISTs from the *HLQ*.CLIST library to a library in your SYSPROC concatenation.

**Step 4** Perform one of the following tasks to enable the RSTRIG CLIST (DASD MANAGER PLUS) to be implicitly invoked from within JCL:

- Add the *HLQ*.CLIST library to your SYSPROC concatenation.
- Copy the CLISTs from the *HLQ*.CLIST library to a library in your SYSPROC concatenation.

## Creating a User Message File

---

**Summary:** You can create an optional user message file to display information about other messages from BMC Software or other products when a valid message identifier is processed. After searching the *HLQ.MSGS* file, the BMC Software Online Message Processor searches for a user message file to locate information about the same message identifier. This procedure describes how to create a user message file.

---

**Step 1** Allocate the user message file in a sequential file that has the following attributes:

- RECFM = FB
- LRECL = 80
- BLKSIZE = 3120

**Step 2** Format the user messages.

**2.A** Start the message identifier in column 2 or column 3.

**2.B** Use the first three to six digits of a valid partitioned data set message member name (not necessarily BMC) as the first three to six digits of the message identifier.

**2.C** Define the user message with the identical message identifier of the related BMC Software message.

**Step 3** Update the BMCMSG CLIST.

**3.A** Locate the MFILE2 statement.

```
SET MFILE2 = &STR( ) /*BMC MESSAGE FILE */
```

**3.B** Add the name of your user message file, as shown in the following example:

```
SET MFILE2 = &STR(USER.MSG.DATASET)
```

**Step 4** Press END to exit.

## Editing the BMCDB2 CLIST

The BMCDB2 CLIST invokes the Administrative products. You might need to manually edit the CLIST to add products or to perform other tasks. Table 3-15 lists the tasks that you can perform when you edit the BMCDB2 CLIST.

**Table 3-15 BMCDB2 CLIST Tasks**

Procedure	Page
Set the variables.	3-52
Modify the control table.	3-53
Enable the use of DASD MANAGER PLUS within ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER.	3-59
Allocate application IDs.	3-60
Support subsequent DB2 subsystems.	3-62
Support catalog indirection.	3-62
Specify the servers for the CATALOG MANAGER CONNECT command.	3-63
Prohibit access to CATALOG MANAGER functionality.	3-65
Display an initial entry panel in CATALOG MANAGER.	3-67
Set the locking options for editing data in CATALOG MANAGER	3-69
Set the session profile in CATALOG MANAGER	3-71

## Setting the Variables in the BMCDB2 CLIST

**Summary:** You can edit several variables in the BMCDB2 CLIST to specify libraries and to use a generated permanent ISPF table. This procedure describes how to modify the variables.

**Note:** To turn off the PF key display, use the PFSHOW OFF command.

- Step 1** If you want to implicitly invoke the BMCDB2 CLIST, copy the CLIST from the *HLQ.JCL* library or the *HLQ.CLIST* library to a library in your SYSPROC concatenation.
- Step 2** Edit the BMCDB2 CLIST.
- Step 3** If you copied the BMCDB2 CLIST from the *HLQ.JCL* library or the *HLQ.CLIST* library to a library in your SYSPROC concatenation, modify the **BMCDB2C** variable in the BMCDB2 CLIST. Set this variable to the library in which the BMCDB2 CLIST was copied.
- Step 4** If you copied the BMCDB2PR, BMCDB2P2, BMCDB2TB, and BMCDB2H panels from the *HLQ.JCL* library or the *HLQ.PLIB* library to another library, modify the **BMCDB2P** variable in the BMCDB2 CLIST. Set this variable to the library in which the panels were copied.
- Step 5** To improve the performance of the invocation of the products from the BMCDB2 CLIST, set the **GENTABLE** variable in the BMCDB2 CLIST to **Y**, as shown in Figure 3-5.

**Figure 3-5** Setting the GENTABLE Variable in the BMCDB2 CLIST

```
SET BMCDB2T = &STR(BMC.DB2ADMN.D71.TLIB) /* CONTROL TABLE DATASET */
...
SET GENTABLE = Y /* USE GENERATED PERMANENT TABLE (Y/N) */
/* FOR CONTROL TABLE */
```

To place a control table in a permanent ISPF table in the *HLQ.TLIB* data set, invoke the BMCDB2 CLIST (see page 3-72).

- Step 6** Press END to exit.



# Modifying the Control Table in the BMCDB2 CLIST

**Summary:** By modifying the control table in the BMCDB2 CLIST, you can add a product, specify the location of libraries, enable access to data-sharing members, specify different libraries for SSIDs, and specify shared DOPTs. This procedure describes how to modify the control table.

## Before You Begin

By default, a control table is located at the end of the BMCDB2 CLIST. However, your installer might have specified a data set for control table input during installation. To verify the location of the control table for your installation, refer to the end of the BMCDB2 CLIST.

Figure 3-6 shows the default control table at the end of the BMCDB2 CLIST.

Figure 3-6 BMCDB2 CLIST Control Table

*DATA							
*PROD	SSID	D/I	DOPT	PLAN	APPL	COLL_ID	NICKNAME
*----		----		-----		-----	-----
ASU	DBAP	D	ASUDOPD1	ASU711DC	ASUA		*
*LIB	SSID	Data Set Name					
*----		-----					
EXIT	DBAP	'SYS3.DBAP.DSNEXIT'					*
LOAD	DBAP	'SYS2.DB2V71M.DSNLOAD'					*

**Note:** The data in the control table, which begins with the identifier \*DATA, is placed in specific positions, and every data row must have an asterisk in column 73. Comment lines contain an asterisk (\*) in column 1. The data in the control table is column specific.

Figure 3-7 is an example of a data set that has been specified for control table data that specifies the low-level qualifier CONTAB during installation.

Figure 3-7 BMCDB2 CLIST with Control Table Data Set

/*****	
/* *NOTE: If "DDIN" is present on the *DATA line, all input	
/* DATA is located in the named sequential file.	
/*****	
*DATA	DDIN userID.ADM731.CONTAB1.CONTAB

The following examples describe modifications to the control table. Refer to the comments that precede the control table data for the descriptions of the columns and for additional examples.

After you modify the control table, if you have specified **GENTABLE=Y** in the BMCDB2 CLIST, you must issue the GENERATE command from the BMCDB2PR panel to rebuild the ISPF control table in the *HLQ.TLIB* data set.

### To Modify the Control Table

**Step 1** Edit the control table.

**Step 2** To add a product to the control table, add a line in the \*PROD section for the product. Figure 3-8 on page 3-54 shows the line that adds the CHANGE MANAGER product to the table. *vrm* represents the version, release, and maintenance level of the product.

**Figure 3-8 Adding CHANGE MANAGER to the Control Table**

```
*DATA
*PROD SSID D/I DOPT      PLAN    APPL COLL_ID      NICKNAME
*---- |---- | - |----- |----- |---- |----- |-----
ACM   DBAP D ACMDOPD1 CMvrmFDF ACMA                      *
```

**Step 3** If one product was installed into a different set of libraries than another product, add a line in the \*PROD section that specifies the high-level qualifier (HLQ) of the product libraries. In the example in Figure 3-9, the line indicates the location of the CHANGE MANAGER libraries, which were installed into a different set of libraries than DASD MANAGER PLUS.

**Figure 3-9 Specifying the Location of CHANGE MANAGER Libraries**

```
*DATA
*PROD SSID D/I DOPT      PLAN    APPL COLL_ID      NICKNAME
*---- |---- | - |----- |----- |---- |----- |-----
ACM   DBAP H HLQ                      *
```

**Step 4** If the APF load library uses a different HLQ from other product libraries and is different from the variable APFLIB value in the control table, specify the following line in the \*PROD section:

```
ACM DBAP A 'ADDTNL.APF.LOAD'          *
```

**Step 5** If you installed the DB2 products in a data-sharing (sysplex) environment, enable access to all the data-sharing members or to the group attach name.

Duplicate the table rows of the existing subsystem name for each member or group attach name, substituting the member or group attach name for the SSID column. The example in Figure 3-10 on page 3-55 uses the group attach name GRP1.

**Figure 3-10 Enabling Access to Additional Members**

```
*DATA
*PROD SSID D/I DOPT      PLAN    APPL COLL_ID              NICKNAME
*-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
ASU  DBDB D ASUDOPD1 ASUvrmDC ASU5                                *
ACT  DBDB D ACTDOPD1 ACTvrmDM ACT5 ACTvrm_D_MAIN DBDB              *
ACM  DBDB D ACMDOPD1 CMvrmFDF ACM5                                *
EXIT DBDB 'SYS3.DBDB.DSNEXIT'                                     *
LOAD DBDB 'SYS2.DB2V71M.DSNLOAD'                                  *
HLQ  DBDB BMCADMN.Vvrm.D71                                        *
VCAT DBDB DBDBCAT                                                *
DDF  DBDB DBDB                                                    *

ASU  GRP1 D ASUDOPD1 ASUvrmDC ASUG                                *
ACT  GRP1 D ACTDOPD1 ACTvrmDM ACTG ACTvrm_D_MAIN GRP1              *
ACM  GRP1 D ACMDOPD1 CMvrmFDF ACMG                                *
EXIT GRP1 'SYS3.DBDB.DSNEXIT'                                     *
LOAD GRP1 'SYS2.DB2V71M.DSNLOAD'                                  *
HLQ  GRP1 BMCADMN.Vvrm.D71                                        *
VCAT GRP1 DBDBCAT                                                *
DDF  GRP1 DBDB                                                    *
```

In the example in Figure 3-10, the VCAT control table variable is used by the Administrative products to indicate the VSAM catalog alias that contains the data sets for the DB2 catalog (DBDBCAT).

**Step 6** If your installation has more than one version of DB2, use separate libraries for each version. Refer to the following scenarios as examples for editing the control table.

- Scenario 1: CHANGE MANAGER is installed on SSID DB61. The product libraries have an HLQ of BMC.DB61.\*. During the installation, JCL and the BMCDB2 CLIST are generated into BMC.DB61.JCL. Add the table in Figure 3-11 to the end of the BMCDB2 CLIST.

**Figure 3-11 Adding CHANGE MANAGER to Subsystem DB61**


---

```

*DATA
*PROD SSID D/I DOPT      PLAN   APPL COLL_ID      NICKNAME
*---- | ---- | - | ---- | ---- | ---- | ---- |
ACM   DB61 D ACMDOPD1 CMvrmEDF ACMA                      *
*LIB  SSID Data Set Name
*---- | ---- | ---- |
EXIT  DB61 'SYS3.DB61.DSNEXIT'                          *
LOAD  DB61 'SYS2.DB2V61M.DSNLOAD'                        *

```

---

- Scenario 2: CHANGE MANAGER is installed on SSID DB71. The product libraries have an HLQ of BMC.DB71.\*. During the installation, JCL and the BMCDB2 CLIST are generated into BMC.DB71.JCL. Add the table shown in Figure 3-12 to the end of the BMCDB2 CLIST.

**Figure 3-12 Adding CHANGE MANAGER to Subsystem DB71**


---

```

*DATA
*PROD SSID D/I DOPT      PLAN   APPL COLL_ID      NICKNAME
*---- | ---- | - | ---- | ---- | ---- | ---- |
ACM   DB71 D ACMDOPD1 CMvrmFDF ACMB                      *
*LIB  SSID Data Set Name
*---- | ---- | ---- |
EXIT  DB71 'SYS3.DB71.DSNEXIT'                          *
LOAD  DB71 'SYS2.DB2V71M.DSNLOAD'                        *

```

---

- Scenario 3: If the BMCDB2 CLIST in BMC.DB61.JCL is used to invoke CHANGE MANAGER for both SSIDs, add the lines in Figure 3-13 to the control table.

**Figure 3-13 Running DB71 Administrative Products from the DB61 BMCDB2 CLIST**


---

```

*DATA
*PROD SSID D/I DOPT      PLAN   APPL COLL_ID      NICKNAME
*---- | ---- | - | ---- | ---- | ---- | ---- |
ACM   DB71 D ACMDOPD1 CMvrmFDF ACMB                      *
*LIB  SSID Data Set Name
*---- | ---- | ---- |
EXIT  DB71 'SYS3.DB71.DSNEXIT'                          *
LOAD  DB71 'SYS2.DB2V71M.DSNLOAD'                        *
HLQ   DB71 BMC.DB71                                     *

```

---

The HLQ in Figure 3-13 instructs the BMCDB2 CLIST to use BMC.DB71 as the HLQ for products that are installed on SSID DB71. Figure 3-14 on page 3-57 shows the updated control table for the BMCDB2 CLIST in BMC.DB61.JCL.

**Figure 3-14 Updated BMCDB2 CLIST**

```

*DATA
*PROD SSID D/I DOPT      PLAN  APPL COLL_ID      NICKNAME
*---- |----| - |----- |-----| ---- |-----|-----|-----|
ACM  DB61 D ACMDOPD1 CMvrmEDF ACMA                *
ACM  DB71 D ACMDOPD1 CMvrmFDF ACMB                *
*LIB  SSID Data Set Name
*---- |----|-----|-----|
EXIT DB61 'SYS3.DBAP.DSNEXIT'                      *
LOAD DB61 'SYS2.DB2V61M.DSNLOAD'                  *
HLQ  DB61 BMC.DB61                                *
EXIT DB71 'SYS3.DB71.DSNEXIT'                      *
LOAD DB71 'SYS2.DB2V71M.DSNLOAD'                  *
HLQ  DB71 BMC.DB71                                *

```

**Step 7** Specify the same DOPTs module for an Administrative product to be shared between two or more DB2 subsystems.

- CATALOG MANAGER or DASD MANAGER PLUS must be at the same version and release level on each of the DB2 subsystems.

The DB2 exit and load data sets, if different for each DB2 subsystem, will have to be removed from the DOPTs modules and put into a linklist concatenation for use by foreground and batch processes.

- ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER must be at the same version and release level on all DB2 subsystems. In addition, the DB2 subsystems must be at the same version and release level.

For example, on two DB2 version 6 subsystems, version 6.2.01E can share a DOPTS, but versions 6.2.01D and 6.2.01E cannot.

The DB2 exit and load data sets, if different for each DB2 subsystem, will have to be removed from the DOPTs modules and put into a linklist concatenation for use by foreground and batch processes.

- 7.A** For each of the Administrative products, choose one DOPTs module to represent the product's default options for all relevant DB2 subsystems.
- 7.B** Verify that the control table contains distinct and correct values for the VCAT variable.
- 7.C** Change the control table DOPTs values specified for the product and SSID to the shared DOPTs name.

**Step 8** Press END to exit.

**Step 9** If you edited your BMCDB2 CLIST to use a generated permanent ISPF table for the control table (see Step 5 on page 3-52) or if you modified the control table that was previously generated, type **GENERATE** on the **Command** line of the BMCDB2PR panel.

This action rebuilds the ISPF control table in the *HLQ.TLIB* data set.

## Enabling the Use of DASD MANAGER PLUS within ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER

**Summary:** You can use DASD MANAGER PLUS within ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER. This functionality is automatically available if you are installing ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER and DASD MANAGER PLUS simultaneously. However, if these products were not installed at the same time and they do not share libraries, you can perform the steps in this procedure to obtain the functionality.

### Step 1 Edit the BMCDB2 CLIST.

- 1.A** Add the DASD MANAGER PLUS load library HLQ to the HLQ2 variable.
- 1.B** Add the DASD MANAGER PLUS product information to the BMCDB2 control table values, as shown in Figure 3-15.

**Note:** Refer to the comments that precede the \*DATA section of the control table for help with adding rows to the table.

**Figure 3-15 Adding DASD MANAGER PLUS to the Control Table**

```
*DATA
*PROD SSID D/I DOPT      PLAN  APPL COLL_ID      NICKNAME
*-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----
ASU  DBAP D ASUDOPD1 ASU711DC ASUA                      *
```

### Step 2 Update the ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER DOPTs.

- 2.A** Add the DASD MANAGER PLUS load library or APF library to the SL1, SL2, SL3, SL4, and SL5 variables.
- 2.B** Update the DASDMAN and ASUDOPT options as follows:
  - Set DASDMAN=(Y,R)
  - Set ASUDOPT=ASUDOPD1 (or to the name of the DASD MANAGER PLUS DOPTs module)
- 2.C** Reassemble the DOPTs module.

### Step 3 Update the product options file (POF) and set the DASD.LOAD variable to the DASD MANAGER PLUS load library or APF library.

- Step 4** Add the DASD MANAGER PLUS collection and package list (ASU<sub>vr</sub>m\_D\_MAIN.\*) to the PACKLIST for the Front End, Specification, and Analysis plans.
- Step 5** Rebind the plans.

## Modifying the Application ID in the BMCDB2 CLIST

The control table allocates the ISPF application ID based on DB2 subsystem access. During installation, the installation system attempts to make each ISPF application ID unique across DB2 subsystems.

By default, the first time that the installation system generates the control table, individual application IDs *prdA* are specified, where *prd* is the three-character product code. The shared application ID ADMA is also specified.

**Note:** During the installation, if you connect to an existing version of SQL Explorer, an individual application ID of DAA is added to the CLIST.

If you use the SSID installation method to perform a second or subsequent installation, the installation system attempts to scan the existing control table and to allocate a unique application ID. For example, if ALTER is initially installed on DB2T, the application ID is ALUA. If ALTER is installed on DB2P, the installation system scans the BMCDB2 CLIST and uses application ID ALUB because ALUA is already in use. The shared application ID for an SSID installation is ADMB.

When a user accesses an Administrative product, the user can specify to use a shared or individual application ID, and the control table establishes the ISPF application ID and allocates the DOPTs module name. The product that receives control either initializes or refreshes the user's options with the information from the DOPTs module and the POF that is allocated by the control table.

### Avoiding Overlaying User Options

In some situations, when you make changes in one environment, those changes appear in another environment. This situation usually happens when the same ISPF application ID is being established for multiple SSIDs, and is probably unacceptable because the user-option changes are SSID specific.



For example, if both of the DB2T and DB2P individual application IDs for ALTER are established as ALUA, any changes to user options that are made for DB2T are also made for the DB2P user options. The same is true for a shared application ID of ADMA used by DB2T and DB2P.

To avoid accidentally overlaying user options, ensure that the ISPF application that is established for each DB2 SSID is unique. The installation system attempts to make each application ID unique in a given BMCDB2 CLIST. It does not, however, make each application ID unique across multiple BMCDB2 CLISTs. For example, if you execute the installation for DB2T and for DB2P, you have two BMCDB2 CLISTs—one for each environment. The initial ISPF application ID for both SSIDs is *xxxA*, which results in an overlay.

If you are planning to execute multiple copies of the BMCDB2 CLIST, change the ISPF application ID that the CLIST allocates so that each SSID user profile is unique across all BMCDB2 CLISTs (see Figure 3-16).

**Note:** If you do not change the application IDs, changing user options in one SSID might also change the same user options for a different SSID.

**Figure 3-16 Sample BMCDB2 CLIST**

```
*DATA
*PROD SSID D/I DOPT      PLAN  APPL COLL_ID      NICKNAME
*-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
  ALU  xxxx D ALUDOPD1  ALvrmDDF  ALU#
  ASU  xxxx D ASUDOPD1  ASUvrmDC  ASU#
  ACT  xxxx D ACTDOPD1  ACTvrmDM  ACT#  ACTvrm_D_MAIN  xxxx
  ACM  xxxx D ACMDOPD1  CMvrmEDF  ACM#
*LIB  SSID Data Set Name
*-----|-----|-----|
  EXIT xxxx 'DB2.DSNEXIT'
  LOAD xxxx 'DB2.DSNLOAD'
  HLQ  xxxx BMCADMN.Vvrm.D71
  VCAT xxxx xxxxCAT
  DDF  xxxx xxxx
APPL xxxx ADMA#
```

In the sample shown in Figure 3-16, the variable *xxxx* is the SSID name and *#* is a unique one-byte character (such as A for the first SSID, B for the second SSID, C for the third, and so on).

## Updating the BMCDB2 CLIST for Support of Subsequent DB2 Subsystems

The installation system generates member BMCDB2SS to support subsequent DB2 subsystems. This member contains logic for the DOPTs module allocation. When you use this member to update the BMCDB2 CLIST, consider the following points:

- If you have MVS/ESA and TSO/E version 2.1 or later, the installation system prompts you for the location of the BMCDB2 CLIST and automatically updates it with the information in the BMCDB2SS.
- If you do not have MVS/ESA and TSO/E version 2.1 or later, follow the directions in BMCDB2SS for updating the BMCDB2 CLIST.

**Note:** If you are installing CATALOG MANAGER, follow the instructions for modification of the CATALOG MANAGER plan name.

## Updating the BMCDB2 CLIST to Support Catalog Indirection

Member BMCDB2CI is generated to support catalog indirection. This member contains logic for the DOPTs module allocation for indirect access. When you use BMCDB2CI to update the BMCDB2 CLIST, consider the following points:

- If you have MVS/ESA and TSO/E 2.1 or later, the installation system automatically updates the BMCDB2 CLIST with BMCDB2CI. The installation system searches both the JCL output file and the installation file to apply the updates wherever a copy of BMCDB2 is found. The installation system prompts you for the location of the BMCDB2 CLIST.
- If you do not have MVS/ESA and TSO/E 2.1 or later, follow the directions in BMCDB2CI for updating the BMCDB2 CLIST.

**Note:** If you are installing CATALOG MANAGER, follow the instructions for modification of the CATALOG MANAGER plan name.

## Specifying the Servers in the BMCDB2 CLIST

**Summary:** The servers that the CATALOG MANAGER product uses in the CONNECT command are listed in the control table. This procedure describes how to edit the control table to change or enable the servers.

**Step 1** Edit the control table.

**Step 2** To change the servers that are listed for the CONNECT command (see Figure 3-17), you can add, delete, or modify the data rows.

**Figure 3-17 CATALOG MANAGER CONNECT Command Servers**

*PROD	SSID	S	SERVER NAME	SSID	COLL_ID	NICKNAME	
*----	----		-----	----	-----	-----	
ACT	DBBF	S	DBBA	DBBA	LCTvrm_D_MAIN	DBBFDBBA	*
ACT	DBBF	S	DBDB	DBDB	LCTvrm_D_MAIN	DBBFDBDB	*

**Step 3** Update the values for the Server Name, Server SSID, and the Server Nickname.

**Step 4** Follow the instructions in the comment block (see Figure 3-18) to enable the servers that were added by the MSSID installation. These server entries will be commented out. Some editing of the new server entries might be required.

**Figure 3-18 BMCDB2 CLIST for Multiple SSID Installation**

```

* * * * *
*          **INSERTED FROM MSSID INSTALL**
*  TO USE, MANUALLY UPDATE SERVER DATA ROWS BELOW
*  AND UNCOMMENT BY REMOVING COLUMN ONE ASTERISKS
*PROD SSID S SERVER NAME          SSID COLL_ID          NICKNAME
*---- |---- | |----- |---- |----- |-----
ACT  DBBF S DBBA                DBBA LCTvrm_D_MAIN        DBBFDBBA      *
ACT  DBBF S DBDB                DBDB LCTvrm_D_MAIN        DBBFDBDB      *
ACT  DBBF S DBDA                DBDA LCTvrm_D_MAIN        DBBFDBDA      *
*ACT DBBA S DBBA                DBBA LCTvrm_D_MAIN        DBBFDBBA      *
*ACT DBBA S DBDB                DBDB LCTvrm_D_MAIN        DBBFDBDB      *
*ACT DBBA S DBDA                DBDA LCTvrm_D_MAIN        DBBFDBDA      *

```

**Step 5** Press END to exit.

**Step 6** If you edited your BMCDB2 CLIST to use a generated permanent ISPF table for the control table (see Step 5 on page 3-52) or if you modified the control table that was previously generated, type **GENERATE** on the **Command** line.

This action rebuilds the ISPF control table in the *HLQ.TLIB* data set.

## Prohibiting Access to CATALOG MANAGER Functions Other Than Data Editing

**Summary:** The CATALOG MANAGER initial command restricts users from all CATALOG MANAGER functions except data editing. When the initial command is enabled, CATALOG MANAGER starts at the Edit DB2 Table Options panel where users can set options for editing data, controlling the display of data, and processing SQL. Users can navigate through all data editing panels, but cannot access the Primary Menu panel or other function panels. When users press END from the Edit DB2 Table Options panel, CATALOG MANAGER closes.

This procedure describes how to enable the initial command.

**Warning!** You cannot enable both the initial command and the entry panel command (see “Specifying an Entry Panel in CATALOG MANAGER” on page 3-67) in the same BMCDB2 CLIST.

**Step 1** Edit the BMCDB2 CLIST.

**Step 2** Find the lines that are shown in Figure 3-19.

**Figure 3-19 BMCDB2 CLIST—CATALOG MANAGER Initial Command**

```
WHEN(ACTEMAIN) DO /* CATALOG MANAGER
  SET BMCFPCNT= 10100
  IF (&ACCESS = INDIRECT) THEN +
    SET CIACCESS = YES
  SET APPLID = &ACTAPPL
  SET PARM = &STR(S=&SSID,O=&ACTDOPT,D=&ASUDOPTD,+
    M=BC,I=&CIACCESS,A=&ACMDOPT,+
    DB2CAT=&DB2VCAT )
/* EDITOR LOCK OPTIONS (ELO) - ALLOWS USER TO IDENTIFY */
/* THE DEFAULT LOCKING OPTIONS FOR DATA EDITING. USER */
/* MAY CHOOSE ALL OR ANY COMBINATION OF THE THREE. */
/* T - TABLE LOCK, R - ROW LOCK, N - NO LOCKING */
  SET PARM = &STR(&PARM,ELO=TRN)
/* UNCOMMENT 'SET PARM' LINE BELOW TO ALLOW ACCESS ONLY*/
/* TO DATA EDITING FUNCTION. USERS CANNOT ACCESS OTHER*/
/* CATALOG MANAGER FUNCTIONS. */
/*-----*/
  /* SET PARM = &STR(&PARM,E=EDIT) */
/*-----*/
```

**Step 3** As directed in the CLIST, uncomment the following line:

```
/* SET PARM = &STR(&PARM,E=EDIT) */
```

**Step 4** Press END to exit.

## Specifying an Entry Panel in CATALOG MANAGER

**Summary:** You can optionally cause CATALOG MANAGER to display an entry panel other than the Primary Menu panel by adding an entry panel command to the BMCDB2 CLIST. The entry panel command is a CATALOG MANAGER single command of 1 through 48 characters that is passed as a parameter to the CATALOG MANAGER product module ACTEMAIN from the BMCDB2 CLIST. Users have access to all functions of CATALOG MANAGER unless they have been restricted by other means, such as a customized session profile.

This procedure describes how to edit the BMCDB2 CLIST to enable this feature.

**Warning!** You cannot enable both the entry panel command and the initial command (see “Prohibiting Access to CATALOG MANAGER Functions Other Than Data Editing” on page 3-65) in the same BMCDB2 CLIST.

**Step 1** Edit the BMCDB2 CLIST.

**Step 2** Find the lines that are shown in Figure 3-19.

**Figure 3-20 BMCDB2 CLIST—CATALOG MANAGER Entry Panel**

```
WHEN(ACTEMAIN) DO /* CATALOG MANAGER
  SET BMCFCNT= 10100
  IF (&ACCESS = INDIRECT) THEN +
    SET CIACCESS = YES
  SET APPLID = &ACTAPPL
  SET PARM = &STR(S=&SSID,O=&ACTDOPT,D=&ASUDOPTD,+
    M=BC,I=&CIACCESS,A=&ACMDOPT,+
    DB2CAT=&DB2VCAT )
/* EDITOR LOCK OPTIONS (ELO) - ALLOWS USER TO IDENTIFY */
/* THE DEFAULT LOCKING OPTIONS FOR DATA EDITING. USER */
/* MAY CHOOSE ALL OR ANY COMBINATION OF THE THREE. */
/* T - TABLE LOCK, R - ROW LOCK, N - NO LOCKING */
  SET PARM = &STR(&PARM,ELO=TRN)
/* UNCOMMENT 'SET PARM' LINE BELOW TO ALLOW ACCESS ONLY*/
/* TO DATA EDITING FUNCTION. USERS CANNOT ACCESS OTHER*/
/* CATALOG MANAGER FUNCTIONS. */
/*-----*/
  /* SET PARM = &STR(&PARM,E=EDIT) */
/*-----*/
```

**Step 3** Replace the command E=EDIT with the entry panel command. The entry panel command syntax is **C=command**.

**Note:** If the CATALOG MANAGER command that you specify requires a function and qualifier, you must include them when defining the entry panel command parameter.

**Step 4** Uncomment the line that includes the entry panel command.

Figure 3-21 shows the BMCDB2 CLIST edited to specify the CONNECT entry panel command.

**Figure 3-21 Edited BMCDB2 CLIST—CATALOG MANAGER Entry Panel**

---

```
WHEN(ACTEMAIN) DO /* CATALOG MANAGER
  SET BMCFPCNT= 10100
  IF (&ACCESS = INDIRECT) THEN +
    SET CIACCESS = YES
  SET APPLID = &ACTAPPL
  SET PARM = &STR(S=&SSID,O=&ACTDOPT,D=&ASUDOPTD,+
                M=BC,I=&CIACCESS,A=&ACMDOPT,+
                DB2CAT=&DB2VCAT )
/* EDITOR LOCK OPTIONS (ELO) - ALLOWS USER TO IDENTIFY */
/* THE DEFAULT LOCKING OPTIONS FOR DATA EDITING. USER */
/* MAY CHOOSE ALL OR ANY COMBINATION OF THE THREE. */
/* T - TABLE LOCK, R - ROW LOCK, N - NO LOCKING */
  SET PARM = &STR(&PARM,ELO=TRN)
/* UNCOMMENT 'SET PARM' LINE BELOW TO ALLOW ACCESS ONLY*/
/* TO DATA EDITING FUNCTION. USERS CANNOT ACCESS OTHER*/
/* CATALOG MANAGER FUNCTIONS. */
/*-----*/
  SET PARM = &STR(&PARM,C=CONNECT)
/*-----*/
```

---

**Step 5** Press END to exit.



## Specifying Locking Options for Editing Data in CATALOG MANAGER

---

**Summary:** CATALOG MANAGER offers three locking options for editing table data: shared table lock, row lock, and no lock. To set the editor locking options for all users, you must enable the locking options command. The command is passed as a parameter to the CATALOG MANAGER product module ACTEMAIN from the BMCDB2 CLIST. This procedure describes how to enable the command.

---

**Step 1** Edit the BMCDB2 CLIST.

**Step 2** Find the lines shown in Figure 3-22.

**Figure 3-22 BMCDB2 CLIST—Lock Options Command**

---

```
WHEN(ACTEMAIN) DO /* CATALOG MANAGER
  SET BMCFPCNT= 10100
  IF (&ACCESS = INDIRECT) THEN +
    SET CIACCESS = YES
  SET APPLID = &ACTAPPL
  SET PARM = &STR(S=&SSID,O=&ACTDOPT,D=&ASUDOPTD,+
    M=BC,I=&CIACCESS,A=&ACMDOPT,+
    DB2CAT=&DB2VCAT)
/* EDITOR LOCK OPTIONS (ELO) - ALLOWS USER TO IDENTIFY */
/* THE DEFAULT LOCKING OPTIONS FOR DATA EDITING. USER */
/* MAY CHOOSE ALL OR ANY COMBINATION OF THE THREE. */
/* T - TABLE LOCK, R - ROW LOCK, N - NO LOCKING */
SET PARM = &STR(&PARM,ELO=TRN)
```

---

**Step 3** Enable the CATALOG MANAGER locking options command.

The syntax for the locking options command is `ELO=option`.

As an example, Figure 3-22 shows the locking option command ELO set to TRN. These options determine whether requests for edits from any user are allowed while a table is edited. For more information about the options for data editing, see the *CATALOG MANAGER for DB2 User Guide*.

**Step 4** Press END to exit.

**Note:** The CATALOG MANAGER data editing package ACTJTEQ is installed with the following values for two BIND PACKAGE options: an ISOLATION value of CS (cursor stability) and a CURRENTDATA value of YES. You can change these values by rebinding the data editing package with other values that are allowed by DB2. See the *DB2 Universal Database for OS/390 and z/OS Command Reference* for BIND PACKAGE syntax and descriptions.

## Setting the Session Profile in CATALOG MANAGER

---

**Summary:** The CATALOG MANAGER session profile enables you to customize specific product displays and operations for specific users or groups of users. To initially set the session profile for all user groups, you must invoke the session profile command. The CATALOG MANAGER session profile command (1 to 18 characters) that calls a set of user-customized features that is saved under a specific session profile name. The session profile command is passed as a parameter to the CATALOG MANAGER product module ACTEMAIN from the BMCDB2 CLIST. This procedure describes how to invoke the command.

---

**Step 1** Edit the BMCDB2 CLIST.

**Step 2** Invoke the session profile command.

The syntax for the session profile command is `PR=profile_name`.

As an example, adding the following line in the CLIST causes CATALOG MANAGER to invoke the session profile that is named PROGRAMMERS:

```
SET PARM = &STR(&PARM,PR=PROGRAMMERS)
```

**Step 3** Press END to exit.

## Integrating CATALOG MANAGER with SQL Explorer for DB2

CATALOG MANAGER calls the SQL Explorer for DB2 product by way of the ACTPSS CLIST, which is customized during the installation of CATALOG MANAGER. If you want to integrate the products but did not choose to do so during installation, see the *Performance Products Customization Guide* for instructions on enabling the integration during customization.

# Invoking the BMCDB2 CLIST

This procedure describes the steps that you must complete to invoke the CLIST.

**Step 1** Invoke the BMCDB2 CLIST by using one of the following commands:

- If you specify your high-level qualifier with JCL as the low-level node, invoke BMCDB2 explicitly from your output JCL data set in the ISPF command shell or your ISPF dialog with the following command:

```
ex 'HLQ.JCL(BMCDB2)'
```

- If the BMCDB2 CLIST is copied to a library in your SYSPROC concatenation, invoke BMCDB2 implicitly with

```
%BMCDB2
```

To specify various parameters with the BMCDB2 command, see “Invoking the BMCDB2 Command” on page 3-73.

**Step 2** If the BMCDB2 CLIST supports multiple SSIDs, in the BMCDB2PR panel type ? in the DB2 SSID field.

**Step 3** On the BMCDB2P2 panel, type S to select an SSID from the list of available SSIDs.

The SSID that you selected appears in the DB2 SSID field of the BMCDB2PR panel.

**Step 4** If you edited your BMCDB2 CLIST to use a generated permanent ISPF table for the control table (see Step 5 on page 3-52) or if you modified the control table that was previously generated, type **GENERATE** on the Command line.

This action places a control table in a permanent ISPF table in the *HLQ.TLIB* data set, which enables you to invoke an Administrative product directly, without displaying a BMC Software-generated product selection panel. Refer to the **BMCDB2T** variable in the BMCDB2 CLIST for the location of the generated ISPF table.

**Step 5** Verify that all the products appear on the BMCDB2PR panel that is displayed.

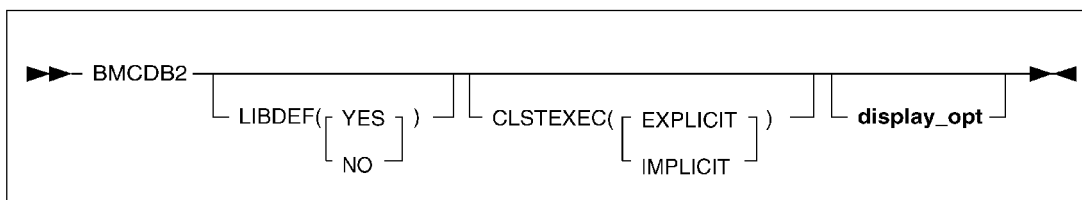
## Invoking the BMCDB2 Command

You can specify various parameters with the BMCDB2 command to perform the following functions:

- invoke an Administrative product directly
- avoid the use of the ISPF LIBDEF facility to allocate the necessary ISPF data sets
- invoke the BMCDB2 CLIST implicitly

The syntax of the BMCDB2 command is shown in Figure 3-23.

**Figure 3-23 BMCDB2 Command**



The parameters specify the following information:

- **LIBDEF**—determines whether the BMCDB2 CLIST should use the ISPF LIBDEF facility to allocate all necessary ISPF data sets
 

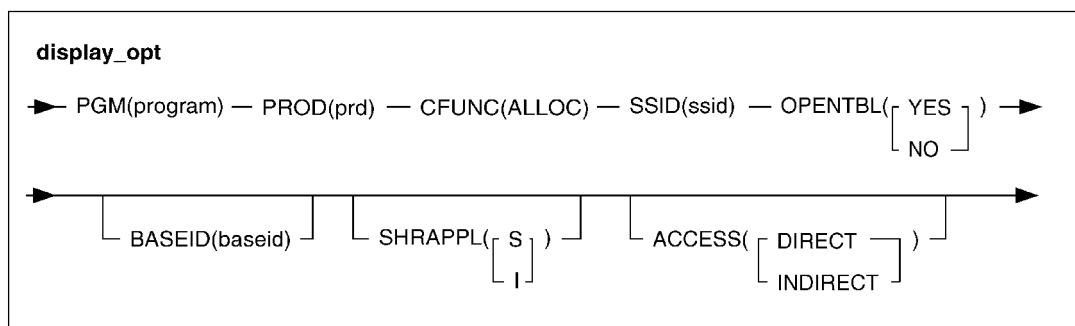
**Note:** By default the BMCDB2 CLIST uses the ISPF LIBDEF facility to allocate all necessary ISPF data sets. Thus, you might not need to modify your TSO logon procedure to allocate data sets. If ISPF 4.2 or later is available, the **STACK** keyword is added to all LIBDEF statements that are used in the BMCDB2 CLIST.
- **CLSTEXEC**—specifies whether the BMCDB2 CLIST should be invoked explicitly or implicitly
  - If the CLIST is invoked explicitly, you must use a fully-qualified data set name and member name.
  - If the CLIST is invoked implicitly, you can use only the member name. In addition, the CLIST must reside in a library in your SYSPROC concatenation.

For example, to avoid the use of the ISPF LIBDEF facility to allocate the necessary ISPF data sets and to implicitly invoke the CLIST, use the following command:

```
%BMCDB2 LIBDEF(NO)CLSTEXEC(IMPPLICIT)
```

The syntax of the BMCDB2 command display options is shown in Figure 3-24. These options are used to invoke an Administrative product directly by not displaying the BMCDB2PR panel.

**Figure 3-24 BMCDB2 Command—Display Options**



The display option parameters specify the following information:

- PGM—specifies the name of the program, as listed in Table 3-16

**Table 3-16 Program Names**

Product	Program
ALTER	ALTFRONT
CATALOG MANAGER	ACTEMAIN
CHANGE MANAGER	ACMFRONT
DASD MANAGER	ASUFMAIN

- PROD—specifies the three-character product code
- CFUNC—specifies the CLIST function to perform (ALLOC)
- SSID—names the subsystem that is used to invoke the product

**Note:** The SSID must be a valid subsystem that is defined in the control table.

- OPENTBL—specifies whether to issue an OPEN command against the control table

- **BASEID**—names the subsystem that is used to invoke the product with Single Point of Entry (SPE)
- **SHRAPPL**—specifies whether the products on a single SSID should use a shared ISPF profile or use an individual profile
- **ACCESS**—specifies to access the DB2 catalog directly or to use an indirect copy of the catalog

For example, to invoke CATALOG MANAGER explicitly, without displaying the BMCDB2PR product selection panel, use the following command:

```
ex 'HLQ.JCL(BMCDB2) '  
'PGM(ACTEMAIN)PROD(ACT)SSID(DEBA)CFUNC(ALLOC)OPENTBL(YES) '
```

# Verifying the Installation of the Administrative Products

This procedure describes the steps that you must complete to verify that the Administrative products that have an ISPF interface have been installed correctly.

## Before You Begin

Invoke the BMCDB2 CLIST. For information, see “Invoking the BMCDB2 CLIST” on page 3-72.

## To Verify the Installation

- Step 1** On the Command line, type **CONTAB**.
- Step 2** On the BMCDB2TB panel, verify that the correct partitioned data set (PDS) and member name are displayed in the library in which the BMCDB2 CLIST is located.
- If the PDS and member name are not displayed, set the **BMCDB2C** variable in the BMCDB2 CLIST to the correct library.
- Step 3** Exit the **CONTAB** panel.
- Step 4** On the Command line, type **TSO BMCMSG BMCnnnnn**, where *nnnnn* is a valid message number (for example, BMC45680).
- Step 5** Verify that a message is displayed. Press **END** to exit the BMCMSG CLIST.
- Step 6** Select one of the products that you installed.
- Step 7** Access the environment information for the product that you have selected as follows:
- In **ALTER** or **CHANGE MANAGER**, at the main menu, type **ENVI** on the **Command** line.
  - In **CATALOG MANAGER**, on the Primary Menu panel or any list panel, type **ENVI** on the **Command** line.
  - In **DASD MANAGER PLUS**, at the main menu, select option **5 User Options**. Then select option **4 Current environment information**.



**Step 8** Review the environment panel to verify the displayed information. Exit the ENVI panel.

**Note:** If you are installing CATALOG MANAGER and are using the DDF, enter **CONNECT** on the Command line (from CATALOG MANAGER). The CATALOG MANAGER Change Access panel appears. Then, verify connections or attachments to other DB2 subsystems.

**Step 9** Repeat Step 6 through Step 8 for each product that you installed.

**Note:** To navigate quickly between the products, use Fast Path Navigation. For information, see “Using Fast Path Navigation” on page 3-77.

## Using Fast Path Navigation

For the Administrative products, the installation system provides Fast Path Navigation, which enables you to switch from one product to another without leaving the current product.

To initiate Fast Path Navigation, on the Command line of the current product, enter the name of the product to which you want to switch. See Table 3-17 for a list of the products and commands.

**Table 3-17 Fast Path Navigation Commands**

Product	Command
ALTER	BMCALTER
CATALOG MANAGER	BMCCAT
CHANGE MANAGER	BMCCHG
DASD MANAGER PLUS	BMCDASD

For example, if you are currently using DASD MANAGER PLUS and want to view an object description in CATALOG MANAGER, enter **BMCCAT** on the DASD MANAGER PLUS Command line. When you initiate Fast Path Navigation, the main menu for the requested product is displayed. In this case, the DASD MANAGER PLUS session is temporarily suspended and then resumed when you exit CATALOG MANAGER.

To use Fast Path Navigation, you must install the products by using the installation system and use the BMCDB2 CLIST during product invocation. The distributed CLISTs BMCADMF1 and BMCADMF2 must be in a data set that is either in the ALTLIB list of the BMCDB2 CLIST or in your SYSPROC concatenation. In addition, the product to which you are switching must be installed and reside in the same set of libraries as the product from which you are switching.

**Note:** You cannot use Fast Path Navigation to access a product that is currently suspended. For example, if you switch from ALTER to DASD MANAGER PLUS, you cannot use Fast Path to return to ALTER because it is currently suspended. Instead, you have to exit the DASD MANAGER PLUS session to resume the ALTER session.

# Refreshing Values in the User Profiles

You can change the values in the DOPTs module or in the POF for a product on an individual basis by using the product's user options. These user options are saved and maintained in the user profile.

If you need to reset the values in the user profiles, the Administrative products provide a refresh feature. This feature modifies one or more option values for all the product's users.

## Refreshing DOPTs Values in the User Profile

To refresh an option value in all existing user profiles, enclose the option value in parentheses and include ,R after the value inside the parentheses, as in the following example:

```
SSID=(DB2J,R), *
```

**Note:** Do not drop either the continuation comma after the closing parenthesis or the continuation character in column 72.

This example refreshes the default subsystem ID for all the product's users.

For products other than CATALOG MANAGER, the ,R in the variable syntax indicates that the value specified will refresh the existing value of the variable in the user's ISPF profile data set, if the time stamp of the DOPTs is later than that in the user's ISPF profile member. However, the user can change the override value in the user profile. In CATALOG MANAGER, the refresh occurs every time that a user starts the product.

If you have problems refreshing your user options, complete the following steps:

1. Verify that the refresh option is coded on the correct macro listing keyword in the DOPTs assembly member.
2. Verify that the DOPTs assembly was completed successfully with a return code of 0.

If you get assembly errors, compare your DOPTs listing with one that the installation process generated. Some common errors are as follows:

- missing comma delimiter after keyword value
- missing continuation character in column 72
- incorrect symbol-variable substitution
- missing or unbalanced single quotation marks

3. Verify that the assembled DOPTs member is the same DOPTs member that the Administrative products use.

To verify, access the environment information for your product as follows:

- In ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER, at the main menu, type **ENVI** on the **Command** line.
- In CATALOG MANAGER, on the Primary Menu panel or any list panel, type **ENVI** on the **Command** line.
- In DASD MANAGER PLUS, at the main menu, select option **5 User Options**. Then select option **4 Current environment information**.

Then compare the listed DOPTs module name with the name of the DOPTs module that you assembled and link-edited.

4. Verify that the DOPTs module assembly is updating the correct load library.

The SYSLMOD ddname statement should reference the load library where the Administrative products reside.

## Refreshing POF Values in the User Profile

To refresh an option value, modify the value of the POF keyword in one of the following ways:

- include **,(R)** after the option value, as in the following example:

```
LOADDOPT=AMU$MMS , ( R )
```

- specify a blank and **,(R)**, as in the following example:

```
LOADDOPT= , ( R )
```

These examples refresh the name of the LOADPLUS user options module.

The specified value will refresh the existing value of the variable in the user's ISPF profile data set when the POFDATE parameter is later than the previous POFDATE that is stored in the user's ISPF profile.

If you have problems refreshing your user options, complete the following steps:

1. Verify that the refresh option is coded on the correct POF keyword.
2. Verify the date in the POFDATA parameter.

## Where to Go from Here

After you perform the post-installation tasks for the Administrative products, you can perform the post-installation tasks for the BMC Admin Server, if you plan to use the client for ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER. For information, see Chapter 4, “Performing Post-Installation Tasks for the BMC Admin Server.”



---

# Chapter 4      Performing Post-Installation Tasks for the BMC Admin Server

This chapter presents the following topics:

Overview .....	4-3
Performing Post-installation Tasks for the BMC Admin Server .....	4-3
Configuring TCP/IP .....	4-4
Configuring APPC SNA .....	4-8
Setting Up the BMC Admin Server .....	4-9
Setting Up the SNA Gateway Server .....	4-16
Setting Up the SNA Client .....	4-20
Confirming the Host-Code Page for the BMC Admin Server .....	4-22
Enabling the Use of Secondary Authorization IDs .....	4-23
Installing the Client .....	4-24
Before You Begin .....	4-24
Supported Environments .....	4-24
Verifying Server Networking .....	4-26
Selecting the Type of Installation .....	4-27
Installing a Client to Run Locally .....	4-28
Installing the Client on a Network Drive .....	4-30
Installing a Client (Command-Line Interface) .....	4-31
Installing the Client Using Distribution Software .....	4-33
Verifying Installed Files .....	4-34
Troubleshooting the Client Installation .....	4-34
Starting and Configuring the Client .....	4-35
Starting the Client .....	4-35
Configuring the Client .....	4-35
Where to Go from Here .....	4-37

---

Maintaining the Client . . . . .	4-37
Adding a Client . . . . .	4-38
Uninstalling a Client (GUI) . . . . .	4-39
Uninstalling a Client (Command-Line Interface) . . . . .	4-40
Reinstalling a Client . . . . .	4-41



## Overview

The BMC Admin Server is a started task that executes on OS/390. The ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER graphical user interface (GUI) uses the BMC Admin Server to access the Database Administration products executing on OS/390. This chapter describes the tasks that you must perform after you have installed the BMC Admin Server for ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER. This chapter also describes the tasks that you must perform to install, start, and configure the client for ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER.

## Performing Post-installation Tasks for the BMC Admin Server

After you install the BMC Admin Server for ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER, you must perform the tasks that are listed in Table 4-1.

**Table 4-1 Post-Installation Tasks for BMC Admin Server**

Step	Task	Page
1	Configure your communication protocol. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you chose TCP/IP as your protocol, see "Configuring TCP/IP" on page 4-4.</li> <li>If you chose APPC SNA, see "Configuring APPC SNA" on page 4-8.</li> </ul>	4-4 4-8
2	<i>(APPC SNA protocol only)</i> Set up the BMC Admin Server.	4-9
3	<i>(APPC SNA protocol only)</i> Set up the Microsoft SNA Gateway Server.	4-16
4	<i>(APPC SNA protocol only)</i> Set up the SNA client.	4-20
5	Confirm the host-code page for the server.	4-22
6	Enable the use of secondary authorization IDs for each client.	4-23
7	Install the client.	4-24
8	Verify the installed client files.	4-34
9	Start the client.	4-35
10	Configure the client.	4-35

## Configuring TCP/IP

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes the steps that you must perform if you select TCP/IP as your communication protocol for the BMC Admin Server.

---

**Step 1** Edit the INI#ACV file.

The PATROLDB member is the started task that enables the clients to communicate with DB2. PATROLDB uses the initialization file INI#ACV to establish the TCP/IP address (port address), as well as the default options module (DOPTs) that the BMC Admin Server uses.

After you complete the installation, the members INI#ACV and PATROLDB are placed in the *HLQ.CNTL* data set. The INI#ACV member contains the TCP/IP port number that the BMC Admin Server monitors. If an incorrect port number is specified during installation, you can edit it manually in INI#ACV. You do not need to register your port in the TCP/IP profile data set.

Figure 4-1 on page 4-5 shows an example of an INI#ACV member.

**Figure 4-1 Example of INI#ACV Member**


---

```

##Server INI file used by ALTER for DB2
sbiDBS.CP =CP037
sbiDBS.MaxAgents =16
sbiDBS.MAXADDR=16
sbiDBS.AutoStart =1
sbiDBS.Server1 =MVSTCP

MVSDb2.AccessDriver =SBIDb2M
MVSSPD.AccessDriver =SBISPDm
MVSJZS.AccessDriver =SBIJZSM
MVSFILE.AccessDriver =ACVFILM

MVSTCP.ServerEnabled =1
MVSTCP.OperatingMode =SERVER
MVSTCP.LocalMethod =MultiplexSVP
MVSTCP.AccessDriver =SBIRTMM
MVSTCP.ProtocolDriver =SBITCPM
MVSTCP.lanadapter =0
MVSTCP.client =
MVSTCP.server =
MVSTCP.protocol =tcp

##TCPIP Port address assigned to Server
MVSTCP.service =1313
##Packet size must be at least 8192
MVSTCP.packetsize =8192
MVSTCP.receiveTimeout =0
MVSTCP.transmitTimeout =0
MVSTCP.SASDebug =0
MVSTCP.HPNS =1

JSI.JSISSID =JSI1
JSI.JESSID =JES2
JSI.JSDDL =00
JSI.SPOOLBYOWNER =0

FOREGROUND.STARTEDPROC=BMCakmfg

SCRIPT.FILE = 'BMCADMN.V711.D71.SCRIPT'

##SECTION DOPTS "DOPTS BY SSID:NICKNAME" ST_1
DOPTS.DB25_DIRECT =BMCADMN.V711.D71.LOAD( ALUDOPD1 )

```

---

At the bottom of the INI#ACV member is the DOPTS file location that the product uses to connect to DB2. The SSID field that is stored in the DOPTS module is the SSID to which the ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER products' clients connect. This DOPTS module is referenced by a nickname that you specify during the configuration of the client.

In the example in Figure 4-1 on page 4-5, the DOPTs nickname is DB25\_DIRECT, and it references BMCADMIN.V711.D71.LOAD (ALUDOPD1). The source for the DOPTs module is found in *HLQ.CNTL*. In the example, this member is ALUDOPD1.

## Step 2 Configure OS/390.

- If you are using OS/390 release 2.5 or later and IBM TCP/IP version 3.4 or later, the owner of the started procedure (that is, the user ID that is accessing TCP/IP) must define an OMVS segment in Resource Access Control Facility (RACF) or in another security package to operate the BMC Admin Server.
- If you are using OS/390 release 2.4 or earlier, set the MVSTCP.HPNS variable, found in the Server .INI file, to MVSTCP.HPNS=0. A zero value indicates that the TCP/IP API will not be defined as High-Performance Native Sockets (HPNS).

## Step 3 Activate the BMC Admin Server.

The PATROLDB member, shown in Figure 4-2, is the started task that enables the BMC Admin Server to communicate with DB2.

**Figure 4-2 ISPF Edit Panel**

```

EDIT ---- BMCADMIN.V711.D71.CNTL(PATROLDB) - 01.00 ----- COLUMNS 001 072
COMMAND ==>                                SCROLL ==> CSR
***** ***** TOP OF DATA *****
000001 //PATROLDB  PROC OUT=X
000002 //*
000003 //PATROLDB EXEC PGM=XAMSERV,PARM='1 0 0 0 MVSDB2 1',REGION=0M
000004 //STEPLIB  DD DISP=SHR,DSN=BMCADMIN.V711.D71.LOAD
000005 //* UNCOMMENT THE FOLLOWING LINE FOR A DATASHARING ENVIRONMENT.
000006 //*          DD DISP=SHR,DSN='SYS2.DB2V71M.DSNLOAD'
000007 //JSIDLL   DD DISP=SHR,DSN=BMCADMIN.V711.D71.LOAD
000008 //MSGKSDS   DD DISP=SHR,DSN=BMCADMIN.V711.D71.ACVMMSG
000009 //BMCIPROF  DD DISP=SHR,DSN=BMCADMIN.V711.D71.CNTL(INI#ACV)
000010 //JZSJES    DD SYSOUT=(Q,INTRDR),          == INTERNAL READER
000011 //          DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=3120)
000012 //SYSTCPD   DD DISP=SHR,DSN='TCPIP.TCPIP.DATA'
000013 //SBISCRC   DD DUMMY
000014 //SYSUDUMP   DD SYSOUT=&OUT
000016 //SYSPRINT  DD SYSOUT=&OUT                == DEBUG MSGS
000017 //STDOUT    DD SYSOUT=&OUT                == DEBUG MSGS
000018 //SYSTEM    DD SYSOUT=&OUT                == ERROR MSGS
000019 //STDERR     DD SYSOUT=&OUT                == ERROR MSGS
000020 //SYSOUT     DD SYSOUT=&OUT                == ERROR MSGS
000021 //*
***** ***** BOTTOM OF DATA *****
//*
```

- 3.A** In the STEPLIB of the PATROLDB started task, specify the load libraries that you referenced in the INI#ACV file.

**Note:** The STEPLIB must point to only APF-authorized load libraries.

If you work in a data-sharing environment, uncomment line 6 shown in Figure 4-2 on page 4-6 (DD DISP=SHR, DSN= 'SYS2.DB2V71M.DSNLOAD').

- 3.B** Copy PATROLDB into a system PROCLIB data set, where it can be started as a started task.
- 3.C** Define the proclib name to RACF as a started task.
- 3.D** Start the PATROLDB member to activate the BMC Admin Server. For a list of available OS/390 console modify and stop commands, see Table 4-2 on page 4-9.

**Step 4** Enable the option of foreground processing when you run the client.

- 4.A** Copy **BMCAKMFG** into a system PROCLIB data set, where PATROLDB can start as a started task.

- 4.B** Define the proclib name to RACF as a started task.

**Note:** The STEPLIB must point to only APF-authorized load libraries.

After foreground processing is enabled, you will be prompted to perform a particular function in either foreground mode or batch mode. When you indicate foreground mode, the server starts the **BMCAKMFG** task (or the task that is specified in the FOREGROUND.STARTEDPROC parameter in the INI#ACV member), and the foreground function is performed.

## Where to Go from Here

After you configure the TCP/IP communication protocol, you verify the setting for your host-code page. For more information, see “Confirming the Host-Code Page for the BMC Admin Server” on page 4-22.

## Configuring APPC SNA

During the installation of the BMC Admin Server, if you chose a communication protocol of APPC SNA instead of TCP/IP, you need to configure APPC SNA. Configuring APPC connectivity for use with the BMC Admin Server is a three-part process that involves setting up the following components:

Component	See Page
BMC Admin Server	4-9
Microsoft SNA Gateway Server	4-16
SNA client	4-20

## Setting Up the BMC Admin Server

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to set up the BMC Admin Server for the APPC SNA communications protocol. The BMC Admin Server uses the APPC/MVS Server Facilities introduced in MVS/ESA SP 4.3.0. In this chapter, the term *APPC/MVS* is used to represent the APPC/MVS Server Facility executing on OS/390, and the term *server* refers to the BMC Admin Server. This is the first task in the APPC SNA configuration process.

### Before You Begin

The server selects inbound conversations on the basis of the named application, *TP name*, the location of the server in the network, and the *LU name*.

- The TP name (1 to 64 characters) describes the server's address space. Inbound requests are directed to this location. The TP name can be the started task name or job name of the server's address space.
- The logical unit (LU) name is a unique name defined to the VTAM network for the server application.

After APPC/MVS receives a client request for a conversation, APPC/MVS checks whether any address space has registered to serve the request. If so, APPC/MVS assigns the request to an allocation queue. The server can then select the request from the queue for processing. When the server selects the request from the queue, it receives the conversation ID, and a conversation with the client begins.

Because APPC/MVS requires the server to register and unregister for services, the server must be shut down in an orderly way to be unregistered as an APPC/MVS Server. Cancelling the server is not recommended. You can use an OS/390 console STOP command (P) to stop the server. Alternatively, you can use an OS/390 modify STOP command (F) to shut down the server task in an orderly fashion. For a list of available OS/390 console commands, see Table 4-2.

**Table 4-2 OS/390 Commands (Part 1 of 2)**

OS/390 Commands	Description
<i>S jobname</i>	starts the job or task named by the jobname parameter
<i>P jobname</i>	stops the job or started task named by the jobname parameter

**Table 4-2 OS/390 Commands (Part 2 of 2)**

OS/390 Commands	Description
F <i>jobname</i> , DRAIN	toggles the DRAIN status flag When DRAIN is enabled, new clients are prevented from attaching to the server and the server shuts down automatically when all active tasks are complete.
F <i>jobname</i> , LIST	lists active tasks that are running in the server
F <i>jobname</i> , STATUS	displays the current status information for the server
F <i>jobname</i> , STOP	stops the job or started task named by the <i>jobname</i> parameter
F <i>jobname</i> , TERM <i>xxx</i>	terminates the task, where <i>xxx</i> is the key The key is found by issuing the LIST command.
F <i>jobname</i> , TRACE	toggles the Global Trace variable
F <i>jobname</i> , TRCAGENT	toggles the Trace Agent variable
F <i>jobname</i> , TRCSERV	toggles the Trace Server variable

## To Set Up the BMC Admin Server

**Step 1** In the VTAM logon mode table, define an APPC logon mode.

A *logon mode* is a set of parameters that determine the characteristics of the communication session between the client and the server. The person who is responsible for setting up the OS/390 system's network definitions defines the logon mode. Typically, this person is familiar with making the network definitions available to VTAM.

An installation can create several logon mode tables that contain varying communication characteristics for the OS/390 VTAM network. The logon mode tables are assembled and link edited to SYS1.VTAMLIB. All the modes that the server LU uses should be contained in the table and specified in the server's LU APPL definition statement.

Figure 4-3 on page 4-11 shows a sample logon mode table that contains three logon modes, including the required SNASVCMG entry. In the sample LU definition, the specified logon mode table was assembled and linked as ACVAPPC.

**Note:** This example is available in SYS1.SAMPLIB in member ATBLMODE. It can be assembled and linked using member ATBLJOB. The server can use the sample logon mode table that IBM supplies. Alternatively, you can use an existing logon mode table containing the entry that the server uses, APPCCLM.



**Figure 4-3 Sample Logon Mode Definition**


---

```

LOGMODES MODETAB
      EJECT
*****
TITLE 'SNASVCMG'
*****
*LOGMODE TABLE ENTRY FOR RESOURCES CAPABLE OF ACTING
*AS LU 6.2 DEVICES
*REQUIRED FOR LU MANAGEMENT
*****
SNASVCMG MODEENT LOGMODE=SNASVCMG,FMPROF=X'13',TSPROF=X'07',          *
                PRIPROT=X'B0',SECPROT=X'B0',COMPROT=X'D0B1',          *
                RUSIZES=X'8585',ENCR=B'0000',                          *
                PSERVIC=X'060200000000000000000000300'
*****
TITLE 'APPCPCLM'
*****
*LOGMODE TABLE ENTRY FOR RESOURCES CAPABLE OF ACTING
*AS LU 6.2 DEVICES
*FOR PC TARGET
*IN THIS EXAMPLE THE DEFAULT RU SIZE FOR OS/2 (1024) IS USED
*****
APPCPCLM MODEENT LOGMODE=APPCPCLM,          *
                RUSIZES=X'8787',          *
                SRCVPAC=X'00',          *
                SSNDPAC=X'01'
*****
TITLE 'APPCHOST'
*****
*LOGMODE TABLE ENTRY FOR RESOURCES CAPABLE OF ACTING
*AS LU 6.2 DEVICES
*FOR HOST TARGET
*IN THIS EXAMPLE RU SIZE OF 4096 IS USED
*****
APPCHOST MODEENT LOGMODE=APPCHOST,          *
                RUSIZES=X'8989',          *
                SRCVPAC=X'00',          *
                SSNDPAC=X'01'
      MODEEND
END

```

---

**Step 2** Define the local LU to VTAM.

A VTAM application (APPL) definition statement in SYS1.VTAMLST defines an APPC/MVS local LU to VTAM. This definition must be made by the person who is responsible for implementing VTAM network changes OS/390.

### The APPL statement

- names the local LU
- identifies the local LU as a type 6.2
- sets the default parameters for the LU
- specifies the name of the logon mode table that contains the logon modes that the LU uses

To ensure the use of subtasking, verify the VTAM LU definition (DSESLM=10). The number 10 represents the number 16 in hexadecimal numbering.

Figure 4-4 shows a sample local LU definition to VTAM.

**Figure 4-4**      **Sample Local LU Definition for VTAM**

---

ACVLU01	APPL	ACBNAME=ACVLU01 ,
		APPC=YES , C
		AUTOSES=0 , C
		DDRAINL=NALLOW , C
		DLOGMOD=APPCPLM , C
		DMINWNL=5 , C
		DMINWNR=5 , C
		DRESPL=NALLOW , C
		DSESLIM=10 , C
		LMDENT=19 , C
		MODETAB=ACVAPPC , C
		PARSESS=YES , C
		SECACPT=CONV , C
		SRBEXIT=YES , C
		VPACING=1

---

**Note:** A sample local LU definition exists in member APPLACV1 of the *HLQ.CNTL* data set. You must make this LU active to VTAM before you add the LU to APPC/MVS.

**Step 3**      Define the local LU to APPC/MVS.

To define a local LU as a server to APPC/MVS, update the APPCPMxx configuration member in SYS1.PARMLIB by adding an LUADD statement for the LU of the server. The configuration member names the LUs and respective administrative VSAM KSDS. The person who is responsible for updating the OS/390 system or VTAM network definition files must make this update.

The LU that is defined for the server does not have a TP Profile data set, nor does it require the use of a site information table. However, a reference to the system-level TP Profile data set that accesses only the database token from that TP Profile data set is required. Thus, an entry for the server is not required in the specified TP profile data set, but a reference to the system level TP Profile data set is needed as part of the LUADD definition statement.

The LU application should already be defined and active to VTAM. The LU name that is used in the VTAM application definition must match the ACBNAME operand that is used in the LUADD statement. Once defined, the APPC address space must be started with the appropriate parameters to include the configuration file with the LUADD statement for the server.

Figure 4-5 shows a sample LUADD statement for defining the local LU to APPC/MVS. The example can be added to an existing APPCPM<sub>xx</sub> configuration member or used in a new configuration member. Then the example can be dynamically added to the APPC address space using the SET APPC=<sub>xx</sub> OS/390 command.

**Note:** The *HLQ*.CNTL data set contains a sample APPCPM<sub>xx</sub> member.

**Figure 4-5      Sample Local LU Definition for APPC/MVS**

---

```

LUADD  ACBNAME ( ACVLU01 )
        NOSCHED
        TPDATA ( SYS1 . APPCTP )
        TPLEVEL ( SYSTEM )

```

---

#### **Step 4**      Provide APPC parameters to the server.

The server requires several parameters that have been defined to APPC/MVS and VTAM. The values of these parameters are described to the server through an initialization (INI) file that is specified by the BMCIPROF DD statement in the server JCL. The parameters in this file are initialized during the installation of the server. If changes to the parameters are required, you can modify them by manually editing the INI file.

Figure 4-6 on page 4-14 shows a sample BMC Admin Server configuration file.

**Figure 4-6 Sample APPC/MVS Configuration File**

```

sbiDBS.MaxAgents =16
sbiDBS.AutoStart =1
sbiDBS.Server1 =MVSAPPC
sbiDBS.MAXADDR =16
sbiDBS.CP =CP500

MVSD2.AccessDriver =SBIDB2M
MVSSPD.AccessDriver =SBISPD
MVSJZS.AccessDriver =SBIJZSM
MVSFILE.AccessDriver =ACVFILM

MVSAPPC.ServerEnabled =1
MVSAPPC.OperatingMode =SERVER
MVSAPPC.LocalMethod =MultiplexSVP
MVSAPPC.AccessDriver =SBIRTMM
MVSAPPC.ProtocolDriver =SBIAPPCM
MVSAPPC.TPname =APPCACV1
MVSAPPC.MODEname =APPCCLM
MVSAPPC.LUname =ACVLU01
MVSAPPC.packetSize =8192
MVSAPPC.receiveTimeout =0
MVSAPPC.transmitTimeout =0
MVSAPPC.SASDebug =0

JSI.JSISSID =JSI1
JSI.JESSID =JES2
JSI.JSIDLL =00
JSI.SPOOLBYOWNER =0

FOREGROUND.STARTEDPROC=BMAKMF

SCRIPT.FILE =BMCADMN.V711.V71.SCRIPT

DOPTS.DBAL_DIRECT =BMCADMN.V711.V71.LOAD(KGCDOPT)

```

Table 4-3 describes some of the important configuration parameters, which you might need to modify manually.

**Table 4-3 APPC/MVS Configuration Parameter Descriptions (Part 1 of 2)**

Parameter	Description
AccessDriver	name of the RTM driver program The value is SBIRTMM.
LocalMethod	multiplexed service provider The value is MultiplexSVP.
LUname	local LU name that has been defined to VTAM for the server

**Table 4-3      APPC/MVS Configuration Parameter Descriptions (Part 2 of 2)**

Parameter	Description
MODEname	default Mode Name table entry The entry should match the DLOGMODE parameter of the APPL definition that is used to define the local LU to VTAM.
OperatingMode	APPC/MVS server The value is SERVER.
Packetsize	size of the data buffer used by the server The default is 8192.
ProtocolDriver	name of the APPC/MVS protocol driver program The value is SBIAPPCM.
Receivetimeout	This parameter is not specified. The value is 0.
SASDebug	flag that disables (or enables) the SAS/C Debugger This flag should be set to 0.
ServerEnabled	flag that enables (or disables) the server This flag should be set to 1.
TPname	name that is used to describe this server to APPC/MVS The TPname (1 to 64 characters) describes the server's address space. This name can be the started task name or the job name of the server.
Transmittimeout	This parameter is not specified. The value is 0.

All APPC/MVS parameters have a prefix of MVSAPPC. The SBIDBS.SERVER1 parameter must reflect the type of server that is implemented. For APPC/MVS, the type of server should be MVSAPPC. The other parameters within the configuration file are not related to APPC/MVS, so they do not need to be changed.

### Where to Go from Here

After you set up the BMC Admin Server, you set up the SNA Gateway Server to connect to the BMC Admin Server. For more information, see “Setting Up the SNA Gateway Server” on page 4-16.

## Setting Up the SNA Gateway Server

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to set up the SNA Gateway Server for connectivity to the BMC Admin Server. The BMC Admin Server uses the APPC/MVS Server facilities to support an APPC independent LU 6.2 connection to the SNA Gateway Server. Several steps are required to configure the SNA Gateway Server to support this APPC connection. This is the second task in the APPC SNA configuration process.

---

### Before You Begin

Before you set up the SNA Gateway Server, complete the steps in “Setting Up the BMC Admin Server” on page 4-9.

### To Set Up the SNA Gateway Server

**Step 1** Define the APPC LU to VTAM.

To define the APPC LU in a VTAM major node, you can define an LU with LOCADDR set to 0 and a LOGMODE parameter that supports APPC. For the PU macro, add the CPNAME parameter and set it equal to the Control Point Name value for the SNA Gateway Server (see Step 6 on page 4-19).

The example in Figure 4-7 defines an APPC LU named MSAUL100. In this example, the MVS VTAM system programmer has created a VTAM logon mode table called ACVAPPC with an APPC-capable logon mode entry called APPCPCLM.

**Figure 4-7** Sample APPC LU Definition for an SNA Gateway Server

---

MSAUP100	PU	ADDR=04 ,	X
		CPNAME=AUS3 ,	X
		DLOGMOD=N32702 ,	X
		PUTYPE=2 ,	X
		MAXDATA=1024 ,	X
		MAXOUT=7 ,	X
		MAXPATH=1 ,	X
		IDBLK=05D ,	X
		IDNUM=B0927	

MSAUL100	LU	LOCADDR=0 , ISTATUS=ACTIVE , MODETAB=ACVAPPC , DLOGMOD=APPCPCLM
----------	----	---

---

- Step 2** Define a local APPC LU to the SNA Gateway Server by performing the following actions at the SNA Gateway Server console:
- 2.A** In the **Servers and Connections** window, select the server.
  - 2.B** From the **Edit** menu, choose **Insert**.
  - 2.C** Select **APPC (LOCAL)**.
  - 2.D** Specify the following APPC (LOCAL) properties:
    - 1. Type the LU Alias and LU Name. These properties are the same as those in the VTAM major node (MSAUL100 in Figure 4-7 on page 4-16).
    - 2. Type the network name. This network is the same network as the VTAM where the LU Alias resides.
    - 3. Clear the **Enable Automatic Partnering** option.
    - 4. Select the **Member of Default Outgoing Local APPC LU Pool** option.
- Step 3** Define a remote APPC LU to the SNA Gateway Server by performing the following actions at the SNA Gateway Server console:
- 3.A** In the **Servers and Connections** window, select the connection.
  - 3.B** From the **Edit** menu, choose **Insert**.
  - 3.C** Select **APPC (REMOTE)**.
  - 3.D** Specify the following APPC (REMOTE) properties:
    - 1. Type the LU Alias and LU Name. These properties are the same as those in the BMC Admin Server configuration file for parameter MVSAPPC.LUname (ACVLU01 in Figure 4-6 on page 4-14). This name was defined to VTAM in Figure 4-4 on page 4-12.
    - 2. Type the network name. This property is the name of the VTAM where the BMC Admin Server resides.
    - 3. Select the **Supports Parallel Sessions** option.
    - 4. Clear the **Enable Automatic Partnering** option.

- 3.E** To partner the local and remote LU, select **Partners** from the APPC (REMOTE) properties.
1. Select **Modes** and create a logon mode with the same name and characteristics as those used by the Database Administration BMC Admin Server (which is APPCPCLM in Figure 4-7 on page 4-16). Use the same RU size as the one that was defined for the mainframe logon mode.
- Note:** To allow subtasking or foreground processing, the logon mode definition's maximum number of sessions must be greater than one.
2. Select **Add** and choose the local LU that you defined in Step 2 on page 4-17 and the logon mode entry that you defined in Step 1 on page 4-16.

When you have finished selecting the local partner, the LU 6.2 Partner LU screen should contain an entry of 1.

**Step 4** Add a CPI-C symbolic destination to the SNA Gateway Server by performing the following actions at the SNA Gateway Server console:

- 4.A** From the **Options** menu, choose **CPI-C**.
- 4.B** Select **Add** and specify the following properties for the symbolic destination:
1. Select the symbolic destination name that the PC client will use to access this LU. This name can be 1 to 8 characters long. Make a note of this CPI-C Symbolic Destination Name for later use during the client configuration.
  2. For the Partner TP Name, select **Application** and enter the TP name of the BMC Admin Server configuration file as parameter MVSAPPC.TPname (APPCACV1 in Figure 4-6 on page 4-14).
  3. For the Partner L name, select **Alias** and enter the BMC Admin Server LU name from the configuration file as parameter MVSAPPC.LUname (ACVLU01 in Figure 4-6 on page 4-14). This name was defined to VTAM in Figure 4-4 on page 4-12.
  4. For the Mode Name, select the logon mode that is defined for the BMC Admin Server as MVSAPPC.MODename (APPCPCLM in Figure 4-6 on page 4-14). This name corresponds to the DLOGMOD keyword on the LU that was defined to VTAM in Figure 4-4 on page 4-12.



**Step 5** Define a default local LU for the SNA Gateway Server by performing the following actions at the SNA Gateway Server console:

- 5.A** Select the SNA Gateway Server Admin icon.
- 5.B** In the Servers and Connections window, select the server.
- 5.C** Select **Users and Groups**.
- 5.D** Double-click the group **Everyone**.
- 5.E** Add the previously defined Local LU alias and Remote LU alias (MSAUL100 and ACVLU01, respectively, in Figure 4-7 on page 4-16 and Figure 4-6 on page 4-14).

**Step 6** Specify the SNA Gateway Server Control Point Name by performing the following actions at the SNA Gateway Server console:

- 6.A** Select the SNA Gateway Server Admin icon.
- 6.B** In the Servers and Connections window, select the server.
- 6.C** From the Services menu, choose **Properties**.
- 6.D** In the Server Properties dialog box, specify the following items:
  - 1. Enter the Network Name. This name is the same as the VTAM where the BMC Admin Server resides.
  - 2. Enter the Control Point Name. This name is the same as the CPNAME parameter for the PU definition in VTAM (AUS3 in Figure 4-7 on page 4-16). (See Step 1 on page 4-16.)

### Where to Go from Here

After you set up the BMC Admin Server and the SNA Gateway Server, you set up the SNA client. For more information, see “Setting Up the SNA Client” on page 4-20.

## Setting Up the SNA Client

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to set up the SNA client. This is the third task in the APPC SNA configuration process.

---

### Before You Begin

Before you set up the SNA client, complete the steps in “Setting Up the SNA Gateway Server” on page 4-16.

You will need to know about the SNA Gateway Server to supply the SNA client with information about the particular transport protocol to be used, as well as the Domain setting and Primary Server name.

### To Set Up the SNA Client

- Step 1** On the user’s PC, install the Microsoft Windows 95, Windows 98 or Windows NT SNA client.
- Step 2** Use the session configuration tool to configure the APPC SNA host system and session profile. Within the host system configuration section, a selection for APPC SNA is provided.

Several installation parameters are provided to complete the host configuration. The CPI-C Symbolic Destination Name for APPC services, defined previously in the SNA Gateway Server, is (in most cases) the only parameter that is necessary to identify the BMC Admin Server.

However, additional parameters can be used to selectively override the site information table—CPI-C Symbolic Destination Name table—defined on the SNA Gateway Server. You can use the LU Name, MODE Name, or TP Name parameter to override the client’s CPI-C Symbolic Destination Name table entry. When all the parameters are used together, the referenced CPI-C Symbolic Destination Name table is bypassed. Table 4-4 on page 4-21 describes these installation parameters.

**Table 4-4 Installation Parameters**

Parameter	Description
Symbolic Destination Name	<i>(required)</i> provides the CPI-C Symbolic Destination Name that was defined in the SNA Gateway Server to describe the BMC Admin Server application This parameter must match the exact name that is used in the SNA Gateway Server setup.
LU Name	<i>(optional)</i> describes the APPC LU name to be used when establishing the conversation with the BMC Admin Server This value should be specified as a fully qualified SNA LU name. A qualified LU name consists of the network name separated from the logical unit name by a period, with each name not exceeding 8 characters.
MODE Name	<i>(optional)</i> allows an overriding specification to the operating mode-table entry for the connection to the BMC Admin Server
TP Name	<i>(optional)</i> allows an overriding specification to the teleprocessing program name that is associated with the connection that identifies the BMC Admin Server

### Where to Go from Here

After you set up the APPC SNA client, you verify the setting for your host-code page. For more information, see “Confirming the Host-Code Page for the BMC Admin Server” on page 4-22.

## Confirming the Host-Code Page for the BMC Admin Server

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes the steps that you must perform to verify the setting for your host-code page. The host-code page setting specifies the table that the application uses to map the EBCDIC codes on the server to the appropriate single-byte ASCII codes on the PC during the transfer of data.

---

**Step 1** Edit the INI#ACV file.

**Step 2** Set the value of the sbiDBS.CP variable in the INI#ACV file to one of the host-code page values in Table 4-5.

**Note:** The default value for the sbiDBS.CP variable is CP037.

**Table 4-5** Code Page Values

Host-code Page Value	Language
CP037	English (US)
CP273	Austrian or German
CP277	Danish or Norwegian
CP278	Finnish or Swedish
CP280	Italian
CP284	Spanish
CP285	English (England)
CP297	French
CP500	International

**Step 3** Start PATROLDB to activate the BMC Admin Server.

### Where to Go from Here

After you confirm the host-code page, you determine whether to enable the use of secondary authorization IDs for each client. For more information, see “Enabling the Use of Secondary Authorization IDs” on page 4-23.

## Enabling the Use of Secondary Authorization IDs

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes the steps that your DB2 system administrator must perform to enable the use of secondary authorization IDs for the BMC Admin Server. The sample connection exit that is supplied by IBM builds a list of secondary authorization IDs that is based on the user ID that is associated with the started task address space. As a result, this exit does not build the list of secondary authorization IDs for each client as it does for a TSO address space. To properly build the list of secondary authorization IDs for each client, BMC Software modified the exit. The version of the connection exit that is supplied by BMC Software builds a list of secondary authorizations that is based on the user ID that is associated with each client for the BMC Admin Server. This sample exit is distributed in the product's *HLQ.CNTL* data set as member *DSN3SATH*.

When the modified version of the exit is used, the secondary authorizations are dependent on RACF. If RACF and the list-of-groups checking are activated, the connection exit sets the list of DB2 secondary authorizations to the list of RACF group names to which the user ID is connected.

If you are already running a modified connection exit or your site uses a security system other than RACF, you should review the sample exit that BMC Software provided and note any modifications. (Modifications are indicated by BMC34575 after each line of code.) You can then incorporate these changes into your existing exit.

---

**Note:** If your DB2 subsystems do not share a single *HLQ.SDSNEXIT* data set, your DB2 system administrator should perform the following steps for each subsystem.

- Step 1** Rename member *DSN3@ATH* in the *HLQ.SDSNEXIT* data set to another name.
- Step 2** Assemble and link member *DSN3SATH* in the *HLQ.CNTL* data set with the same JCL that is provided for the IBM-supplied exit.  
  
DB2 creates *DSN3@ATH*.
- Step 3** Cycle DB2.

### Where to Go from Here

After you enable the use of secondary authorization IDs, you install the client. For more information, see “Installing the Client” on page 4-24.

# Installing the Client

This section provides information about installing, configuring, and starting the client for ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER. The client serves as a graphical front-end to the BMC Admin Server. The BMC Admin Server runs on OS/390 as a started task and administers requests to ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER.

## Before You Begin

Before you can install the client for any of the products, you must have installed and configured the BMC Admin Server. For information about the BMC Admin Server, see page 4-3.

You need the following items to install the clients:

- BMC Admin Server configuration settings
- sufficient disk space on your client system
- all applications closed down prior to installing the client

To ensure that the network is configured properly, see “Verifying Server Networking” on page 4-26.

## Supported Environments

The clients include domestic and international versions, which are categorized as follows:

- U.S. English data (US7ASCII), which is single byte

Sorting is based on ASCII code page values.

- European data support, which includes support for extended character sets in any single-byte, left-to-right language and support for local date and time formats

**Note:** Host-code page specification is required as part of the server installation. For more information, see “Confirming the Host-Code Page for the BMC Admin Server” on page 4-22.

- ability to work with any supported local language in all parts of the client, including meta objects such as filter names, session names, and catalog data
- support for the creation and management of any persistent object in the user's native language

## Verifying Server Networking

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to verify that your network is working properly.

---

**Step 1** From a DOS prompt, enter **ipconfig /all** (Windows NT) or **winipcfg /all** (Windows 98 or Windows 2000).

Your host name and IP address appear, as shown in the example in Figure 4-8.

**Figure 4-8 IP Configuration**

---

```
Windows NT IP Configuration:
Host Name.....:yourname.yourcompany.com
.
.
DHCP Enabled.....:No
IP Address.....:172.18.22.15
```

---

**Step 2** From a DOS or command prompt, enter **ping server**, where *server* is the location of the BMC Admin Server.

If the **ping** command returns the message `Bad IP address server` or `Request timed out`, you can continue with the installation. However, you must resolve this network problem before you can use the client.



## Selecting the Type of Installation

To meet the specific needs of your site, you can select from the types of client installations that are shown in Table 4-6.

**Table 4-6** Client Installation Options

Installation Option	Description and Benefit	See Section
install to a local hard drive	installs the specified clients to a local hard drive After the clients are installed, you can remove the CD from the CD-ROM drive.	"Installing a Client to Run Locally" on page 4-28
copy the installation image to a network drive and then install the client to the local hard drive	copies an image of the installation from the CD to a resource from which other users can install the client to their local hard drive	"Installing the Client on a Network Drive" on page 4-30  "Installing a Client to Run Locally" on page 4-28
"silent" installation from a command prompt	installs the client from a command prompt with minimal user interaction	"Installing a Client (Command-Line Interface)" on page 4-31
install using distribution software	installs the client to every workstation to which you have access without the need to leave your computer	"Installing the Client Using Distribution Software" on page 4-33

## Installing a Client to Run Locally

---

**Summary:** This procedure enables you to install the client on your hard drive to run locally.

---

**Note:** This procedure uses D for the CD drive. If your computer uses a different letter, substitute the correct drive letter.

**Step 1** Insert the Administrative Products for DB2 CD into the client's CD drive.

The Setup program launches automatically.

**Step 2** Read the Welcome page, and click **Next** to continue.

**Note:** Use the **Next** and **Back** buttons to navigate through the Setup program. To continue, click **Next**. To go back and undo a selection, click **Back**.

**Step 3** On the User Information page, enter your name and company name, and then click **Next**.

**Step 4** On the Choose Destination Location page, review the installation destination folder. Then click **Next**.

- If you prefer a different folder, click **Browse** and select an appropriate folder. Click **OK**. Then click **Next**.
- To accept the default location, click **Next**.

**Note:** If you have a current version of the clients installed or if you have a version of the clients that is earlier than the current version and you choose to install the clients in the same directory, a warning is displayed. Either you can disregard the warning and install the client in the same directory, or you can choose another location in which to install the clients.

**Step 5** On the Select Components page, select the clients to install.

**5.A** Ensure that the Space Required does not exceed the Space Available. If it does exceed the available space, click **Disk Space** and select a new drive that contains the appropriate amount of space. Click **OK**.

The new drive location appears in the Destination Folder.

**5.B** Click **Next** to continue.

**Step 6** On the Start Copying Files page, verify that the displayed installation options are correct. Click **Next** to begin the installation, or click **Back** to change the installation options.

**Step 7** When the installation is complete, click **Finish**.

### **Where to Go from Here**

After you install the client, you can verify the installed files. For information, see “Verifying Installed Files” on page 4-34.

## Installing the Client on a Network Drive

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to provide full access to the files on the CD by copying the installation image from the CD to a shared network drive and then installing the product locally. This option provides anyone who wants to install the client on their local hard drive full access to the range of product offerings.

---

**Note:** This procedure uses *n* for the network drive. If your network drive is mapped to another letter, substitute the correct drive letter.

**Step 1** Insert the Administrative Products for DB2 CD into the client's CD drive.

The Setup program launches automatically.

**Step 2** Click **Cancel** and then click the **Exit Setup** button.

**Step 3** From Windows Explorer, choose the CD drive and select all the files on the drive. Copy the highlighted files to a shared network drive.

**Step 4** From Windows Explorer, double-click **setup.exe** from the location on the network where the installation files reside. Alternatively, click the **Start** button and choose **Run**. Enter *n:\install\_dir\setup.exe* in the Run dialog box.

The Welcome page of the Setup program appears.

**Step 5** Follow Step 2 through Step 7 in the task "Installing a Client to Run Locally" on page 4-28.

### Where to Go from Here

After you install the client, you can verify the installed files. For information, see "Verifying Installed Files" on page 4-34.

---

## Installing a Client (Command-Line Interface)

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to install the client by using the command-line interface. The setup command-line interface is provided as a consistent and faster means to install the client. To use the command-line interface, you must first edit the initialization file to make product selections and to specify directory locations for the files. After you complete this task, you can use this initialization file for every installation in your organization. This type of installation ensures that all users connected to a network install the same set of products by entering a single command.

---

- Step 1** Copy the client images to your hard drive or to a shared network drive. The client images are located in the **client** directory on the CD.
- Step 2** Modify the **PDB\_Install.ini** file to make product and directory selections. When editing the file, specify 0 to disable a selection and specify 1 to enable a selection. The only requirement when editing this file is that you must select a product in the [Selections] section.

Figure 4-9 shows an example **PDB\_Install.ini** file. In this example, the user selected the CHANGE MANAGER product and specified **c:\pdbclient\7.1.01** as the installation folder.

**Figure 4-9**      **Modifying the PDB\_Install.ini File (Client Installation)**

---

```
[Selections]
CHANGE MANAGER for DB2 for OS390=1
ALTER for DB2 for OS390=0
SQL Explorer for DB2 for OS390=0

[Information]
User Name=BMC Customer
Company Name=BMC Customer

[Directory]
InstallFolder=c:\pdbclient\7.1.01
```

---

- Step 3** From a command prompt, change the current drive and directory to the location to which you copied the client images.

**Step 4** Run the command-line “silent” setup command, **setup -s**.

This command accepts the following options:

**setup -s -m filename**

**-s** indicates “silent” and **-m** indicates the specification of a MIF filename. The **-m** parameter and filename are optional. The MIF file indicates the status of the installation (successful or unsuccessful). It does not have to currently exist.

**Note:** The order of these options is important. Specifying the **-m** option before the **-s** option will not invoke the MIF file.

**Step 5** Check the status of the installation to determine if it was successful by locating the MIF file in the **\windows\temp** or **\winnt\temp** directory that you specified in Step 4.

**Note:** An unsuccessful installation might be due to a shortage of disk space. If you did not specify a MIF file, check the **pdba\_out.trc** file in the **\windows** or **\winnt** directory for specific warning or error messages associated with the installation.

### Where to Go from Here

After you install the client, you can verify the installed files. For information, see “Verifying Installed Files” on page 4-34.

## Installing the Client Using Distribution Software

---

**Summary:** By using distributed systems software such as the Microsoft SMS product (or any other product that supports packages), you can install the client on every desktop in your organization to which you have access. When combined with the consistency of the command-line, silent installation, this method of product distribution provides a fast, consistent approach to updating and distributing software.

---

**Step 1** Copy the client images to your hard drive or to a shared network drive. The client images are located in the **client** directory on the CD.

**Note:** Be sure to copy the client images to a directory that is different from the directory to which you copied the server images.

**Step 2** Modify the **PDB\_Install.ini** file to make product and directory selections. When editing the file, specify 0 to disable a selection and specify 1 to enable a selection. The only requirement when editing this file is that you must select a product in the [Selections] section.

See Figure 4-9 on page 4-31 for an example of a **PDB\_Install.ini** file.

**Step 3** Run the distributed system software package at your site, making the necessary selections as requested. For example, using the Microsoft SMS product to distribute the installation, you should perform the following steps:

- 3.A** Create an SMS package by using the **setup.pdf** file (included in the directory to which you copied the client images).
- 3.B** Schedule an SMS job by using the package that was created with the **setup.pdf** file.
- 3.C** Ensure that the client receives and runs the package.

### Where to Go from Here

After you install the client, you can verify the installed files. For information, see “Verifying Installed Files” on page 4-34.

## Verifying Installed Files

The directories and files that are listed in Table 4-7 are installed on the client (by default, on the C drive). During installation, you can specify a particular directory to which to install the files. By default, this directory is **Program Files\BMC Software\PATROL DB-Admin Client**.

**Table 4-7** Client Installation Directories

Directories and Files	Description
DB2 OS390	client executables, DLLs, common executables, library files, and help files
DB2 OS390\bin\charmaps	character maps
DB2 OS390\bin\en_us.iso88591	help and message files
DB2 OS390\bin\icons	icons
DB2 OS390\bin\iconv	code page conversion tables
DB2 OS390\bin\locale	installed locales, function and format tables
DB2 OS390\config	client configuration directory
DB2 OS390\work	work directory

## Troubleshooting the Client Installation

If your client installation stops abnormally, you should delete any temporary directories and files that the installation process created before it terminated. The installation process creates the following temporary directory and files:

**~istmp $x$ .dir** (where  $x$  is a number)

**~ins0433.~mp**

**~isz0433.~mp**

If your **TEMP** environment variable is set, you can find these files in the **\temp** directory. Otherwise, look for them in the **\windows** or **\winnt** directory.



# Starting and Configuring the Client

This section provides information about starting, stopping, and configuring the client. See the online Help for complete instructions about defining hosts and creating subsystem connections.

## Starting the Client

To start the client, double-click the product icon in the PATROL DB-Admin Client 1.7.B0 OS390 program group. The PATROL Database Administration window appears.

To stop the client, make the PATROL Database Administration window active. Then, choose **Exit** from the **File** menu.

## Configuring the Client

After you install the server and the client, you must configure the client before you can use the product. Start the client and then perform the following configuration tasks:

1. Define hosts or servers.

A host or server is the OS/390 system that performs the BMC Admin Server operations. Each host or server has both a BMC Admin Server and at least one DB2 subsystem installed on it. Identifying an available host or server to the client is called *defining a host or server*.

You must define at least one host or server to use the client. You should define a separate host or server for each system that you want to use as a server for the client.

2. Create subsystem connections.

When you start a connection, you use a subsystem connection to specify the details for that connection. For DB2 for OS/390 connections, the subsystem connection specifies which client, host, DB2 subsystem, and TSO user ID to use during that connection.

If you plan to connect to different combinations of clients, hosts, and databases, you should create a separate connection profile for each possible combination. The name of the subsystem connection must be unique even though multiple connections can use the same host.

**Note:** Client configuration is not necessarily a one-time activity. At some point in the future, you might need to modify your hosts or subsystem connections. Use the Connection Manager any time that you need to add or change a host or subsystem connection.

The DB2 subsystem name that you specify during the client configuration must be the same as the nickname specified in the INI#ACV file. Whereas you specify the name of the subsystem with an underscore (\_) in the INI#ACV file, you must enter the name in the Connection Wizard screen during the client configuration with a colon (:).

Figure 4-10 illustrates that the DOPTs nickname is entered as DB25:DIRECT, replacing the underscore (\_) with a colon (:), when the client is installed on the user's computer.

**Figure 4-10** Connection Wizard Screen

Connection Wizard - Specify a Database Instance

Specify the name of the DB2 subsystem that you want to connect to.

TIP Specify the name of your DB2 subsystem.

DB2 Subsystem  Discovery...

Specify the TSO user ID that you want to use to log in to the DB2 subsystem for this connection.

TSO User ID

< Back Next > Cancel

See the Help for complete instructions about defining hosts and creating subsystem connections.

## Where to Go from Here

After starting and configuring the client, you are ready to connect to a database and begin using it. To use the product, see the *ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER for DB2 User Guide* or the online Help for more information.

## Maintaining the Client

After you install and configure the client, you might need to upgrade or change the client. The following sections discuss

- adding a client
- uninstalling a client
- reinstalling a client

## Adding a Client

---

**Summary:** This task describes how you can add a client.

---

**Step 1** Run the Setup program as you normally would for the installation type that you want to perform. See page 4-27 for a list of the types of client installations.

**Step 2** Select the new clients that you want to install.

**Step 3** Clear the selection for those clients that are already installed.

**Note:** The disk space requirements that are listed in “System Software Requirements” on page 1-5 are for an initial installation. Disk space requirements for additional clients are reduced by the amount of disk space that you used for the initial installation.

## Uninstalling a Client (GUI)

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to uninstall one or more of the clients. When you uninstall a client, all installed client files are deleted, but any saved work files remain.

---

**Step 1** From Windows, click the **Start** button.

**Step 2** Choose **Settings => Control Panel**.

**Step 3** Double-click the **Add/Remove Programs** icon.

**Note:** On Windows 2000, use the Change/Remove Programs utility. Select the programs to remove and click the **Change/Remove** button.

**Step 4** Select the PATROL DB-Admin Client 1.7.B0 OS390.

**Step 5** Click the **Add/Remove** button.

**Step 6** Click **OK**.

## Uninstalling a Client (Command-Line Interface)

---

**Summary:** This procedure describes how to uninstall a client by using the command-line interface.

---

From a command prompt, run the command-line “silent” setup command, **setup**, located in the client images folder that you copied to your hard drive.

This command accepts the following options:

**isuninst -f***pathname*\pdba\_log.isu"

**-f** indicates the location of the **pdba\_log.isu** log file and *pathname* indicates where the client was installed. The **pdba\_log.isu** log file is created during the installation. The installation program uses the file to perform cleanup tasks.

**Note:** Do not include a space between the **-f** option and the first double quotation marks (").

## Reinstalling a Client

---

**Summary:** This task describes how you can reinstall a client if you want to change the existing installation or if files in the client directories were deleted or corrupted.

---

**Step 1** Use the same installation instructions that you used for the earlier installation.

The program prompts you to confirm information that you provided during the earlier installation.

**Step 2** Verify the installed files.

**Note:** The disk space requirements in “System Software Requirements” on page 1-5 are for an initial installation. Disk space requirements for a reinstallation are reduced by the amount of disk space that you used for the initial installation.

### Where to Go from Here

After you reinstall the client, you can start and configure it. See “Starting and Configuring the Client” on page 4-35.





# Appendix A    ALTER Default Options

This appendix presents the following topics:

Default Options. . . . .A-2  
Descriptions of Default Options . . . . .A-5

---

## Default Options

This section provides an example of the default options (DOPTs) module for the ALTER product (Figure A-1). The DOPTs module is created by the installation system and resides in *\$xnmDOPT*. The DOPTs module also resides in *HLQ.CNTL* with the same member name as the DOPTs.

**Figure A-1      ALTER Default Options Module (Part 1 of 4)**

---

```
*****
*
* MODULE           : ALUDOPD1
* FUNCTION         : ALTER FOR DB2
* COPYRIGHT        : COPYRIGHT BMC SOFTWARE INC., 2003
* LEVEL           : RELEASE 7.3 October 2003
* FUNCTIONS        : DEFINE THE DEFAULT PROFILE VARIABLES
*
*****
ALUDOPTS CSECT ,
ALUDOPTS RMODE 24
ALUDOPTS AMODE 24
ALUDOPTS $ALUDOPT PRODUCT=ALTER,
                                DATE=&SYSDATC,
                                PC=ALU,
                                VRM=( 731F,R),
                                SSID=(DB2A,R),
                                DB2CAT=( 'DB2ACAT' ,R),
                                EURO=(N,R),
                                SYSTYPE=S,
                                PIC=N,
                                LOG=N,
                                SL1=( ' ' 'BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD' ' ' ,R),
                                SL2=( ' ' 'SYS3.DB2A.DSNEXIT' ' ' ,R),
                                SL3=( ' ' 'SYS2.DB2V71M.DSNLOAD' ' ' ,R),
                                SL4=' ' ,
                                SL5=' ' ,
                                ISPSLIB=( ' ' 'BMCADMN.V731.D71.SLIB' ' ' ,R),
                                TSOSX=N,
                                JC1=' //&&USERID.&&JOBCHAR JOB (&&ZACCTNUM), ' ' &&PGMR' ' ' ,
                                JC2=' // CLASS=A,MSGLEVEL=(1,1),NOTIFY=&&USERID' ,
                                JC3=' // * ' ,
                                JC4=' // * ' ,
                                JC5=' // * ' ,
                                DBRM1= ,
                                DBRM2= ,
                                DBRM3= ,
                                DBRMLIB=N,
                                WU=SYSDA,
                                WPS=10 ,
```

**Figure A-1 ALTER Default Options Module (Part 2 of 4)**

```

WSS=2, *
WDC=, *
WSC=, *
WMC=, *
SWU=SYSDA, *
SWPS=10, *
SWSS=2, *
WDSN=' '&&USERID..&&SSID..&&WORKID' ', *
WLU=SYSDA, *
WLPS=15, *
WLSS=5, *
JDSN=' '&&USERID..ANALYSIS(&&WORKID)' ', *
JDSNE=' '&&USERID..EXEC(&&WORKID)' ', *
JDSNBG=' '&&USERID..JCLGEN(&&WORKID)' ', *
SDSN=SYSOUT, *
SDSNE=SYSOUT, *
CATAUDIT=(N,R), *
CATRECOV=(N,R), *
SYSRPPREF=' '&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD', *
SYSRUNIT=SYSDA, *
SYSRPS=10, *
SYSRSS=2, *
SYSRMAX=0, *
SYSRMAXU=, *
SYSCPPREF=' '&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD..P&PART', *
SYSCUNIT=SYSDA, *
SYSCPS=10, *
SYSCSS=2, *
SYSCMAX=0, *
SYSCMAXU=, *
RECVPPREF=' '&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD..P&PART', *
RECVUNIT=SYSDA, *
RECVPS=10, *
RECVSS=2, *
RECVMAX=0, *
RECVMAXU=, *
ARCHPPREF=' '&&PREFIX', *
ARCHUNIT=SYSDA, *
ARCHPS=10, *
ARCHSS=2, *
SEQUI=050, *
SYNCPNT=10, *
AMS=Y, *
ALLOC=N, *
STORCLAS=N, *
DATACLAS=N, *
MGMTCLAS=N, *
JCLCLEAN=N, *
AUTHSW=(N,R), *
GLID=, *

```

---

**Figure A-1      ALTER Default Options Module (Part 3 of 4)**

DASDMAN=(N,R),	*
CCSID=(E,R),	*
IXTYPE=(2,R),	*
VVALPROP=(N,R),	*
BPOOLTS=BP0,	*
BPOOLIX=BP0,	*
LOCK=X,	*
DISCARDS=(0000,R),	*
BMCSTATS=(N,R),	*
BMCCOPY=(N,R),	*
BMCHECK=(N,R),	*
BMCLOAD=(N,R),	*
BLDCU=(N,R),	*
BLDBS=(N,R),	*
UTILCOPY=(N,R),	*
BMCUNLD=(N,R),	*
REORG=(N,R),	*
REBLD=(I,R),	*
UNLDCOLL=N,	*
PARTCPY=N,	*
MAXSYSUT=20,	*
BMCFASTL=Y,	*
DYNCOPY=N,	*
DYNUNLD=N,	*
SZDEVT=(3390,R),	*
STATS=(S,R),	*
UPDSTATS=(C,R),	*
TABLEALL=(N,R),	*
UNLDEMPT=(Y,R),	*
STOPCOMM=(N,R),	*
TABLEACC=(Y,R),	*
DUAL=(N,R),	*
REGISTER=(1,R),	*
COPYDD01=R,	*
COPYDD02=N,	*
RECVDD01=N,	*
RECVDD02=N,	*
HSMVOL=,	*
LOCATION=,	*
TAPE1=CART,	*
TAPE2=TAPE,	*
TAPE3=TAPE,	*
ATTN=Y,	*
ENVP=CM731FDE,	*
FEP=CM731FDF,	*
SPP=CM731FDS,	*
ANP=CM731FDA,	*
IMP=CM731FDI,	*
EPP=AEX731HM,	*
EAP=AEX731HA,	*

---

Figure A-1

**ALTER Default Options Module (Part 4 of 4)**

```
EIP=BMIINSTL , *
ACTDOPT=ACTDOPD1 , *
ACVPLAN=ACV731DM , *
DEFERUIX= 'N' , *
REORGALT=N , *
POFDS= ( 'BMCADMN.D73.CNTL(AJX73POF)' ,R) , *
STAT HIST=Y
END
//LKED.SYSIN DD *
NAME ALUDOPD1(R)
```

---

**Note:** The ,R in the variable syntax indicates that the value specified will refresh the existing value of the variable in the user's ISPF profile data set, if the time stamp of the DOPTS is later than the time stamp in the user's ISPF profile member.

## Descriptions of Default Options

This section describes the DOPTs that are listed in Figure A-1. In some cases, the default value for the option is listed.

**ACTDOPT=ACTDOPD1**

Indicates the name of the CATALOG MANAGER product's DOPTs module that the client for ALTER uses to interact with CATALOG MANAGER. This parameter is used only if CATALOG MANAGER is installed.

**ACVPLAN=ACV731DM**

Specifies the main DB2 plan for the client for ALTER.

**ALLOC=N**

Indicates the allocation units to use for data sets that are managed by System Managed Storage (SMS). If the AMS is set to Y, this option determines how ALTER allocates space for VCAT-defined DB2 objects that SMS manages.

The DOPTs parameters are defined as follows:

<b>C</b>	cylinders
<b>K</b>	kilobytes
<b>M</b>	megabytes
<b>N</b>	SMS not in use (default)
<b>T</b>	tracks

---

**AMS=Y** Controls whether Analysis, by default, generates AMS statements (IDCAMS DELETE and DEFINE) in the worklist. You can use the **INCLUDE (AMS)** keyword to override this value. An entry of **N** generates a worklist -STOP command that enables you to complete the DELETE and DEFINE commands before the DB2 object CREATE commands that are located later in the worklist (**Y** or **N**).

**ANP=ALvrmcDA** Defines the Analysis plan name.

| **ARCHPREF='&&PREFIX'**

Specifies the high-level qualifier or prefix for data sets that is used for a BMC Software utility archive.

**ARCHPS=10** Indicates the primary space allocation, in cylinders, for BMC Software utility archive data sets.

**ARCHSS=2** Indicates the secondary space allocation, in cylinders, for BMC Software utility archive data sets.

**ARCHUNIT=SYSDA** Specifies the default UNIT that is used for BMC Software utility archive data sets.

**ASUDOPT=ASUDOPD1**

Specifies the name of the DASD MANAGER PLUS product's DOPTs module that the client for ALTER uses to interact with DASD MANAGER PLUS. This parameter is used only if DASD MANAGER PLUS is installed.

**ATTN=Y** Enables you to press the ATTENTION key to interrupt processing when **ATTN=Y**. You can use this option to stop processing, for example, when building a Mixed List in ALTER (**Y** or **N**).

**AUTHSW=N** Controls the method of authorization-ID switching that Analysis uses.

If you specify **AUTHSW=Y**, -AUTH commands are used in the worklist to switch the authorization ID for subsequent SQL statements and reBIND commands. In this mode, you can add -SETS commands to the worklist for setting the authorization ID with SET CURRENT SQLID statements.

If you specify **AUTHSW=N**, -SETS commands are generated for switching the authorization ID, and -AUTH commands are not allowed.

---

If you specify **AUTHSW=B**, both -AUTH and -SETS commands are used. -AUTH commands are generated to set the original CREATEDBY values. -SETS commands are generated to set new OWNER values for all objects. The **B** option also causes authorization-ID switching before CREATE TABLE and CREATE INDEX statements, which is not done under either of the other options.

When the AUTHSW keyword is used in the ALUIN input stream, it is equivalent to **AUTHSW=Y** in the DOPTs module.

**Note:** Do not use the AUTHSW keyword in the following situations:

- If **AUTHSW=N** is in the DOPTs module.
- If you are using a global authorization ID (GLID).

If your site does not use DB2 secondary AUTHIDs, set **AUTHSW=Y**. Otherwise, set **AUTHSW=N**. If you require that the CREATEDBY field in the DB2 catalog remain unchanged after updates, set **AUTHSW=B**.

**Warning!** Setting **AUTHSW=B** is not recommended because of a potential security exposure. This exposure exists because the DB2 catalog does not accurately reflect the primary authorization ID of the creator of the objects. If you must set **AUTHSW=B**, use the sample security exit (ALUEUSX1) to avoid the security exposure.

**BMCCHECK=N** Specifies whether to use the BMC Software CHECK PLUS utility in place of the IBM CHECK DATA utility for checking referential constraint violations in DB2 table spaces (**Y** or **N**).

**BMCCOPY=N** Specifies whether to use the BMC Software COPY PLUS utility in place of the IBM COPY utility. The DOPTs parameters are defined as follows:

- Y** Use BMCCOPY.
- N** Use IBMCOPY.
- X** Do not include copy operations.
- F** Do not include copy operations, but do start objects in copy pending status with ACCESS(FORCE).

**BMCFASTL=Y** Indicates whether the FORMAT BMCLOAD option in the BMC Software UNLOAD PLUS utility and the FORMAT BMCUNLOAD option in the BMC Software LOADPLUS utility are used to unload data from one table and load it into another table that has a similar structure (**Y** or **N**).

**BMCLOAD=N** Indicates whether to use the BMC Software LOADPLUS utility for loads in place of the IBM LOAD utility (**Y** or **N**).

---

<b>BMCUNLD=N</b>	Specifies whether to use the BMC Software UNLOAD PLUS utility product in place of ALTER UNLOAD (Y or N).						
<b>BPOOLIX=BP0</b>	<p>Indicates the buffer pool for user indexes. Valid values include BP0 through BP49. The value should match the value specified for the DB2 initialization parameter module, DSNZPARM, on the DB2 subsystem on which the option is used.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The Compare component uses the value of BPOOLIX on the local subsystem when a remote DB2 catalog or a baseline is used in a comparison.</p>						
<b>BPOOLTS=BP0</b>	<p>Indicates the buffer pool for user data. Valid values include</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BP0 through BP49</li> <li>• BP8K0 through BP8K9</li> <li>• BP16K0 through BP16K9</li> <li>• BP32K, BP32K1 through BP32K9</li> </ul> <p>The value should match the value specified for the DB2 initialization parameter module, DSNZPARM, on the DB2 subsystem on which the option is used.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The Compare component uses the value of BPOOLTS on the local subsystem when a remote DB2 catalog or a baseline is used in a comparison.</p>						
<b>CATAUDIT=N</b>	Specifies the DDL audit logging indicator. If you have CATALOG MANAGER installed, an entry of Y causes Execution to log executed DDL statements in the CATALOG MANAGER DDL Audit Log (Y or N).						
<b>CATRECOV=N</b>	Specifies the Drop Recovery indicator. This parameter is useful only if you have CATALOG MANAGER installed. Type Y if you want the Execution component to invoke CATALOG MANAGER to log recovery information in the CATALOG MANAGER drop-recovery tables for the objects that are dropped when the Work ID is executed. See the <i>CATALOG MANAGER for DB2 User Guide</i> for information about drop recovery.						
<b>CCSID=E</b>	<p>Provides the default encoding scheme for databases that are created using ALTER.</p> <table> <tr> <td>A</td><td>ASCII</td></tr> <tr> <td>E</td><td>EBCDIC</td></tr> <tr> <td>U</td><td>UNICODE</td></tr> </table>	A	ASCII	E	EBCDIC	U	UNICODE
A	ASCII						
E	EBCDIC						
U	UNICODE						



---

**COPYDD01=R, COPYDD02=N, RECVDD01=N, RECVDD02=N**

Defines image copies for the BMC Software COPY PLUS, REORG PLUS, and LOADPLUS utilities. The DOPTs parameters are defined as follows:

<b>N</b>	no
<b>C</b>	copy
<b>R</b>	register and copy

These DOPTs control the input keywords to Analysis as follows:

- Local-copy parameters (*parms*) for the COPYDDN keyword can be COPY01 and COPY02, separated by commas or blanks.
- Remote-copy parameters (*parms*) for the COPYDDN keyword can be RECV01 and RECV02, separated by commas or blanks.

**DASDMAN=Y**

Indicates whether version 5.1 or later of the BMC Software DASD MANAGER PLUS product is installed (Y or N). ALTER selects DB2 catalog statistics for space estimation. When **DASDMAN=Y**, any statistics from the BMCSTATS tables are merged.

**DATACLAS=N**

Indicates whether support for the DATACLAS parameter is required for VCAT-defined DB2 objects (Y or N).

**DATE=&SYSDATC**

Indicates a parameter that is used only if you have ASMA90 as your assembler.

**DB2CAT or DB2CT=('DBDBCAT')**

This DOPT is no longer used. See the VCAT control table variable of the BMCDB2 CLIST.

**DBRM1, DBRM2, DBRM3**

Names the three default DBRM libraries.

**DBRMLIB=N**

Includes the LIBRARY parameter on the BIND statement for plans and packages (Y or N).

**Note:** A disadvantage to adding the LIBRARY parameter to the BIND PLAN command is that the order of the libraries on the BIND could be incorrect. If some DBRMs are present in multiple libraries, ALTER cannot guarantee that the concatenation will result in every DBRM coming from the correct library.

**DEFERUIX=N**

For DB2 version 6 and later, enables ALTER to create unique indexes with the DEFER YES parameter (Y or N).

---

<b>DISCARDS=nnnn</b>	<p>Used by ALTER to specify the number of discard records to allow. The parameter <i>nnnn</i> specifies the number of discard records in a range from 0 to 9999. DISCARDS=0 means that no maximum number of discard records exists.</p> <p>With DISCARDS=1, the product generates one <b>discard DD, //SYSDS001</b> for the entire run, and DISCARDS 1 is generated as a LOAD parameter. JCL that is generated minimally sizes data sets for SYSDS001 and SYSER001 DDs. If any records must be discarded, this action causes the load utility to terminate with a return code of 8.</p> <p>If the DISCARDS option is set to any value other than 1, a different discard DD (<b>//SYSDnnnn</b>) is generated for each load, and DISCARDS <i>n</i> is generated as a LOAD parameter for each LOAD command (where <i>n</i> is the maximum number of discard records). This action causes the load to terminate if the discard maximum is reached. If fewer records are discarded, the discard file contains the records and execution proceeds to the next step in the worklist.</p>
<b>DYNCOPY=N</b>	Indicates whether the BMC Software COPY PLUS, RECOVER PLUS, and IBM COPY utilities dynamically allocate SYSCOPY data sets ( <b>Y</b> or <b>N</b> ). This DOPT is valid for DB2 version 6.1 and later if COPY PLUS and RECOVER PLUS are used, and version 7.1 and later if IBM COPY is used.
<b>DYNUNLD=N</b>	For DB2 version 6.1 and later, indicates whether the BMC Software UNLOAD PLUS and LOADPLUS utilities dynamically allocate SYSREC data sets ( <b>Y</b> or <b>N</b> ).
<b>EAP=AEXvrmAA</b>	Defines the Execution Authorization plan name, which determines whether a user is authorized to run Execution.
<b>EIP=BMIINSTL</b>	Defines the Installation plan name.
<b>ENVP=ALvrmcDE</b>	Defines the Environment plan name, which is used to display ALTER environment information.
<b>EPP=AEXvrmAM</b>	Defines the Execution primary plan name.
<b>EURO=N</b>	<p>Instructs ALTER to expect numbers in the European format (comma used for the decimal point) and to create output in European decimal format (<b>Y</b> or <b>N</b>).</p> <p>This parameter is particularly important when ALTER parses index LIMITKEY values that are separated by commas. If the EURO keyword is present, ALTER requires delimiting commas to be followed by blanks.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The Import and Specification components use the value for EURO from the DOPTs module, but do not support use of the EURO keyword in the ALUIN parameter input data stream.</p>

---

<b>FEP=ALvrmcDF</b>	Defines the Front End plan name.
<b>GLID=id</b>	Defines a global authorization ID (GLID). This authorization ID is used instead of the authorization ID of the person who submits the Execution job. The worklist begins with a -GLID command that switches authorization to the GLID.
<b>HSMVOL=vol</b>	Specifies the volume ID that indicates an archived data set if you are using a disk management system. If this volume ID is encountered, ALTER uses a template of default values for data set allocation.
<b>IMP=ALvrmcDI</b>	Defines the Import plan name.
<b>ISPSLIB</b>	Indicates the value that the ALTER client uses for generating JCL.
<b>IXTYPE=2</b>	Indicates the default index type that ALTER uses when no type is specified in a CREATE INDEX command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1       Type 1 index</li> <li>2       Type 2 index (DB2 version 6 and later)</li> </ul>
<b>JC1='//&amp;&amp;USERID.&amp;&amp;JOBCHAR JOB (ACCT),'&amp;&amp;PGMR','</b>	
<b>JC2='// CLASS=A, MSGCLASS=X,MSGLEVEL=(1,1),'</b>	
<b>JC3='// NOTIFY=&amp;&amp;USERID'</b>	
<b>JC4='//*'</b>	
<b>JC5='//*'</b>	Defines the jobcard that the Front End uses when it generates JCL. Symbolic variables can be used and are described in the Symbolic Variable appendix of the respective products' documentation.
<b>JCLCLEAN=N</b>	Enables you to generate a job step that automatically deletes many of the permanent (also known as nontemporary) data sets that the Execution component creates. These data sets are created during worklist processing and have a disposition (NEW ,CATLG ,CATLG). The automatic delete step is performed only if the condition code that is returned from any previous job step is four or less (Y or N).
<b>JDSN='''&amp;&amp;PREFIX..ANALYSIS(&amp;&amp;WORKID)'''</b>	Defines the default data set name that is used for Analysis JCL. This data set can be either a sequential or a partitioned data set. Hardcoding a member name is not recommended for a partitioned data set. The products automatically use the Work ID as the member name.

---

**JDSNBG='&&PREFIX..JCLGEN(&&WORKID)''**

For DB2 version 6 and later, defines the default data set name that is used for batch JCL Generation. This data set can be either a sequential or a partitioned data set. Hardcoding a member name is not recommended for a partitioned data set. The products automatically use the Work ID as the member name.

**JDSNE='&&PREFIX..EXEC(&&WORKID)''**

Defines the default data set name that is used for Execution JCL. This data set can be either a sequential or a partitioned data set. Hardcoding a member name is not recommended for a partitioned data set. The product automatically uses the Work ID as the member name.

**LOCATION**

This DOPT is no longer used except for Single Point Entry when the variable is set to **SPE\_METHOD**. SPE\_METHOD enables the product to display the remote SSID that the packages are accessing. In all cases, the product determines the SSID location from the current server register.

**LOCK=X**

Controls the SQL LOCK TABLE statements that the Execution component issues for ALTER UNLOAD statements. The LOCK parameter does not apply to the BMC Software UNLOAD PLUS product.

**S** Issue the SQL LOCK TABLE IN SHARE MODE statement.  
**X** Issue the SQL LOCK TABLE IN EXCLUSIVE MODE statement.  
**N** Do not issue SQL LOCK TABLE statements.

**LOG=N**

Specifies that records be logged during loads that use the IBM LOAD utility (Y or N).

**MAXSYSUT=20**

Specifies the maximum number of SYSUT temporary work data sets that the BMC Software LOADPLUS or REORG PLUS utilities can use to build nonclustering indexes for a table. The range of valid values is 1 to 9999.

**MGMTCLAS=N**

Indicates whether support for the MGMTCLAS parameter is required for VCAT-defined DB2 objects (Y or N).

**PARTCPY=N**

Specifies whether to use the BMC Software LOADPLUS, COPY PLUS, RECOVER PLUS, or REORG PLUS utility to create a partition-level image copy of a partitioned table space or index (Y or N).

**PC=ALU**

Defines the product code to the ALTER components.

**PIC=N**

(Pre-Image Copy) Indicates whether an image copy should be taken of each table space before a database is dropped, a table is dropped, or the table space is dropped or reorganized (Y or N).

**POFDS='&&HLQ..CNTL(&POFNAME)'**

Specifies the name of the initial JCL Generation Product Options File (POF).

---

**PRODUCT='PRODUCT NAME'**

Defines the product name. For example, **PRODUCT = ALTER**.

**REBLD=I**

For DB2 version 6 and later, specifies whether to use the rebuild utility from IBM or BMC Software or no rebuild utility. If **REBLD=N**, eligible indexes are not created with DEFER YES. If a nonunique index is dropped or created in a worklist, and its parent table is not dropped or created in the worklist, the index is created with DEFER YES if **REBLD=I** or **REBLD=B**.

The DOPTs parameters are defined as follows:

<b>B</b>	BMCRECOVER
<b>I</b>	IBMREBUILD
<b>N</b>	NO REBUILD

**RECOV=I**

For DB2 version 5, specifies whether to use the recover utility from IBM or BMC Software or no recover utility. If **RECOV=N**, eligible indexes are not created with DEFER YES. If a nonunique index is dropped or created in a worklist, and its parent table is not dropped or created in the worklist, the index is created with DEFER YES if **RECOV=I** or **RECOV=B**.

The DOPTs parameters are defined as follows:

<b>B</b>	BMCRECOVER
<b>I</b>	IBMRECOVER
<b>N</b>	NO RECOVER

**RECVMAX**

Indicates the offsite-copy threshold, in cylinders, above which the utility uses the secondary unit for allocation. If the size of a data set exceeds the threshold, the utility uses the secondary unit. To avoid using the secondary unit, specify 0.

**RECVMAXU**

Indicates the offsite-copy secondary, or alternate, unit that is used for any overflow.

**RECVREF='&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD..P&PART'**

Defines the default prefix (high-level qualifier) that is used for the RECV<sub>nnn</sub> recovery data sets. The &&OBNOD symbolic variable resolves to database.&SPNAME. &SPNAME resolves to a table space name or to an index space name, depending on the type of object that is being copied.

**RECVPS=10**

Defines, in cylinders, the default primary space allocation for RECV<sub>nnn</sub> recovery data sets.

**RECVSS=2**

Defines, in cylinders, the default secondary space allocation for RECV<sub>nnn</sub> recovery data sets.

---

<b>RECVUNIT=SYSDA</b>	Defines the default unit that is used for creating RECV $nnn$ recovery data sets.
<b>REORG=N</b>	<p>Indicates whether to generate reorganizations in worklists for operations which require reorganizing table spaces and indexes. Changes made to attributes such as PRIQTY, SECQTY, PCTFREE, FREEPAGE, and VOLUME (for VCAT-defined partitions) can cause placement of reorganization commands in the worklist. If reorganizations are to be generated, this option also indicates whether to use the BMC Software REORG PLUS product in place of the IBM REORG utility.</p> <p><b>B</b>      Generate BMC reorganizations in worklists.  <b>I</b>      Generate IBM reorganizations in worklists.  <b>N</b>      Do not generate reorganizations in worklists (default).</p>
<b>REORGALT=N</b>	Indicates whether a table space should be reorganized after a column is added to a table by using the ALTER TABLE statement ( <b>Y</b> or <b>N</b> ).
<b>SDSN=SYSOUT</b>	Specifies the default data set for diagnostic messages for Analysis. This option can be a sequential file, the keyword SYSOUT, or TERM (terminal). If you use SYSOUT, the diagnostic messages are written to the JES SPOOL. If you use TERM, the diagnostic messages are written to your terminal.
<b>SDSNE=SYSOUT</b>	Specifies the default data set for diagnostic messages for Execution. This option can be a sequential file or the keyword SYSOUT. If you use SYSOUT, the diagnostic messages are written to the JES SPOOL.
<b>SEQI=050</b>	Defines the sequence-number increment for worklists and CDL files.
<b>SL1=("<i>HLQ</i>.LOAD")</b>	Specifies the STEPLIB library that contains the BMC Software load modules.
<b>SL2=("<i>SYS1.DSNEXIT</i>")</b>	Specifies the optional first STEPLIB library for DB2 load modules. This library is concatenated to the library that keyword SL1 specifies.
<b>SL3=("<i>SYS1.DSNLOAD</i>")</b>	Specifies the optional second STEPLIB library for DB2 load modules. This library is concatenated to the library that keywords SL1 and SL2 specify.
<b>SL4=("<i>SYS1.OTHER.LOADLIB1</i>")</b>	Specifies optional additional STEPLIB libraries.
<b>SL5=("<i>SYS1.OTHER.LOADLIB2</i>")</b>	Specifies optional additional STEPLIB libraries.
<b>SPP=AL<math>vrmc</math>DS</b>	Defines the Specification plan name.

---

<b>SSID=DB2</b>	This DOPT is no longer used. See the product's SSID control table column of the BMCDB2 CLIST.						
<b>STATHIST=Y</b>	For DB2 version 7 and later, specifies that the IBM RUNSTATS utility will update the DB2 catalog history tables with the current statistics that are being collected (Y or N).						
<b>STATS=S</b>	For DB2 version 6.1 and later, indicates what type of statistics are generated. The DOPTs parameters are defined as follows: <table> <tr> <td><b>S</b></td><td>Stand-alone—The worklist generates either a -BMCS or an -RNST command in the worklist.</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>U</b></td><td>Utility—The worklist combines statistics with a utility (Reorg, Copy, Load) whenever possible.</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>X</b></td><td>No statistics are generated.</td></tr> </table>	<b>S</b>	Stand-alone—The worklist generates either a -BMCS or an -RNST command in the worklist.	<b>U</b>	Utility—The worklist combines statistics with a utility (Reorg, Copy, Load) whenever possible.	<b>X</b>	No statistics are generated.
<b>S</b>	Stand-alone—The worklist generates either a -BMCS or an -RNST command in the worklist.						
<b>U</b>	Utility—The worklist combines statistics with a utility (Reorg, Copy, Load) whenever possible.						
<b>X</b>	No statistics are generated.						
<b>STOPCOMM=N</b>	For DB2 version 6.1 and later, indicates whether an AT (COMMIT) command is generated in a worklist when a STOP command is created.						
<b>STORCLAS=N</b>	Indicates whether support for the STORCLAS parameter is required for VCAT-defined DB2 objects (Y or N).						
<b>SWPS=10</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the default primary space allocation for sort work.						
<b>SWSS=2</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the default secondary space allocation for sort work.						
<b>SWU=SYSDA</b>	Describes the sort work unit.						
<b>SYNCPNT = <i>parm</i></b>	Creates additional -SYNC commands in a worklist, based on the number of -SQL commands since the last -SYNC command. The variable <i>parm</i> specifies the maximum number of -SQL commands that can be in the worklist before a -SYNC command is created. Valid values for <i>parm</i> are from 0 to 99. The default value is 10. <p>When the value is reached, the Analysis component places an additional -SYNC command before the next -SQL command. Any -SYNC command in the worklist resets the count of -SQL commands to zero. -SYNC commands that this keyword generates are in addition to the -SYNC commands that Analysis automatically generates.</p>						
<b>SYSCMAX</b>	Indicates the SYSCOPY threshold, in cylinders, above which the utility uses the secondary unit for allocation. If the size of a data set exceeds the threshold, the utility uses the secondary unit. To avoid using the secondary unit, specify 0.						

---

<b>SYSCMAXU</b>	Indicates the SYSCOPY secondary, or alternate, unit that is used for any overflow.
-----------------	--

| **SYSCPREF='&&PREFIX..OBNOD..P&PART'**

Defines the default SYSCOPY data set prefix. The &&OBNOD symbolic variable resolves to database.&SPNAME. &SPNAME resolves to a table space name or to an index space name, depending on the type of object that is being copied.

<b>SYSCPS=10</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the default SYSCOPY primary space allocation.
------------------	--

<b>SYSCSS=2</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the default SYSCOPY secondary space allocation.
-----------------	--

<b>SYSCUNIT=SYSDA</b>	Defines the default SYSCOPY unit.
-----------------------	-----------------------------------

<b>SYSRMAX</b>	Indicates the SYSREC threshold, in cylinders, above which the utility will use the secondary unit for allocation. If the size of a data set exceeds the threshold, the utility uses the secondary unit. To avoid using the secondary unit, specify 0.
----------------	---

<b>SYSRMAXU</b>	Indicates the SYSREC secondary, or alternate, unit that is used for any overflow.
-----------------	---

| **SYSRPREF='&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD'**

Defines the default SYSREC data set prefix.

<b>SYSRPS=10</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the default SYSREC primary space allocation.
------------------	---

<b>SYSRSS=2</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the default SYSREC secondary space allocation.
-----------------	---

<b>SYSRUNIT=SYSDA</b>	Defines the default SYSREC unit.
-----------------------	----------------------------------

<b>SYSTYPE=S</b>	Defines the installation's character set.
------------------	---

<b>M</b>	mixed
<b>S</b>	single-byte only

<b>SZDEVT=3380</b>	Specifies the device type for data set sizing for JCL Generation. Valid values are 3380 and 3390. The default is 3380.
--------------------	--

<b>TABLEACC=Y</b>	For DB2 version 6.1 and later, indicates whether all tables remain accessible during execution (Y or N).
-------------------	--



---

<b>TABLEALL=N</b>	For DB2 version 6.1 and later, specifies the STATS utility to gather information for all columns of tables.						
<b>N</b>	Do not include the TABLE(ALL) parameter on stand-alone stats runs.						
<b>Y</b>	Include the TABLE(ALL) parameter on stand-alone stats runs.						
<b>TAPE1=CART, TAPE2=TAPE, TAPE3=TAPE</b>	Defines the valid installation tape unit names for your site.						
<b>TIMEPARM</b>	Indicates the TIME limit in minutes for each step in a batch job stream.						
<b>TSOSX=N</b>	Specifies whether your site uses the TSO Submit exit to supply the job statements at submit time (Y or N).						
<b>UNLDCOLL=N</b>	Indicates the explicit column list that is required on all BMC Software UNLOAD PLUS unloads (Y or N).						
<b>UNLDEMPY=Y</b>	For DB2 version 6.1 and later, specifies whether the tables that RUNSTATS indicates as empty are unloaded.						
<b>UPDSTATS=C</b>	For DB2 version 6.1 and later, specifies which statistics are updated. The DOPTs parameters are defined as follows: <table> <tr> <td><b>A</b></td><td>All—The DASD tables and the DB2 Catalog tables are updated. BMCSTATS is selected.</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>B</b></td><td>BMC DASD tables—Only the DASD tables are updated. BMCSTATS is selected.</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>C</b></td><td>DB2 Catalog—Only the DB2 Catalog tables are updated. RUNSTATS is selected.</td></tr> </table>	<b>A</b>	All—The DASD tables and the DB2 Catalog tables are updated. BMCSTATS is selected.	<b>B</b>	BMC DASD tables—Only the DASD tables are updated. BMCSTATS is selected.	<b>C</b>	DB2 Catalog—Only the DB2 Catalog tables are updated. RUNSTATS is selected.
<b>A</b>	All—The DASD tables and the DB2 Catalog tables are updated. BMCSTATS is selected.						
<b>B</b>	BMC DASD tables—Only the DASD tables are updated. BMCSTATS is selected.						
<b>C</b>	DB2 Catalog—Only the DB2 Catalog tables are updated. RUNSTATS is selected.						
<b>UTILCOPY=N</b>	Determines whether other utilities or a copy utility creates an image copy during loads. <table> <tr> <td><b>Y</b></td><td>Image copies are created by utilities other than the copy utilities whenever possible. If the utilities cannot create a copy, a separate copy step is generated.</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>N</b></td><td>A separate copy step generates all copies that the specific copy utility takes (either the IBM COPY utility or the BMC Software COPY PLUS utility).</td></tr> </table>	<b>Y</b>	Image copies are created by utilities other than the copy utilities whenever possible. If the utilities cannot create a copy, a separate copy step is generated.	<b>N</b>	A separate copy step generates all copies that the specific copy utility takes (either the IBM COPY utility or the BMC Software COPY PLUS utility).		
<b>Y</b>	Image copies are created by utilities other than the copy utilities whenever possible. If the utilities cannot create a copy, a separate copy step is generated.						
<b>N</b>	A separate copy step generates all copies that the specific copy utility takes (either the IBM COPY utility or the BMC Software COPY PLUS utility).						
<b>VVALPROP=N</b>	Specifies whether ALTER supports extended view text propagation (Y or N).						

---

<b>VRM=vrmm</b>	Indicates the version, release level, maintenance level, and DB2 exploited version (where E indicates version 6.1 and F indicates version 7.1 or later).
<b>WDC</b>	Specifies the Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem (DFSMS or SMS) data class name, used at data set allocation time, to define the allocation attributes of the data set. A data class name is not required, even for SMS data sets. WDC appears as "DATACLAS= " in the JCL for workfiles.
<b>WDSN='''&amp;&amp;PREFIX..&amp;&amp;SSID..&amp;&amp;WORKID'''</b>	Defines the default data set name for a worklist that Analysis generates.
<b>WLPS=15</b>	Defines, in tracks, the default primary space allocation for the worklist.
<b>WLSS=5</b>	Defines, in tracks, the default secondary space allocation for the worklist.
<b>WLU=SYSDA</b>	Defines the default worklist unit.
<b>WMC</b>	Specifies the SMS management class name, used at data set allocation time, to define the migration, retention, and backup requirements of the data set. WMC appears as "MGMTCLAS= " in the JCL for workfiles.
<b>WPS=10</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the default primary space allocation of the work data set.
<b>WSC</b>	Specifies the SMS storage class name, used at data set allocation time, to define the processing requirements of the data set. WSC appears as "STORCLAS= " in the JCL for nontape workfiles.
<b>WSS=2</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the default secondary space allocation of the work data set.
<b>WU=SYSDA</b>	Defines the default work data set unit.

---

# Appendix B    CATALOG MANAGER Default Options

This appendix presents the following topics:

Default Options . . . . .	B-2
Descriptions of Default Options . . . . .	B-5

---

# Default Options

This section provides an example of the DOPTs module for the CATALOG MANAGER product (Figure B-1). The DOPTs module is created by the installation system and resides in *\$xnmDOPT*. The DOPTs module also resides in *HLQ.CNTL* with the same member name as the DOPTs.

**Figure B-1 CATALOG MANAGER Default Options Module (Part 1 of 4)**

---

```
*****
*
* MODULE NAME : ACTDOPD1
* FUNCTION    : CATALOG MANAGER DEFAULT PROFILE MODULE
* COPYRIGHT   : COPYRIGHT BMC SOFTWARE INC., 2003
* LEVEL       : RELEASE 7.3 October 2003
* FUNCTIONS   : DEFINE THE DEFAULT PROFILE VARIABLES
*
*****
*****
*
* SECTIONS:
* ACTDOPTS CSECT
*
*****
ACTDOPTS CSECT
    $ACTDOPT
        DPT=( ' ' ,R) ,
        ESC=' ' ' ' ,
        CUP=Y ,
        HRS=( N,R) ,
        TRS=( N,R) ,
        CRS=( N,R) ,
        DRO=O ,
        AUDIT=Y ,
        ALLC=N ,
        DBCS=( N,R) ,
        PLP=55 ,
        MAX=300 ,
        MPLAN=ACT731DM ,
        LPLAN=ACT731DL ,
        UPLAN=ACT731DU ,
        KPLAN=ACT731DK ,
        HPLAN=ACT731DH ,
        EPLAN=ACT731DE ,
        BPLAN=ACT731DB ,
        SPLAN=ACT731DS ,
        DPLAN= ,
```

**Figure B-1 CATALOG MANAGER Default Options Module (Part 2 of 4)**

```

RCCOL=ACT731_D_MAIN, *
ICSYC=, *
CATOP=Y, *
PDSN=&&ZUSER..BMCCAT.PRINT, *
WDSN=&&ZUSER..BMCCAT.WORK, *
XDSN=, *
SDSN=, *
EDSN=, *
ADSN=&&ZUSER..BMCCAT.ARCHIVE, *
BDSN='''BMCADMN.V731.D71.DBRM''' , *
LDSN=&&ZUSER..BMCCAT.SQL, *
JDSN=&&ZUSER..BMCCAT.UTILITY( ), *
TDSN= *
POFDS=( 'BMCADMN.D71.CNTL(AJX73POF)' ,R) , *
COMD=ACTCOMND, *
HDTN=Y, *
HDTB=Y, *
HDAL=N, *
HDIY=Y, *
HDSY=N, *
HDVW=Y, *
HDPL=N, *
UWFSE=2, *
UWLUN=SYSDA, *
AOPTS=' ', *
BOPTS=' ', *
GPLAN=ACT731DG
$ACTSQLD IPNAMES=STATIC, X
LOCATIO=STATIC, X
LULIST=STATIC, X
LUMODES=STATIC, X
LUNAMES=STATIC, X
MODESEL=STATIC, X
AUXRELS=STATIC, X
CHECKS=STATIC, X
CHECKDE=STATIC, X
COLAUTH=STATIC, X
COLDIST=STATIC, X
COLDISS=STATIC, X
COLSTAT=STATIC, X
COLUMNS=STATIC, X
CONSTDE=STATIC, X
COPY=STATIC, X
DATABAS=STATIC, X
DATATYP=STATIC, X
DBAUTH=STATIC, X
DBRM=STATIC, X
FIELDS=STATIC, X
FOREIGN=STATIC, X

```

---

**Figure B-1      CATALOG MANAGER Default Options Module (Part 3 of 4)**

INDEXES=STATIC ,	X
INDEXPA=STATIC ,	X
INDEXST=STATIC ,	X
KEYS=STATIC ,	X
LOBSTAT=STATIC ,	X
PACKAGE=STATIC ,	X
PACKAUT=STATIC ,	X
PACKDEP=STATIC ,	X
PACKLIS=STATIC ,	X
PACKSTM=STATIC ,	X
PARMS=STATIC ,	X
PKSYSTE=STATIC ,	X
PLAN=STATIC ,	X
PLANAUT=STATIC ,	X
PLANDEP=STATIC ,	X
PLSYSTE=STATIC ,	X
PROCEDU=STATIC ,	X
RELS=STATIC ,	X
RESAUTH=STATIC ,	X
ROUTINA=STATIC ,	X
ROUTINE=STATIC ,	X
SCHEMAA=STATIC ,	X
STMT=STATIC ,	X
STOGROU=STATIC ,	X
STRINGS=STATIC ,	X
SYNONYM=STATIC ,	X
TABAUTH=STATIC ,	X
TABLEPA=STATIC ,	X
TABLES=STATIC ,	X
TABLESP=STATIC ,	X
TABSTAT=STATIC ,	X
TRIGGER=STATIC ,	X
USERAUT=STATIC ,	X
VIEWDEP=STATIC ,	X
VIEWS=STATIC ,	X
VOLUMES=STATIC ,	X
USERNAM=STATIC ,	X
CHECKS2=STATIC ,	X
COLDISH=STATIC ,	X
INDEXSH=STATIC ,	X
INDEXH=STATIC ,	X
INDEXPH=STATIC ,	X
JARCONT=STATIC ,	X
JAROBJT=STATIC ,	X
JAVOPTS=STATIC ,	X
KCOLUSE=STATIC ,	X
LOBSTAH=STATIC ,	X
ROUTOPT=STATIC ,	X
ROUTSRC=STATIC ,	X
TABCNST=STATIC ,	X

---

**Figure B-1      CATALOG MANAGER Default Options Module (Part 4 of 4)**

```
TABLESH=STATIC ,           X
TABSTAH=STATIC ,          X
COLUMNH=STATIC ,          X
TABPRTH=STATIC
LTORG
ACT      $ACTDOPT DSECT=YES ,LBL=ACT
*****
*
* MODULE NAME       : ACTDOPD1
* DESCRIP NAME      : CATALOG MANAGER DEFAULT PROFILE OPTIONS
* ENTRY INFORMATION: THIS MODULE CONTAINS NO EXECUTABLE CODE
*
*****
      END
//LKED.SYSIN DD *
      NAME ACTDOPD1(R)
```

---

**Note:** The ,R in the variable syntax indicates that the value specified will refresh the existing value of the variable in the user's ISPF profile data set every time that a user starts the product.

## Descriptions of Default Options

This section describes the DOPTs that are listed in Figure B-1. In some cases, the default value for the option is listed.

### **ADSN=&&ZUSER..BMCCAT.ARCHIVE**

Specifies the name of the data set where you want to store archived log entries. CATALOG MANAGER dynamically allocates the log entries the first time that they are used. (See the *CATALOG MANAGER for DB2 User Guide* for details about log maintenance.) When allocating this data set, use the following parameters:

**DCB=(LRECL=2044,BLKSIZE=2048,RECFM=VB)**

**Note:** In many installation sites, allocation of data sets is controlled by user-written or third-party routines. If allocation fails, you should use alternate means, such as the Interactive System Productivity Facility (ISPF), to perform the allocations.

### **ALLC=N**

Determines whether to display all panel titles, column heads, field prompts, and messages in uppercase characters (Y or N).

---

<b>AOPTS=ALUDOPD1</b>	If ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER is installed, specifies the DOPTs name to be used with this parameter to run a CATALOG MANAGER worklist by using the Execution component and the associated plan names.
<b>AUDIT=Y</b>	Indicates whether to use audit logging (Y or N).
<b>AUXRELS=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSAUXRELS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>BDSN</b>	Indicates the DBRM library that CATALOG MANAGER uses when executing the BIND command.
<b>BOPTS=ASUDOPD1</b>	Indicates whether the DASD MANAGER PLUS product is also installed. If DASD MANAGER PLUS is installed, the DOPTs name specified with this parameter is used to enable the use of the SPACE and STATS commands in CATALOG MANAGER and to run a CATALOG MANAGER worklist by using the Execution component and the associated plan names.  <b>Note:</b> These parameters must match the load library and options module name that is used when installing DASD MANAGER PLUS.
<b>BPLAN=ACTvrmDB</b>	Specifies the authorization plan for DSN commands. This plan is not used currently, but will be enabled in a future release.
<b>CATOP=Y</b>	Specifies whether to perform the installation SYSADM check when CATALOG MANAGER is initialized (Y or N). Selecting Y starts a DB2 trace.
<b>CHECKDE=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSCHECKDEP catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>CHECKS=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSCHECKS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.



---

<b>CHECKS2=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSCHECKS2 catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>COLAUTH=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSCOLAUTH catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>COLDISH=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSCOLDIST_HIST catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>COLDIST=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSCOLDIST catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>COLDISS=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSCOLDISTSTATS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>COLSTAT=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSCOLSTATS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>COLUMNH=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS_HIST catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.

---

<b>COLUMNS=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSCOLUMNS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>CONSTDE=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSCONSTDEP catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>COMD=ACTCOMND</b>	Specifies the name of the CATALOG MANAGER command module. See job \$xnnCOMD in the output JCL file.
<b>COPY=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSCOPY catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>CRS=N</b>	Specifies whether issuing the SET PROFILE and SET PROFILE OFF commands requires SYSADM (System Administrator) authority (Y or N).
<b>CUP=Y</b>	Specifies the conditional uppercase indicator.  <div> Y      Translate delimited identifiers to uppercase.  N      Do not translate delimited identifiers to uppercase. </div>
<b>DATABAS=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSDATABASE catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>DATATYP=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSDATATYPES catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.

---

<b>DBAUTH=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSDBAUTH catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.						
<b>DBCS=N</b>	Indicates if DB2 subsystem character strings can contain a mixture of SBCS and DBCS data or SBCS data only.  <table> <tr> <td><b>Y</b></td><td>SBCS and DBCS data</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>N</b></td><td>SBCS data only</td></tr> </table>	<b>Y</b>	SBCS and DBCS data	<b>N</b>	SBCS data only		
<b>Y</b>	SBCS and DBCS data						
<b>N</b>	SBCS data only						
<b>DBRM=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSDBRM catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.						
<b>DPLAN</b>	Specifies the DATA PACKER <sup>®</sup> for DB2 plan. If DATA PACKER is installed, CATALOG MANAGER can use the AMEND and TRIAL command features.						
<b>DPT=('.)</b>	Indicates that the decimal point character for CATALOG MANAGER must be a comma or a period.						
<b>DRO=O</b>	Indicates the Drop Recovery option:  <table> <tr> <td><b>M</b></td><td>mandatory</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>O</b></td><td>optional</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>N</b></td><td>not used</td></tr> </table>	<b>M</b>	mandatory	<b>O</b>	optional	<b>N</b>	not used
<b>M</b>	mandatory						
<b>O</b>	optional						
<b>N</b>	not used						
<b>EDSN=&amp;&amp;ZUSER..BMCCAT.SQLE</b>	Specifies the name of the error listing for the SQL Explorer product.						
<b>EPLAN=ACTvrmDE</b>	Specifies the name of the plan that enables access to the data editing and browsing functions.						
<b>ESC=""</b>	Indicates the SQL string delimiter. This delimiter must be an apostrophe (') or a quotation mark ("). You must select the one that matches the way your DB2 system was generated. The character that you do not select becomes the SQL escape character.						

---

<b>FIELDS=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSFIELDS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>FOREIGN=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSFOREIGNKEYS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>GPLAN=ACTvrmDG</b>	Specifies the authorization plan for commands that will generate SQL for execution. This plan is not used currently, but will be enabled in a future release.
<b>GRPAT</b>	Indicates the group attach name for data sharing in a sysplex. This name is used as the SSID when JCL for utilities is generated.
<b>HDAL=N</b>	Indicates whether to include aliases in the hierarchical describe (Y or N).
<b>HDIX=Y</b>	Indicates whether to include indexes in the hierarchical describe (Y or N).
<b>HDPL=N</b>	Indicates whether to include plans in the hierarchical describe (Y or N).
<b>HDSY=N</b>	Indicates whether to include synonyms in the hierarchical describe (Y or N).
<b>HDTB=Y</b>	Indicates whether to include tables in the hierarchical describe (Y or N).
<b>HDTS=Y</b>	Indicates whether to include table spaces in the hierarchical describe (Y or N).
<b>HDVW=Y</b>	Indicates whether to include views in the hierarchical describe (Y or N).
<b>HPLAN=ACTvrmDH</b>	Specifies the plan for displaying BMC Software utility status.
<b>HRS=N</b>	Specifies whether all CATALOG MANAGER users can use the HEX command or only those users with DB2 SYSADM authority.  Y      only users with DB2 SYSADM authority N      all users
<b>ICSYC</b>	Indicates the CATALOG MANAGER synonym creator ID that is used when installing catalog indirection for CATALOG MANAGER.

---

<b>INDEXES=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>INDEXH=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXES_HIST catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>INDEXPA=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>INDEXPH=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXPART_HIST catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>INDEXSH=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXSTATS_HIST catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>INDEXST=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSINDEXSTATS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>IPNAMES=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSIPNAMES catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.

---

<b>JARCONT=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSJARCONTENTS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>JAROBJT=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSJAROBJECTS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>JAVOPTS=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSJAVAOPTS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>JDSN=&amp;&amp;ZUSER..BMCCAT.JCL()</b>	Specifies the default data set name that is used for utility JCL. This option can be either a sequential or a partitioned data set. A member name is not allowed for a partitioned data set. The product uses the utility name as the default member name automatically.
<b>KCOLUSE=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSKEYCOLUSE catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>KEYS=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSKEYS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>KPLAN=ACTvrmDK</b>	Specifies the name of the DB2 commands plan.

---

**LDSN=&&ZUSER..BMCCAT.SQL**

Specifies the name of the SQL output data set. CATALOG MANAGER dynamically allocates the data set the first time that it is used. When allocating this data set, use the following parameters:

**DCB=(LRECL=4092,BLKSIZE=4096,RECFM=VB)**

**Note:** In many installations, allocation of data sets is controlled by user-written or third-party routines. If allocation fails, you should use alternate means, such as ISPF, to perform the allocations.

<b>LOBSTAH=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSLOBSTATS_HIST catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>LOBSTAT=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSLOBSTATS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>LOCATIO=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.LOCATIONS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>LPLAN=ACTvrmDL</b>	Specifies the name of the CATALOG MANAGER logs maintenance plan.
<b>LULIST=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.LULIST catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>LUMODES=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.LUMODES catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.

---

<b>LUNAMES=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.LUNAMES catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>MAX=300</b>	Indicates the maximum number of lines to generate in a list.
<b>MODESEL=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.MODESELECT catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>MPLAN=ACTvrmDM</b>	Specifies the name of the CATALOG MANAGER main plan.
<b>PACKAGE=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSPACKAGE catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>PACKAUT=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSPACKAUTH catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>PACKDEP=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSPACKDEP catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>PACKLIS=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSPACKLIST catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.



---

<b>PACKSTM=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSPACKSTMT catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>PARMS=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSPARMS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>PDSN=&amp;&amp;ZUSER..BMCCAT.PRINT</b>	Specifies the name of the print output data set. CATALOG MANAGER dynamically allocates this data set the first time that it is used. When allocating this data set, use the following parameters:  <b>DCB=(LRECL=133,BLKSIZE=1330,RECFM=FBA)</b>  <b>Note:</b> In many installations, allocation of data sets is controlled by user-written or third-party routines. If allocation fails, you should use alternate means, such as ISPF, to perform the allocations.
<b>PKSYSTE=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSPKSYSTEM catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>PLAN=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSPLAN catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>PLANAUT=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSPLANAUT catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.

---

<b>PLANDEP=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSPLANDEP catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>PLP=55</b>	Indicates the number of print lines per page for the PRINT commands.
<b>PLSYSTE=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSPLSYSTEM catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>POFDS='&amp;&amp;HLQ..CNTL(&amp;POFNAME)'</b>	Specifies the name of the JCL Generation Product Options File (POF).
<b>PROCEDU=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSPROCEDURES catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>RCCOL=ACTvrm_D_MAIN</b>	Specifies the CATALOG MANAGER collection ID for direct catalog access.
<b>RELS=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSRELS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>RESAUTH=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSRESAUTH catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>ROUTINA=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSROUTINEAUTH catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.

---

<b>ROUTINE=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSROUTINES catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>ROUTOPT=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSROUTINES_OPTS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>ROUTSRC=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSROUTINES_SRC catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>SCHEMAA=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSSCHEMAAUTH catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>SDSN=&amp;&amp;ZUSER..BMCCAT.SQLS</b>	Specifies the name of the SQL Explorer summary listing.
<b>SPLAN=ACTvrmDS</b>	Specifies the authorization plan for the SEARCH command. This plan is not used currently, but will be enabled in a future release.
<b>STMT=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSSTMT catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>STOGROU=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSSTOGROUP catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.

---

<b>STRINGS=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSSTRINGS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>SYNONYM=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSSYNONYMS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>TABAUTH=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSTABAUTH catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>TABCNST=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSTABCONST catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>TABLEPA=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>TABLES=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSTABLES catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>TABLESH=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSTABLES_HIST catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.

---

<b>TABLESP=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSTABLESPACE catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>TABPRTH=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSTABLEPART_HIST catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>TABSTAH=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSTABSTATS_HIST catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>TABSTAT=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSTABSTATS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>TDSN</b>	Specifies the data set in which site utility profiles are saved.
<b>TRIGGER=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSTRIGGERS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>TRS=N</b>	Specifies whether all users or just users with DB2 SYSADM authority can terminate utilities.  <div> Y      Only users with DB2 SYSADM authority can terminate utilities.  N      Any user can terminate the utility. </div>
<b>UCOMD</b>	<i>(optional)</i> Indicates the user command table.
<b>UPLAN=ACTvrmDU</b>	Specifies the name of the utilities plan.

---

<b>USERAUT=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSUSERAUTH catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>USERNAM=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.USERNAMES catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>VIEWDEP=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSVIEWDEP catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>VIEWS=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSVIEWS catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>VOLUMES=STATIC</b>	Specifies whether CATALOG MANAGER uses static SQL or dynamic SQL to access the SYSIBM.SYSVOLUMES catalog table. STATIC indicates that a user ID must have EXECUTE authority on the main CATALOG MANAGER plan ACTvrmDM to execute SQL on the table. DYNAMIC indicates that a user ID must have SELECT authority on the table to execute SQL on the table.
<b>WDSN=&amp;&amp;ZUSER..BMCCAT.WORK</b>	Specifies the default worklist data set name for a new Work ID. CATALOG MANAGER dynamically allocates the name the first time that it is used. This data set name can be overridden on the Analysis Interface panel. This data set can be either a sequential file or a partitioned data set (PDS).
<b>XDSN=&amp;&amp;ZUSER..BMCCAT.SQLX</b>	Specifies the name of the SQL Explorer report.

---

# Appendix C    **CHANGE MANAGER**

## **Default Options**

This appendix presents the following topics:

Default Options . . . . .	C-2
Descriptions of Default Options . . . . .	C-6

---

## Default Options

This section provides an example of the default options (DOPTs) module for the CHANGE MANAGER product (Figure C-1). The DOPTs module is created by the installation system and resides in *\$xnmDOPT*. The DOPTs module also resides in *HLQ.CNTL* with the same member name as the DOPTs.

**Figure C-1** CHANGE MANAGER Default Options Module (Part 1 of 4)

---

```
*****
*
* MODULE       : ACMDOPD1
* FUNCTION     : CHANGE MANAGER FOR DB2
* COPYRIGHT    : COPYRIGHT BMC SOFTWARE INC., 2003
* LEVEL        : RELEASE 7.3 October 2003
* FUNCTIONS    : DEFINE THE DEFAULT PROFILE VARIABLES
*
*****
ACMDOPTS CSECT ,
ACMDOPTS RMODE 24
ACMDOPTS AMODE 24
ACMDOPTS $ALUDOPT PRODUCT='CHANGE MANAGER' ,
                DATE=&SYSDATC ,
                PC=ACM ,
                VRM=( 731 ,R) ,
                SSID=(DB2A ,R) ,
                DB2CAT=( 'DB2ACAT' ,R) ,
                EURO=(N ,R) ,
                SYSTYPE=S ,
                PIC=N ,
                LOG=N ,
                SL1=( ' ' 'BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD' ' ' ,R) ,
                SL2=( ' ' 'SYS3.DB2A.DSNEXIT' ' ' ,R) ,
                SL3=( ' ' 'SYS2.DB2V71M.DSNLOAD' ' ' ,R) ,
                SL4=' ' ,
                SL5=' ' ,
                ISPSLIB=( ' ' 'BMCADMN.V731.D71.SLIB' ' ' ,R) ,
                TSOSX=N ,
                JC1=' ' ' ' ' ' &&USERID.&&JOBCHAR JOB (&&ZACCTNUM) , ' ' &&PGMR ' ' ' ,
                JC2=' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' CLASS=A,MSGLEVEL=(1,1),NOTIFY=&&USERID' ,
                JC3=' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ,
                JC4=' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ,
                JC5=' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ,
                DBRM1= ,
                DBRM2= ,
                DBRM3= ,
                DBRMLIB=N ,
                WU=SYSDA ,
```



**Figure C-1 CHANGE MANAGER Default Options Module (Part 2 of 4)**

```

WPS=10 , *
WSS=2 , *
WDC= , *
WSC= , *
WMC= , *
SWU=SYSDA , *
SWPS=10 , *
SWSS=2 , *
WDSN=' ' '&&USERID..&&SSID..&&WORKID' ' ' , *
WLU=SYSDA , *
WLPS=15 , *
WLSS=5 , *
CDLDSN=' ' '&&PREFIX..&&SSID..CDL(CDL)' ' ' , *
CDLU=SYSDA , *
CDLPS=15 , *
CDLSS=5 , *
CDLRDSN=' ' '&&PREFIX..COMPARE.REPORT' ' ' , *
BRPTDSN=' ' '&&PREFIX..BASELINE.REPORT' ' ' , *
JDSN=' ' '&&USERID..ANALYSIS(&&WORKID)' ' ' , *
JDSNE=' ' '&&USERID..EXEC(&&WORKID)' ' ' , *
JDSNBG=' ' '&&USERID..JCLGEN(&&WORKID)' ' ' , *
JDSNC=' ' '&&PREFIX..COMPARE(CMPJCL)' ' ' , *
JDSNI=' ' '&&PREFIX..IMPORT(&&WORKID)' ' ' , *
JDSNB=' ' '&&PREFIX..BASELINE(&&WORKID)' ' ' , *
JDSNBR=' ' '&&PREFIX..BASELINE(BLRPTJCL)' ' ' , *
SDSN=SYSOUT , *
SDSNE=SYSOUT , *
CMPDIAG=SYSOUT , *
IMPDIAG=SYSOUT , *
BASDIAG=SYSOUT , *
BRPTDIAG=SYSOUT , *
JDSNCPL=' ' '&&PREFIX..TASKID(&&TASKID)' ' ' , *
CPLWDSN=' ' '&&PREFIX..&&SSID..&&TASKID' ' ' , *
CPLDIAG=SYSOUT , *
CATAUDIT=(N,R) , *
CATRECOV=(N,R) , *
SYSRPREF='&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD' , *
SYSRUNIT=SYSDA , *
SYSRPS=10 , *
SYSRSS=2 , *
SYSRMAX=0 , *
SYSRMAXU= , *
SYSCPREF='&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD..P&PART' , *
SYSCUNIT=SYSDA , *
SYSCPS=10 , *
SYSCSS=2 , *
SYSCMAX=0 , *
SYSCMAXU='&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD..P&PART' , *
BLRPPREF='&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD' , *
BLRPUNIT=SYSDA , *

```

**Figure C-1      CHANGE MANAGER Default Options Module (Part 3 of 4)**

```

BLRPPS=10 , *
BLRPSS=2 , *
RECVREF=' &&USERID..&&SSID..&&OBMOD ' , *
RECVUNIT=SYSDA , *
RECVPS=10 , *
RECVSS=2 , *
RECVMAX=0 , *
RECVMAXU= , *
ARCHREF=' &&PREFIX ' , *
ARCHUNIT=SYSDA , *
ARCHPS=10 , *
ARCHSS=2 , *
SECI=050 , *
SYNCPNT=10 , *
AMS=Y , *
ALLOC=N , *
STORCLAS=N , *
DATACLAS=N , *
MGMTCLAS=N , *
JCLCLEAN=N , *
AUTHSW=(N,R) , *
GLID= , *
DASDMAN=(N,R) , *
CCSID=(E,R) , *
IXTYPE=(2,R) , *
VVALPROP=(N,R) , *
BPOOLTS=BP0 , *
BPOOLIX=BP0 , *
LOCK=X , *
DISCARDS=(0000,R) , *
BMCSTATS=(N,R) , *
BMCCOPY=(N,R) , *
BMCCHECK=(N,R) , *
BMCLOAD=(N,R) , *
BLDCU=(N,R) , *
BLDBS=(N,R) , *
UTILCOPY=(N,R) , *
BMCUNLD=(N,R) , *
REORG=(N,R) , *
REBLD=(I,R) , *
UNLDCOLL=N , *
PARTCPY=N , *
MAXSYSUT=20 , *
BMCFASLT=Y , *
DYNCOPY=N , *
DYNUNLD=N , *
SZDEVT=(3390,R) , *
STATS=(S,R) , *
UPDSTATS=(C,R) , *
TABLEALL=(N,R) , *

```

**Figure C-1**      **CHANGE MANAGER Default Options Module (Part 4 of 4)**

```

        UNLDEMP=(Y,R),
        STOPCOMM=(N,R),
        TABLEACC=(Y,R),
        DUAL=(N,R),
        REGISTER=(1,R),
        COPYDD01=R,
        COPYDD02=N,
        RECVDD01=N,
        RECVDD02=N,
        HSMVOL=,
        LOCATION=,
        TAPE1=CART,
        TAPE2=TAPE,
        TAPE3=TAPE,
        ATTN=Y,
        ENVP=CM731FDE,
        FEP=CM731FDF,
        SPP=CM731FDS,
        ANP=CM731FDA,
        IMP=CM731FDI,
        CMP=CM731FDC,
        BASE=CM731FDB,
        RPTPL=CM731FDR,
        EPP=AEX731HM,
        EAP=AEX731HA,
        EIP=BMIINSTL,
        ACTDOPT=ACTDOPD1,
        ACVPLAN=ACV731DM,
        DEFERUIX='N',
        REORGALT=N,
        POFDS=('BMCADMN.D73.CNTL(AJX73POF)',R),
        STATHIST=Y,
        PARALLEL=Y
    END
//LKED.SYSIN DD *
    NAME ACMDOPD1(R)

```

**Note:** The ,R in the variable syntax indicates that the value specified will refresh the existing value of the variable in the user's ISPF profile data set, if the time stamp of the DOPTS is later than the time stamp in the user's ISPF profile member.

---

## Descriptions of Default Options

This section describes the DOPTs that are listed in Figure C-1. In some cases, the default value for the option is listed.

### **ACTDOPT=ACTDOPD1**

Specifies the name of the CATALOG MANAGER product's DOPTs module that the client for CHANGE MANAGER uses to interact with CATALOG MANAGER. This parameter is used only if CATALOG MANAGER is installed.

### **ACVPLAN=ACV<sub>vr</sub>mDM**

Specifies the main DB2 plan for the client for CHANGE MANAGER.

### **ALLOC=N**

Indicates the allocation units to use for data sets that are managed by System Managed Storage (SMS). If the AMS is set to **Y**, this option determines how CHANGE MANAGER allocates space for VCAT-defined DB2 objects that SMS manages. The DOPTs parameters are as follows:

<b>C</b>	cylinders
<b>K</b>	kilobytes
<b>M</b>	megabytes
<b>N</b>	SMS not in use (default)
<b>T</b>	tracks

### **AMS=Y**

Controls whether Analysis, by default, generates AMS statements (IDCAMS DELETE and DEFINE) in the worklist. You can use the **INCLUDE (AMS)** keyword to override this value. An entry of **N** generates a worklist -STOP command that enables you to complete the DELETE and DEFINE commands before the DB2 object CREATE commands that are located later in the worklist (**Y** or **N**).

### **ANP=CM<sub>vr</sub>mcDA**

Defines the Analysis plan name.

### **| ARCHPREF='&&PREFIX'**

Specifies the high-level qualifier or prefix for data sets that is used for a BMC Software utility archive.

### **ARCHPS=10**

Indicates the primary space allocation, in cylinders, for BMC Software utility archive data sets.

### **ARCHSS=2**

Indicates the secondary space allocation, in cylinders, for BMC Software utility archive data sets.

### **ARCHUNIT=SYSDA**

Specifies the default UNIT that is used for BMC Software utility archive data sets.

---

**ASUDOPT=ASUDOPD1**

Specifies the name of the DASD MANAGER PLUS product's DOPTs module that the client for CHANGE MANAGER uses to interact with DASD MANAGER PLUS. This parameter is used only if DASD MANAGER PLUS is installed.

**ATTN=Y**

Enables you to press the ATTENTION key to interrupt processing when **ATTN=Y**. You can use this option to stop processing, for example, when building a Mixed List in CHANGE MANAGER (Y or N).

**AUTHSW=N**

Controls the method of authorization-ID switching that Analysis uses.

If you specify **AUTHSW=Y**, -AUTH commands are used in the worklist to switch the authorization ID for subsequent SQL statements and reBIND commands. In this mode, you can add -SETS commands to the worklist for setting the authorization ID with SET CURRENT SQLID statements.

If you specify **AUTHSW=N**, -SETS commands are generated for switching the authorization ID, and -AUTH commands are not allowed.

If you specify **AUTHSW=B**, both -AUTH and -SETS commands are used. -AUTH commands are generated to set the original CREATEDBY values. -SETS commands are generated to set new OWNER values for all objects. The **B** option also causes authorization-ID switching before CREATE TABLE and CREATE INDEX statements, which is not done under either of the other options.

When the AUTHSW keyword is used in the ALUIN input stream, it is equivalent to **AUTHSW=Y** in the DOPTs module.

**Note:** Do not use the AUTHSW keyword in the following situations:

- If **AUTHSW=N** is in the DOPTs module.
- If you are using a global authorization ID (GLID).

If your site does not use DB2 secondary AUTHIDs, set **AUTHSW=Y**. Otherwise, set **AUTHSW=N**. If you require that the CREATEDBY field in the DB2 catalog remain unchanged after updates, set **AUTHSW=B**.

**Warning!** Setting **AUTHSW=B** is not recommended because of a potential security exposure. This exposure exists because the DB2 catalog does not accurately reflect the primary authorization ID of the creator of the objects. If you must set **AUTHSW=B**, use the sample security exit (ALUEUSX1) to avoid the security exposure.

**BASDIAG=SYSOUT**

Sets the default value for the Baseline diagnostic output data set name.

---

<b>BASE=CMvrmcDB</b>	Sets the Baseline plan name.								
<b>  BLRPPREF='&amp;&amp;PREFIX..&amp;&amp;OBNOD'</b>	Defines the high-level qualifier, or prefix, that is used for data sets containing data stored for a baseline recovery point.								
<b>BLRPPS=10</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the primary space allocation for baseline recovery point data sets.								
<b>BLRPSS=2</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the secondary space allocation for baseline recovery point data sets.								
<b>BLRPUNIT=SYSDA</b>	Defines the unit that is used for baseline recovery point data sets.								
<b>BMCHECK=N</b>	Specifies whether to use the BMC Software CHECK PLUS utility in place of the IBM CHECK DATA utility for checking referential constraint violations in DB2 table spaces (Y or N).								
<b>BMCCOPY=N</b>	Specifies whether to use the BMC Software COPY PLUS utility in place of the IBM COPY utility. The DOPTs parameters are defined as follows: <table> <tr> <td><b>Y</b></td><td>Use BMCCOPY.</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>N</b></td><td>Use IBMCOPY.</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>X</b></td><td>Do not include copy operations.</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>F</b></td><td>Do not include copy operations, but do start objects in copy pending status with ACCESS(FORCE).</td></tr> </table>	<b>Y</b>	Use BMCCOPY.	<b>N</b>	Use IBMCOPY.	<b>X</b>	Do not include copy operations.	<b>F</b>	Do not include copy operations, but do start objects in copy pending status with ACCESS(FORCE).
<b>Y</b>	Use BMCCOPY.								
<b>N</b>	Use IBMCOPY.								
<b>X</b>	Do not include copy operations.								
<b>F</b>	Do not include copy operations, but do start objects in copy pending status with ACCESS(FORCE).								
<b>  BMCFASTL=Y</b>	Indicates whether the FORMAT BMCLOAD option in the BMC Software UNLOAD PLUS utility and the FORMAT BMCUNLOAD option in the BMC Software LOADPLUS utility are used to unload data from one table and load it into another table that has a similar structure (Y or N).								
<b>BMCLOAD=N</b>	Indicates whether to use the BMC Software LOADPLUS utility for loads in place of the IBM LOAD utility (Y or N).								
<b>BMCUNLD=N</b>	Specifies whether to use the BMC Software UNLOAD PLUS utility in place of ALTER UNLOAD (Y or N).								
<b>BPOOLIX=BP0</b>	Indicates the buffer pool for user indexes. Valid values include BP0 through BP49. The value should match the value specified for the DB2 initialization parameter module, DSNZPARM, on the DB2 subsystem on which the option is used. <p><b>Note:</b> The Compare component uses the value of BPOOLIX on the local subsystem when a remote DB2 catalog or a baseline is used in a comparison.</p>								

---

<b>BPOOLTS=BP0</b>	<p>Indicates the buffer pool for user data. Valid values include</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BP0 through BP49</li> <li>• BP8K0 through BP8K9</li> <li>• BP16K0 through BP16K9</li> <li>• BP32K, BP32K1 through BP32K9</li> </ul> <p>The value should match the value specified for the DB2 initialization parameter module, DSNZPARM, on the DB2 subsystem on which the option is used.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The Compare component uses the value of BPOOLTS on the local subsystem when a remote DB2 catalog or a baseline is used in a comparison.</p>						
<b>BRPTDIAG=SYSOUT</b>	Specifies the default name for the Baseline Report diagnostic output data set.						
<b>BRPTDSN='''&amp;&amp;PREFIX..BASELINE.REPORT'''</b>	Specifies the default name for the Baseline Report data set name.						
<b>CATAUDIT=N</b>	Specifies the DDL audit logging indicator. If you have CATALOG MANAGER installed, an entry of <b>Y</b> causes Execution to log executed DDL statements in the CATALOG MANAGER DDL Audit Log ( <b>Y</b> or <b>N</b> ).						
<b>CATRECOV=N</b>	Specifies the Drop Recovery indicator. This parameter is useful only if you have CATALOG MANAGER installed. Type <b>Y</b> if you want the Execution component to invoke CATALOG MANAGER to log recovery information in the CATALOG MANAGER drop-recovery tables for the objects that are dropped when the Work ID is executed. See the <i>CATALOG MANAGER for DB2 User Guide</i> for information about drop recovery.						
<b>CCSID=E</b>	<p>Provides the default encoding scheme for databases that are created using CHANGE MANAGER.</p> <table> <tr> <td><b>A</b></td><td>ASCII</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>E</b></td><td>EBCDIC</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>U</b></td><td>UNICODE</td></tr> </table>	<b>A</b>	ASCII	<b>E</b>	EBCDIC	<b>U</b>	UNICODE
<b>A</b>	ASCII						
<b>E</b>	EBCDIC						
<b>U</b>	UNICODE						
<b>CDLDSN='''&amp;&amp;PREFIX..&amp;&amp;SSID..CDL(CDL)'''</b>	Defines the default data set name for generated Change Definition Language (CDL) statements.						
<b>CDLPS=15</b>	Defines, in tracks, the default value for the primary space allocation of the CDL data set.						
<b>CDLRDSN='''&amp;&amp;PREFIX..COMPARE.REPORT'''</b>	Defines the default data set name for the Compare Report data set.						

---

<b>CDLSS=5</b>	Defines, in tracks, the default value for the secondary space allocation of the CDL data set.						
<b>CDLU=SYSDA</b>	Defines the default unit for the CDL data set.						
<b>CMP=CMvrmcDC</b>	Defines the Compare plan name.						
<b>CMPDIAG=SYSOUT</b>	Defines the default value for the Compare diagnostic output data set.						
<b>COPYDD01=R, COPYDD02=N, RECVDD01=N, RECVDD02=N</b>	<p>Defines image copies for the BMC Software COPY PLUS, REORG PLUS, and LOADPLUS utilities.</p> <p>The DOPTs parameters are defined as follows:</p> <table> <tr> <td><b>N</b></td><td>no</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>C</b></td><td>copy</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>R</b></td><td>register and copy</td></tr> </table> <p>These DOPTs control the input keywords to Analysis as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Local-copy parameters (<i>parms</i>) for the COPYDDN keyword can be COPY01 and COPY02, separated by commas or blanks.</li> <li>Remote-copy parameters (<i>parms</i>) for the COPYDDN keyword can be RECV01 and RECV02, separated by commas or blanks.</li> </ul>	<b>N</b>	no	<b>C</b>	copy	<b>R</b>	register and copy
<b>N</b>	no						
<b>C</b>	copy						
<b>R</b>	register and copy						
<b>CPLDIAG=SYSOUT</b>	Specifies the default name for the BMC Software CM/PILOT <sup>®</sup> component's diagnostic output data set name.						
<b>CPLWDSN='''&amp;&amp;PREFIX..&amp;&amp;SSID..&amp;&amp;TASKID'''</b>	Specifies the default worklist data set name for a new TASKID used in the CM/PILOT component. The products dynamically allocate the data sets the first time that they are used. This data set name can be overridden on the Analysis Interface panel. This data set can be either a sequential file or a partitioned data set (PDS).						
<b>DASDMAN=Y</b>	Indicates whether version 5.1 or later of DASD MANAGER PLUS is installed (Y or N). CHANGE MANAGER selects DB2 catalog statistics for space estimation. When <b>DASDMAN=Y</b> , any statistics from the BMCSTATS tables are merged.						
<b>DATACLAS=N</b>	Indicates whether support for the DATACLAS parameter is required for VCAT-defined DB2 objects (Y or N).						
<b>DATE=&amp;SYSDATC</b>	Indicates a parameter that is used only if you have ASMA90 as your assembler.						



---

**DB2CAT or DB2CT=('DBDBCAT')**

This DOPT is no longer used. See the VCAT control table variable of the BMCDB2 CLIST.

**DBRM1, DBRM2, DBRM3**

Names the three default DBRM libraries.

**DBRMLIB=N**

Includes the LIBRARY parameter on the BIND statement for plans and packages (Y or N).

**Note:** A disadvantage to adding the LIBRARY parameter to the BIND PLAN command is that the order of the libraries on the BIND could be incorrect. If some DBRMs are present in multiple libraries, CHANGE MANAGER cannot guarantee that the concatenation will result in every DBRM coming from the correct library.

**DEFERUIX=N**

For DB2 version 6 and later, enables CHANGE MANAGER to create unique indexes with the DEFER YES parameter (Y or N).

**DISCARDS=nnnn**

Used by CHANGE MANAGER to specify the number of discard records to allow. The parameter *nnnn* specifies the number of discards in a range from 0 to 9999. DISCARDS=0 means that no maximum number of discards exists.

With DISCARDS=1, the product generates one **discard DD, //SYSDS001** for the entire run, and DISCARDS 1 is generated as a LOAD parameter. JCL that is generated minimally sizes data sets for SYSDS001 and SYSER001 DDs. If any records must be discarded, this action causes the load utility to terminate with a return code of 8.

If the DISCARDS option is set to any value other than 1, a different discard DD (*//SYSDnnnn*) is generated for each load, and DISCARDS *n* is generated as a LOAD parameter for each LOAD command (where *n* is the maximum number of discard records). This action causes the load to terminate if the discard maximum is reached. If fewer records are discarded, the discard file contains the records and execution proceeds to the next step in the worklist.

**DYNCOPY=N**

Indicates whether the BMC Software COPY PLUS, RECOVER PLUS, and IBM COPY utilities dynamically allocate SYSCOPY data sets (Y or N). This DOPT is valid for DB2 version 6.1 and later if COPY PLUS and RECOVER PLUS are used, and version 7.1 and later if IBM COPY is used.

**DYNUNLD=N**

For DB2 version 6.1 and later, indicates whether the BMC Software UNLOAD PLUS and LOADPLUS utilities dynamically allocate SYSREC data sets (Y or N).

**EAP=AEXvrmHA**

Defines the Execution Authorization plan name, which determines if a user is authorized to run Execution.

---

<b>EIP=BMIINSTL</b>	Defines the Installation plan name.				
<b>ENVP=CMvrmcDE</b>	Defines the Environment plan name, which is used to display CHANGE MANAGER environment information.				
<b>EPP=AEXvrmcHM</b>	Defines the Execution primary plan name.				
<b>EURO=N</b>	<p>Instructs CHANGE MANAGER to expect numbers in the European format (comma used for the decimal point) and to create output in European decimal format (Y or N).</p> <p>This parameter is particularly important when CHANGE MANAGER parses index LIMITKEY values that are separated by commas. If the EURO keyword is present, CHANGE MANAGER requires delimiting commas to be followed by blanks.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The Import, Specification, Baseline, and Compare components use the value for EURO from the DOPTs module but do not support use of the EURO keyword in the ALUIN parameter input data stream.</p>				
<b>FEP=CMvrmcDF</b>	Defines the Front End plan name.				
<b>GLID=id</b>	Defines a global authorization ID (GLID). This authorization ID is used instead of the authorization ID of the person who submits the Execution job. The worklist begins with a -GLID command that switches authorization to the GLID.				
<b>HSMVOL=vol</b>	Specifies the volume ID that indicates an archived data set if you are using a disk management system. If this volume ID is encountered, CHANGE MANAGER uses a template of default values for data set allocation.				
<b>IMP=CMvrmcDI</b>	Defines the Import plan name.				
<b>IMPDIAG=SYSOUT</b>	Defines the default name for the Import diagnostic output data set.				
<b>ISPSLIB</b>	Indicates the value that the CHANGE MANAGER client uses for generating JCL.				
<b>IXTYPE=2</b>	<p>Indicates the default index type that CHANGE MANAGER uses when no type is specified in a CREATE INDEX command.</p> <table> <tr> <td><b>1</b></td><td>Type 1 index</td></tr> <tr> <td><b>2</b></td><td>Type 2 index (DB2 version 6 and later)</td></tr> </table>	<b>1</b>	Type 1 index	<b>2</b>	Type 2 index (DB2 version 6 and later)
<b>1</b>	Type 1 index				
<b>2</b>	Type 2 index (DB2 version 6 and later)				

---

**JC1='//&&USERID.&&JOBCHAR JOB (ACCT),'&&PGMR','**

**JC2='// CLASS=A,MSGCLASS=X,MSGLEVEL=(1,1),'**

**JC3='// NOTIFY=&&USERID'**

**JC4='//\*'**

**JC5='//\*'**

Defines the jobcard that the Front End uses when generating JCL. Symbolic variables can be used and are described in the Symbolic Variable appendix of the respective products' documentation.

**JCLCLEAN=N**

Enables you to generate a job step that automatically deletes many of the permanent (also known as nontemporary) data sets that the Execution component creates. These data sets are created during worklist processing and have a disposition (NEW, CATLG, CATLG). The automatic delete step is performed only if the condition code that is returned from any previous job step is four or less (Y or N).

**JDSN='''&&PREFIX..ANALYSIS(&&WORKID)'''**

Defines the default data set name that is used for Analysis JCL. This data set can be either a sequential or a partitioned data set. Hardcoding a member name is not recommended for a partitioned data set. The products automatically use the Work ID as the member name.

**JDSNB='''&&PREFIX..BASELINE(&&WORKID)'''**

Defines the default data set name that is used for Baseline JCL. This data set can be either a sequential or a partitioned data set. Hardcoding a member name is not recommended for a partitioned data set. The product automatically uses the Work ID as the member name.

**JDSNBG='''&&PREFIX..JCLGEN(&&WORKID)'''**

For DB2 version 6 and later, defines the default data set name that is used for batch JCL Generation. This data set can be either a sequential or a partitioned data set. Hardcoding a member name is not recommended for a partitioned data set. The products automatically use the Work ID as the member name.

**JDSNC='''&&PREFIX..COMPARE(CMPJCL)'''**

Defines the default data set name that is used for Compare JCL. This data set can be either a sequential or partitioned data set.

**JDSNCPL='''&&PREFIX..TASKID(&&TASKID)'''**

Specifies the default data set name where the CM/PILOT component places the generated Execution JCL. This data set can be either a sequential or partitioned data set. Hardcoding a member name is not recommended for a partitioned data set. The CM/PILOT component automatically uses the task ID as the member name.

---

**JDSNE='''&&PREFIX..EXEC(&&WORKID)'''**

Defines the default data set name that is used for Execution JCL. This data set can be either a sequential or partitioned data set. Hardcoding a member name is not recommended for a partitioned data set. The product automatically uses the Work ID as the member name.

**JDSNI='''&&PREFIX..IMPORT(&&WORKID)'''**

Defines the default data set name that is used for Import JCL. This data set can be either a sequential or partitioned data set. Hardcoding a member name is not recommended for a partitioned data set. The product automatically uses the Work ID as the member name.

**JDSNBR='''&&PREFIX..BASELINE(BLRPTJCL)'''**

Specifies the default data set name where the product places the generated Baseline Report JCL. This data set can be either a sequential or partitioned data set.

**LOCATION**

This DOPT is no longer used except for Single Point Entry when the variable is set to **SPE\_METHOD**. **SPE\_METHOD** enables the product to display the remote SSID that the packages are accessing. In all cases, the product determines the SSID location from the current server register.

**LOCK=X**

Controls the SQL LOCK TABLE statements that the Execution component issues for ALTER UNLOAD statements. The LOCK parameter does not apply to the BMC Software UNLOAD PLUS product.

**S** Issue the SQL LOCK TABLE IN SHARE MODE statement.  
**X** Issue the SQL LOCK TABLE IN EXCLUSIVE MODE statement.  
**N** Do not issue SQL LOCK TABLE statements.

**LOG=N**

Specifies that records be logged during loads that use the IBM LOAD utility (Y or N).

**MAXSYSUT=20**

Specifies the maximum number of SYSUT temporary work data sets that the BMC Software LOADPLUS or REORG PLUS utilities can use to build nonclustering indexes for a table. The range of valid values is 1 to 9999.

**MGMTCLAS=N**

Indicates whether support for the MGMTCLAS parameter is required for VCAT-defined DB2 objects (Y or N).

**PARALLEL=Y**

For the Database Administration solution, instructs Analysis to create commands that Execution can use to execute a worklist in parallel.

**PARTCPY=N**

Specifies whether to use the BMC Software LOADPLUS, COPY PLUS, RECOVER PLUS, or REORG PLUS utility to create a partition-level image copy of a partitioned table space or index (Y or N).

**PC=ACM**

Defines the product code to the CHANGE MANAGER components.

---

**PIC=N** (Pre-Image Copy) Indicates whether an image copy should be taken of each table space before a database is dropped, a table is dropped, or the table space is dropped or reorganized (Y or N).

**POFDS='&&HLQ..CNTL(&POFNAME)'**  
Specifies the name of the initial JCL Generation Product Options File (POF).

**PRODUCT='PRODUCT NAME'**  
Defines the product name. For example, **PRODUCT = 'CHANGE MANAGER'**.

**REBLD=I** For DB2 version 6 and later, specifies whether to use the rebuild utility from IBM or BMC Software or no rebuild utility. If **REBLD=N**, eligible indexes are not created with DEFER YES. If a nonunique index is dropped or created in a worklist, and its parent table is not dropped or created in the worklist, the index is created with DEFER YES if **REBLD=I** or **REBLD=B**.

The DOPTs parameters are defined as follows:

<b>B</b>	BMCRECOVER
<b>I</b>	IBMREBUILD
<b>N</b>	NO REBUILD

**RECOV=I** For DB2 version 5, specifies whether to use the recover utility from IBM or BMC Software or no recover utility. If **RECOV=N**, eligible indexes are not created with DEFER YES. If a non-unique index is dropped or created in a worklist, and its parent table is not dropped or created in the worklist, then the index is created with DEFER YES if **RECOV=I** or **RECOV=B**.

The DOPTs parameters are defined as follows:

<b>B</b>	BMCRECOVER
<b>I</b>	IBMRECOVER
<b>N</b>	NO RECOVER

**RECVMAX** Indicates the offsite-copy threshold, in cylinders, above which the utility uses the secondary unit for allocation. If the size of a data set exceeds the threshold, the utility uses the secondary unit. To avoid using the secondary unit, specify 0.

**RECVMAXU** Indicates the offsite-copy secondary, or alternate, unit that is used for any overflow.

**RECVREF='&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD..P&PART'**  
Defines the default prefix (high-level qualifier) that is used for the RECV<sub>nnn</sub> recovery data sets. The &&OBNOD symbolic variable resolves to database.&SPNAME. &SPNAME resolves to a table space name or to an index space name, depending on the type of object that is being copied.

---

<b>RECVPS=10</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the default primary space allocation for RECV $nnn$ recovery data sets.
<b>RECVSS=2</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the default secondary space allocation for RECV $nnn$ recovery data sets.
<b>RECVUNIT=SYSDA</b>	Defines the default unit that is used for creating RECV $nnn$ recovery data sets.
<b>REORG=N</b>	<p>Indicates whether to generate reorganizations in worklists for operations which require reorganizing table spaces and indexes. Changes made to attributes such as PRIQTY, SECQTY, PCTFREE, FREEPAGE, and VOLUME (for VCAT-defined partitions) can cause placement of reorganization commands in the worklist. If reorganizations are to be generated, this option also indicates whether to use the BMC Software REORG PLUS product in place of the IBM REORG utility.</p> <p><b>B</b>      Generate BMC reorganizations in worklists.  <b>I</b>      Generate IBM reorganizations in worklists.  <b>N</b>      Do not generate reorganizations in worklists (default).</p>
<b>REORGALT=N</b>	Indicates whether a table space should be reorganized after a column is added to a table by using the ALTER TABLE statement ( <b>Y</b> or <b>N</b> ).
<b>RPTPL=CMvrmcDR</b>	Specifies the name of the CHANGE MANAGER plan that is used to generate reports.
<b>SDSN=SYSOUT</b>	Specifies the default data set for diagnostic messages for Analysis. This option can be a sequential file, the keyword SYSOUT, or TERM (terminal). If you use SYSOUT, the diagnostic messages are written to the JES SPOOL. If you use TERM, the diagnostic messages are written to your terminal.
<b>SDSNE=SYSOUT</b>	Specifies the default data set for diagnostic messages for Execution. This option can be a sequential file or the keyword SYSOUT. If you use SYSOUT, the diagnostic messages are written to the JES SPOOL.
<b>SEQI=050</b>	Defines the sequence-number increment for worklists and CDL files.
<b>SL1=("<i>HLQ</i>.LOAD")</b>	Specifies the STEPLIB library that contains the BMC Software load modules.
<b>SL2=("<i>SYS1</i>.DSNEXIT")</b>	Specifies the optional first STEPLIB library for DB2 load modules. This library is concatenated to the library that keyword SL1 specifies.

---

**SL3=("")SYS1.DSNLOAD")**

Specifies the optional second STEPLIB library for DB2 load modules. This library is concatenated to the library that keywords SL1 and SL2 specify.

**SL4=("")SYS1.OTHER.LOADLIB1")**

Specifies optional additional STEPLIB libraries.

**SL5=("")SYS1.OTHER.LOADLIB2")**

Specifies optional additional STEPLIB libraries.

**SPP=CMvrmcDS**

Defines the Specification plan name.

**SSID=DB2**

This DOPT is no longer used. See the product's SSID control table column of the BMCDB2 CLIST.

**STATHIST=Y**

For DB2 version 7 and later, specifies that the IBM RUNSTATS utility will update the DB2 catalog history tables with the current statistics that are being collected (Y or N).

**STATS=S**

For DB2 version 6.1 and later, indicates what type of statistics are generated. The DOPTs parameters are defined as follows:

- S** Stand-alone—The worklist generates either a -BMCS or an -RNST command in the worklist.
- U** Utility—The worklist combines statistics with a utility (Reorg, Copy, Load) whenever possible.
- X** No statistics are generated.

**STOPCOMM=N**

For DB2 version 6.1 and later, indicates whether an AT (COMMIT) command is generated in a worklist when a STOP command is created.

**STORCLAS=N**

Indicates whether support for the STORCLAS parameter is required for VCAT-defined DB2 objects (Y or N).

**SWPS=10**

Defines, in cylinders, the default primary space allocation for sort work.

**SWSS=2**

Defines, in cylinders, the default secondary space allocation for sort work.

**SWU=SYSDA**

Describes the sort work unit.

---

**SYNCPNT = *parm*** Creates additional -SYNC commands in a worklist, based on the number of -SQL commands since the last -SYNC command. The variable *parm* specifies the maximum number of -SQL commands that can be in the worklist before a -SYNC command is created. Valid values for *parm* are from 0 to 99. The default value is 10.

When the value is reached, the Analysis component places an additional -SYNC command before the next -SQL command. Any -SYNC command in the worklist resets the count of -SQL commands to zero. -SYNC commands that this keyword generates are in addition to the -SYNC commands that Analysis automatically generates.

**SYSCMAX** Indicates the SYSCOPY threshold, in cylinders, above which the utility uses the secondary unit for allocation. If the size of a data set exceeds the threshold, the utility uses the secondary unit. To avoid using the secondary unit, specify 0.

**SYSCMAXU** Indicates the SYSCOPY secondary, or alternate, unit that is used for any overflow.

**| SYSCPREF='&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD..P&PART'**

Defines the default SYSCOPY data set prefix. The &&OBNOD symbolic variable resolves to database.&SPNAME. &SPNAME resolves to a table space name or to an index space name, depending on the type of object that is being copied.

**SYSCPS=10** Defines, in cylinders, the default SYSCOPY primary space allocation.

**SYSCSS=2** Defines, in cylinders, the default SYSCOPY secondary space allocation.

**SYSCUNIT=SYSDA** Defines the default SYSCOPY unit.

**SYSRMAX** Indicates the SYSREC threshold, in cylinders, above which the utility uses the secondary unit for allocation. If the size of a data set exceeds the threshold, the utility uses the secondary unit. To avoid using the secondary unit, specify 0.

**SYSRMAXU** Indicates the SYSREC secondary, or alternate, unit that is used for any overflow.

**| SYSRPREF='&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD'**

Defines the default SYSREC data set prefix.

**SYSRPS=10** Defines, in cylinders, the default SYSREC primary space allocation.

**SYSRSS=2** Defines, in cylinders, the default SYSREC secondary space allocation.

**SYSRUNIT=SYSDA** Defines the default SYSREC unit.



---

<b>SYSTYPE=S</b>	Defines the installation's character set.
	<b>M</b> mixed <b>S</b> single-byte only
<b>SZDEVT=3380</b>	Specifies the device type for data set sizing for JCL Generation. Valid values are 3380 and 3390. The default is 3380.
<b>TABLEACC=Y</b>	For DB2 version 6.1 and later, indicates whether all tables remain accessible during execution (Y or N).
<b>TABLEALL=N</b>	For DB2 version 6.1 and later, specifies the STATS utility to gather information for all columns of tables.
	<b>N</b> Do not include the TABLE(ALL) parameter on stand-alone stats runs.  <b>Y</b> Include the TABLE(ALL) parameter on stand-alone stats runs.
<b>TAPE1=CART, TAPE2=TAPE, TAPE3=TAPE</b>	Defines the valid installation tape unit names for your site.
<b>TIMEPARM</b>	Indicates the TIME limit in minutes for each step in a batch job stream.
<b>TSOSX=N</b>	Specifies whether your site uses the TSO Submit exit to supply the job statements at submit time (Y or N).
<b>UNLDCOLL=N</b>	Indicates the explicit column list that is required on all BMC Software UNLOAD PLUS unloads (Y or N).
<b>UNLDEMT=Y</b>	For DB2 version 6.1 and later, specifies whether the tables that RUNSTATS indicates as empty are unloaded.
<b>UPDSTATS=C</b>	For DB2 version 6.1 and later, specifies which statistics are updated. The DOPTs parameters are defined as follows:
	<b>A</b> All—The DASD tables and the DB2 Catalog tables are updated. BMCSTATS is selected.  <b>B</b> BMC DASD tables—Only the DASD tables are updated. BMCSTATS is selected.  <b>C</b> DB2 Catalog—Only the DB2 Catalog tables are updated. RUNSTATS is selected.

---

<b>UTILCOPY=N</b>	Determines whether other utilities or a copy utility creates an image copy during loads.
<b>Y</b>	Image copies are created by utilities other than the copy utilities whenever possible. If the utilities cannot create a copy, a separate copy step is generated.
<b>N</b>	A separate copy step generates all copies that the specific copy utility takes (either the IBM COPY utility or the BMC Software COPY PLUS utility).
<b>VVALPROP=N</b>	Specifies whether CHANGE MANAGER supports extended view text propagation (Y or N).
<b>VRM=vrmmmd</b>	Indicates the version, release level, maintenance level, and DB2 exploited version (where E indicates version 6.1 and F indicates version 7.1 or later).
<b>WDC</b>	Indicates the Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem (DFSMS or SMS) data class name, used at data set allocation time, to define the allocation attributes of the data set. A data class name is not required, even for SMS data sets. WDC appears as "DATACLAS= " in the JCL for workfiles.
<b>WDSN='''&amp;&amp;PREFIX..&amp;&amp;SSID..&amp;&amp;WORKID'''</b>	Defines the default data set name for a worklist that Analysis generates.
<b>WLPS=15</b>	Defines, in tracks, the default primary space allocation for the worklist.
<b>WLSS=5</b>	Defines, in tracks, the default secondary space allocation for the worklist.
<b>WLU=SYSDA</b>	Defines the default worklist unit.
<b>WMC</b>	Specifies the SMS management class name, used at data set allocation time, to define the migration, retention, and backup requirements of the data set. WMC appears as "MGMTCLAS= " in the JCL for workfiles.
<b>WPS=10</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the default primary space allocation for the work data set.
<b>WSC</b>	Specifies the SMS storage class name, used at data set allocation time, to define the processing requirements of the data set. WSC appears as "STORCLAS= " in the JCL for nontape workfiles.
<b>WSS=2</b>	Defines, in cylinders, the default secondary space allocation for the work data set.
<b>WU=SYSDA</b>	Defines the default work data set unit.

# Appendix D    **DASD MANAGER PLUS** **Default Options**

This appendix presents the following topics:

Default Options . . . . .	D-2
Descriptions of Default Options . . . . .	D-4

---

## Default Options

This section provides an example of the default options (DOPTs) module for the DASD MANAGER PLUS product (Figure D-1). The DOPTs module is created by the installation system and resides in *\$xnmDOPT*. The DOPTs module also resides in *HLQ.CNTL* with the same member name as the DOPTs.

**Figure D-1 DASD MANAGER PLUS Default Options Module (Part 1 of 2)**

---

```
*****
*
* FUNCTION      : DASD DEFAULT OPTIONS
* COPYRIGHT     : COPYRIGHT BMC SOFTWARE INC., 2003
* LEVEL        : RELEASE 6.2 MAY 2003
* FUNCTIONS     : DEFINE THE DEFAULT PROFILE VARIABLES
*
*****
ASUDOPTS $ALUDOPT PRODUCT='DASD MANAGER',
          SSID=(DEAE,R),
          DB2CAT=('DEAECAT',R),
          SYSTYPE=S,
          SL1=('SYS2.DB2V71M.DSNLOAD',R),
          SL2=('SYS3.DN2A.DSNEXIT',R),
          SL3=(' ',R),
          SL4=(' ',R),
          SL5=(' ',R),
          JC1='//ASU&&JOBCHAR JOB (5213),''&&PGMR'',',
          JC2='// CLASS=A,MSGCLASS=X,MSGLEVEL=(1,1),',
          JC3='// NOTIFY=&&USERID',
          JC4='//*',
          JC5='//*',
          WDSN='''&&PREFIX..&&SSID..&&WKID'''',
          WU=SYSDA,
          WPS=10,
          WSS=2,
          JDSNE='''&&PREFIX..EXEC(&&WKID)'''',
          SWU=SYSDA,
          SWPS=10,
          SWSS=2,
          SYSRPREF='&&PREFIX..&&WKID..&&OBNOD..U1',
          SYSRUNIT=DOPRE,
          SYSRPS=10,
          SYSRSS=2,
          SYSCPREF='&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD..P&&PART',
          SYSCUNIT=DOPCPY,
          SYSCPS=10,
          SYSCSS=2,
          RECV PREF='&&PREFIX..&&OBNOD..P&&PART',
```

---

**Figure D-1 DASD MANAGER PLUS Default Options Module (Part 2 of 2)**

```

      RECVUNIT=DOPRCV ,
      RECVPS=10 ,
      RECVSS=2 ,
      TAPE1=CART ,
      TAPE2=TAPE ,
      TAPE3=TAPE ,
      SZDEVT=( 3380 ,R) ,
      DPNAM= ,
      CATAUDIT=( N ,R) ,
      CATRECOV=( N ,R) ,
      AUTHSW=( N ,R) ,
      STATAUTH=( Y ,R) ,
      CPLAN=ASU622DC ,
      JPLAN=ASU622DJ ,
      SPLAN=ASU622DS ,
      XPLAN=ASU622DX ,
      ZPLAN=ASU622DZ ,
      RPLAN=ASU622DR ,
      IPLAN=ASU622DI ,
      EPP=ASU622XM ,
      EAP=ASU622XA ,
      EIP=TISINSTL ,
      DLHQ= ' BMCOAD.V11S2 ' ,
      STORCLAS=( Y ,R) ,
      DATACLAS=( Y ,R) ,
      MGMTCLAS=( Y ,R) ,
      SYSCMAX=( 0 ,R) ,
      SYSCMAXU=( CART ,R) ,
      SYSRMAX=( 0 ,R) ,
      SYSRMAXU=( CART ,R) ,
      RECVMAX=( 0 ,R) ,
      RECVMAXU=( CART ,R) ,
      WDC=( ' ' ,R) ,
      WSC=( SMSTEST ,R) ,
      WMC=( STANDARD ,R) ,
      POFDS=( ' ' ' BMCADM.D71.CNTL( PFDEAE71 ) ' ' ' ,R) ,
      JCLCLEAN=( N ,R) ,
      OPNDB2ID=Y ,
      UPDNUCAT=N ,
      ISPTLIB= ' BMCADM.D71.TLIB '
END
//LKED.SYSIN DD *
NAME DS622EAE(R)
```

---

**Note:** The ,R in the variable syntax indicates that the value specified will refresh the existing value of the variable in the user's ISPF profile data set, if the timestamp of the DOPTS is later than the time stamp in the user's ISPF profile member.

---

## Descriptions of Default Options

This section describes the DOPTs that are listed in Figure D-1. In some cases, the default value for the option is listed.

### **AUTHSW=N**

Controls the method of authorization-ID switching that Analysis uses. If you specify **AUTHSW=Y**, -AUTH commands are used in the worklist to switch the authorization ID for subsequent SQL statements and reBIND commands. In this mode, you can add -SETS commands to the worklist for setting the authorization ID with SET CURRENT SQLID statements. If you specify **AUTHSW=N**, -SETS commands are generated for switching the authorization ID, and -AUTH commands are not allowed. If you specify **AUTHSW=B**, both -AUTH and -SETS commands are used. -AUTH commands are generated to set the original CREATEDBY values. -SETS commands are generated to set new OWNER values for all objects. The **B** option also causes authorization-ID switching before CREATE TABLE and CREATE INDEX statements, which is not done under either of the other options. When the AUTHSW keyword is used in the ALUIN input stream, it is equivalent to **AUTHSW=Y** in the DOPTs module.

**Note:** Do not use the AUTHSW keyword in the following situations:

- If **AUTHSW=N** is in the DOPTs module.
- If you are using a global authorization ID (GLID).

If your site does not use DB2 secondary AUTHIDs, set **AUTHSW=Y**. Otherwise, set **AUTHSW=N**. If you require that the CREATEDBY field in the DB2 catalog remain unchanged after updates, set **AUTHSW=B**.

**Warning!** Setting **AUTHSW=B** is not recommended because of a potential security exposure. This exposure exists because the DB2 catalog does not accurately reflect the primary authorization ID of the creator of the objects. If you must set **AUTHSW=B**, use the sample security exit (ALUEUSX1) to avoid the security exposure.

### **CATAUDIT=N**

The DDL audit logging indicator. If you have CATALOG MANAGER installed, an entry of **Y** causes Execution to log executed DDL statements in the CATALOG MANAGER DDL Audit Log (**Y** or **N**).

---

<b>CATRECOV=N</b>	The Drop Recovery indicator. This parameter is useful only if you have CATALOG MANAGER installed. Type <b>Y</b> if you want execution to save information in the CATALOG MANAGER drop recovery log about objects being dropped. DASD MANAGER PLUS logs the information required for recovering any object that you drop. You must then use CATALOG MANAGER to recover the objects. Refer to the <i>CATALOG MANAGER for DB2 User Guide</i> for information about Drop Recovery.
<b>CPLAN=ASUvrmDC</b>	The Administrative products do not use this plan.
<b>DATACLAS=N</b>	Indicates whether support for the DATACLAS parameter is required for VCAT-defined DB2 objects ( <b>Y</b> or <b>N</b> ).
<b>DATE=&amp;SYSDATC</b>	A date parameter that is used only if you have ASMA90 as your assembler.
<b>DB2CAT='DBDBCAT'</b>	The VSAM CATALOG alias that contains the data sets of the DB2 catalog.
<b>DLHQ='HLQ'</b>	The Administrative products high-level qualifier that is used to derive Administrative products ISPF data set names that are dynamically allocated during batch TSO simulation in Administrative products. For example, if <b>DLHQ='BMC.ADMIN'</b> , then <b>ISPTLIB='BMC.ADMIN.TLIB'</b> .
<b>DPLAN=ASUvrmDD</b>	The DATA PACKER for DB2 plan. If installed, CATALOG MANAGER can use the AMEND and TRIAL command features.
<b>DPNAM=DPDELOAD</b>	The load module name for the BMC Software DATA PACKER product.
<b>EAP=AEXvrmDA</b>	The Execution Authorization plan name, which determines if a user is authorized to run Execution.
<b>EIP=DCIINSTL</b>	The Installation plan.
<b>EPP=AEXvrmDM</b>	The Execution primary plan name.
<b>GDGDEF=N</b>	Indicates whether JCLGEN creates the base of the Generation Data Group (GDG) data set ( <b>Y</b> or <b>N</b> ).
<b>GDGLIM=0</b>	Specifies the number of GDG data sets that are allowed. GDGLIM contains the value of the LIMIT parm. Valid values are from 0 through 255. If GDGLIM is set to 0, then <b>GDGDEF=N</b> .
<b>IPLAN=ASUvrmDI</b>	The name of the Administrative products plan that is used to control DB2 installation updates.
<b>ISPTLIB='HLQ.TLIB'</b>	The fully qualified data set name for the ISPF TLIB. This value is used during BMCTRIG.

---

<b>JCLCLEAN=N</b>	Enables you to generate a job step that automatically deletes many of the permanent (also known as non-temporary) data sets that the Execution component creates. These data sets are created during worklist processing and have a disposition (NEW, CATLG, CATLG). The automatic delete step is performed only if the condition code that any previous job step returns is four or less (Y or N).
<b>JC1='//&amp;&amp;USERID.&amp;&amp;JOBCHAR JOB (ACCT),"&amp;&amp;PGMR",'</b>	
<b>JC2='// CLASS=A,MSGCLASS=X, MSGLEVEL=(1,1),'</b>	
<b>JC3= '// NOTIFY=&amp;&amp;USERID'</b>	
<b>JC4='//*'</b>	
<b>JC5='//*'</b>	The default JOB statement that Administrative products uses when generating JCL. Symbolic variables can be used and are covered in the <i>DASD MANAGER PLUS for DB2 Reference Manual</i> .
<b>  JDSNE='''&amp;&amp;PREFIX..EXEC(&amp;&amp;WKID)'''</b>	The default data set name that is used for Execution JCL. This data set can be either a sequential or partitioned data set. A member name is not allowed for a partitioned data set. Administrative products automatically uses the Work ID as the member name.
<b>JPLAN=ASUvrmdJ</b>	The name of the Administrative products plan that is used for the BMCTRIG utility job generation.
<b>LOCATION</b>	The local subsystem location. If you are using Single Point Entry, the parameter is set to <b>SPE_METHOD</b> .
<b>MGMTCLAS=N</b>	Indicates whether support for the MGMTCLAS parameter is required for VCAT-defined DB2 objects (Y or N).
<b>OPNDB2ID=Y</b>	The DB2 authorization ID to update BMCSTATS tables. This default option allows users with STATS authority to collect stats even if their user IDs do not have RACF authority to read the data set (Y or N).
<b>POFDS='&amp;&amp;HLQ..CNTL(&amp;POFNAME)'</b>	Specifies the name of the JCL Generation Product Options File (POF).
<b>PRODUCT='PRODUCT NAME'</b>	The product name. For example, <b>PRODUCT='DASD MANAGER'</b> .
<b>RECVMAX</b>	The offsite copy threshold, in cylinders, above which the utility will use the secondary unit for allocation. If the size of a data set exceeds the threshold, the utility uses the secondary unit. To avoid using the secondary unit, specify 0.



---

<b>RECVMAXU</b>	The offsite copy secondary, or alternate, unit that is used for any overflow.
<b>RECVPREFIX='&amp;&amp;PREFIX..&amp;&amp;OBNOD..P&amp;&amp;PART'</b>	The default prefix (high-level qualifier) that is used for the RECV $nnn$ recovery data sets. The &&OBNOD symbolic variable resolves to database.&SPNAME. &SPNAME resolves to a table space name or to an index space name, depending on the type of object that is being copied.
<b>RECVPS=10</b>	The default primary space allocation in cylinders for RECV $nnn$ recovery data sets.
<b>RECVSS=2</b>	The default secondary space allocation in cylinders for RECV $nnn$ recovery data sets.
<b>RECVUNIT=SYSDA</b>	The default unit that is used for creating RECV $nnn$ recovery data sets.
<b>RPLAN=ASU<math>vrm</math>DR</b>	The name of the Administrative products plan that is used for displaying online reports.
<b>SL1</b>	The STEPLIB library that contains the BMC Software load modules. You can place Administrative products load modules in the same library as DB2. Keywords SL1, SL2, and SL3 indicate from what libraries Administrative products should load DB2 load modules.
<b>SL2=(""SYS1.DSNEXIT"")</b>	The optional first STEPLIB library for DB2 load modules. This library is concatenated to the library that keyword SL1 specifies.
<b>SL3=(""SYS1.DSNLOAD"")</b>	The optional second STEPLIB library for DB2 load modules. This library is concatenated to the library that keywords SL1 and SL2 specify.
<b>SL4=(""SYS1.OTHER.LOADLIB1"")</b>	Optional additional STEPLIB libraries.
<b>SL5=(""SYS1.OTHER.LOADLIB2"")</b>	Optional additional STEPLIB libraries.
<b>SPLAN=ASU<math>vrm</math>DS</b>	The name of the Administrative products plan that is used for statistics collection.
<b>SSID=DB2</b>	The DB2 subsystem ID. The SSID must match the -SSID command in the worklist. This parameter is required.
<b>STATAUTH=Y</b>	The statistics authorization indicator. If the indicator is set to Y (the default), Administrative products checks users' authorization to run BMCSTATS and requires the same authorization as for RUNSTATS (Y or N).

---

<b>STORCLAS=N</b>	Indicates whether support for the STORCLAS parameter is required for VCAT-defined DB2 objects (Y or N).
<b>SWPS=10</b>	The primary space allocation in cylinders for sort work data sets.
<b>SWSS=2</b>	The secondary space allocation in cylinders for sort work data sets.
<b>SWU=SYSDA</b>	The sort work unit.
<b>SYSCMAX</b>	The SYSCOPY threshold, in cylinders, above which the utility will use the secondary unit for allocation. If the size of a data set exceeds the threshold, the utility uses the secondary unit. To avoid using the secondary unit, specify 0. The SYSCMAX parameter is used to generate SYSCOPY DD statements; it is not used when COPY PLUS Dynamic Allocation is used.
<b>SYSCMAXU</b>	The SYSCOPY secondary, or alternate, unit that is used for any overflow.
<b>  SYSCPREF='&amp;&amp;PREFIX..&amp;&amp;OBNOd..P&amp;&amp;PART'</b>	The prefix that is used with the last qualifier of SYSCOnnn data sets. The &&OBNOd symbolic variable resolves to database.&SPNAME. &SPNAME resolves to a table space name or to an index space name, depending on the type of object that is being copied.
<b>SYSCPS=10</b>	The primary space allocation in cylinders for SYSCOnnn data sets.
<b>SYSCSS=2</b>	The secondary space allocation in cylinders for SYSRConnn data sets.
<b>SYSCUNIT=SYSDA</b>	The default UNIT for creating SYSCOnnn data sets.
<b>SYSRMAX</b>	The SYSREC threshold, in cylinders, above which the utility will use the secondary unit for allocation. If the size of a data set exceeds the threshold, the utility uses the secondary unit. To avoid using the secondary unit, specify 0.
<b>SYSRMAXU</b>	The SYSREC secondary, or alternate, unit that is used for any overflow.
<b>  SYSRPREF='&amp;&amp;PREFIX..&amp;&amp;WKID..&amp;&amp;OBNOd..U1'</b>	The prefix that is used with the last qualifier of SYSREnnn data sets.
<b>SYSRPS=10</b>	The primary space allocation in cylinders for SYSREnnn data sets.
<b>SYSRSS=2</b>	The secondary space allocation in cylinders for SYSREnnn data sets.
<b>SYSRUNIT=SYSDA</b>	The default UNIT for creating SYSREnnn data sets.

---

<b>SYSTYPE=S</b>	Indicates if DB2 Subsystem character strings can contain a mixture of SBCS and DBCS data:  <div> <div>M</div> <div>mixed</div> <div>S</div> <div>single-byte only</div> </div>
<b>SZDEVT=3380</b>	The device type for data set sizing for JCLGEN. Valid values are 3380 and 3390.
<b>TAPE1=CART, TAPE2=TAPE, TAPE3=TAPE</b>	The valid installation tape unit names for your site.
<b>TIMEPARM</b>	The TIME limit in minutes for each step in a batch job stream.
<b>UPDNUCAT</b>	Indicates whether to update nonupdatable DB2 catalog statistics columns (Y or N).
<b>WDC</b>	The Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem (DFSMS or SMS) data class name, used at data set allocation time, to define the allocation attributes of the data set. A data class name is not required, even for SMS data sets. WDC will appear as "DATACLAS= " in the JCL for workfiles.
<b>WDSN='''&amp;&amp;PREFIX..&amp;&amp;SSID..&amp;&amp;WKID'''</b>	The default worklist data set name for a new Work ID. This data set can be either a sequential file or a partitioned data set (PDS).  <div> <div><b>Note:</b></div> <div>In many installations, allocation of data sets is controlled by user-written or third-party routines. If allocation fails, you should use alternate means, such as ISPF, to perform the allocations.</div> </div>
<b>WMC</b>	The SMS management class name, used at data set allocation time, to define the migration, retention, and backup requirements of the data set. WMC will appear as "MGMTCLAS= " in the JCL for workfiles.
<b>WPS=10</b>	The default work primary space allocation in cylinders for work data sets that include Analysis and Execution diagnostics.
<b>WSC</b>	The SMS storage class name, used at data set allocation time, to define processing requirements of the data set. WSC will appear as "STORCLAS= " in the JCL for non-tape work files.
<b>WSS=2</b>	The default work secondary space allocation in cylinders for work data sets that include Analysis and Execution diagnostics.
<b>WU=SYSDA</b>	The default work unit. Work data sets include Analysis and Execution diagnostics data sets.

---

<b>XPLAN=ASUvrmdX</b>	The name of the DASD MANAGER PLUS plan that is used for cross reference.
<b>ZPLAN=ASUvrmdZ</b>	The name of the DASD MANAGER PLUS plan that is used for displaying Administrative products statistics.

# Appendix E    JCL Generation Product Options

This appendix presents the following topics:

Overview.....	E-2
Product Options File.....	E-4
Descriptions of Keywords.....	E-11

---

# Overview

JCL Generation is a component of the Administrative products that constructs a JCL file for running processes in batch mode. When you choose to build JCL, JCL Generation is passed to the worklist that contains the control statements. The products resolve all data set names that are entered with symbolic variables on the interface panels. JCL Generation resolves all data sets that are passed from the option panels and the unload data sets that are used by the Execution component. The generated JCL includes data definition statements (ddnames) for all data sets that are needed by Execution, as well as the EXEC statement for the program and any necessary control parameters.

In the ISPF interface for the Administrative products (DB2 version 6 and later), you can specify many options for generating the JCL for individual data sets. Many of these options were formerly available only through modifications to the skeleton libraries (SLIBs). Over 300 parameters are available from the options panels. These parameters are initialized from an extension to the DOPTS module.

A parameter in the DOPTS module, POFDS, specifies an 80-character sequential file. This file, the product options file (POF), contains parameters and values for the JCL Generation options. The POF is built during the installation of the products. The file is located in the *HLQ.CNTL* data set. The POF does not require assembly and linkage, and does not need to reside in an APF-authorized data set; it is a flat file.

When you install the products, only one POF is created. This POF, referred to as the initial POF, is initialized and populated with the default ISPF variables and values from the installation panels. This POF is shared among several products if those products are installed at the same time.

**Note:** The POF is generated in the JCL only if you invoke the Install System JCL Generation File Information panel or the Install System JCL Generation File Review panel. If you regenerate the JCL to a new partitioned data set for a reason other than to edit the POF, then you must invoke the Install System JCL Generation File Review panel to create a POF in the new JCL data set.

In addition, the installation system uses the same application ID (or profile) for the products in the BMCDB2 CLIST. This single application ID enables the JCL Generation options to be shared among the Administrative products. Thus, when you specify an option for generating JCL in one product, your selection applies to all the products. Although BMC Software recommends that you use a single application ID, you can select to use individual product application IDs on the BMCDB2PR panel.

---

JCL Generation also handles user POFs, which are POFs that can be written from the ISPF variables that are set in the Front End or that can be edited. You can use a user POF to reset all the options that will be used in the current session to create JCL. You can also use the user POFs to set options for different sets of applications, particularly if the applications have different naming standards.

JCL Generation uses the variables in the ISPF profile when it generates JCL. When you start the products, JCL Generation determines whether to reset the variables in the ISPF profile based on the value that is specified by the POFDATE parameter in the POF:

- The first time that the product is invoked, all the values that are in the ISPF profile are set to the values that are in the initial POF. If a POF is not specified, default values are assigned to the variables in the profile.
- If the POFDATE parameter in the initial POF is greater than the value of the POF date that is stored in the ISPF profile, the values in the POF that are marked with refresh ,(R) are used to reset the ISPF variables.

---

# Product Options File

Figure E-1 illustrates a product options file.

**Figure E-1      Product Options File (Part 1 of 7)**

---

```
* -----
* FORMAT:
*   KEYWORD=PARM   COLUMNS 1-80.
*   PARM SYNTAX:
*   VALUE - EVERYTHING AFTER THE = IS CONSIDERED THE VALUE.
*   LEADING AND TRAILING BLANKS ARE REMOVED.
*   VALUE,(R) TO INDICATE REFRESH OPTION.
*   NO SPLITTING OF VALUE ACROSS LINES.  IF IT WON'T FIT ON
*   LINE WITH KEYWORD, ENTER '>' AFTER = AND PUT THE PARM
*   ON NEXT LINE.
*   BLANK LINES ARE IGNORED.
*   ASTERISK IN COLUMN 1 INDICATES THAT LINE IS A COMMENT.
* -----
POFDATE = 2003/10/08 06:31:53
ACM_PARALLEL_MAXINIT = 3
ACM_PARALLEL_MININIT = 2
ACM_PARALLEL_WORKLST = N
ACM_PARALLEL_XIMGRP = XIMACM
ACM_PARALLEL_XIMPROC = XIMACM
ACM_PARALLEL_XIMSTRT = N
ACM_PARALLEL_XIMTRCE = N
ADDLOAD1 =
ADDLOAD2 =
ARCH_DATACLASS =
ARCH_DATACLASS_ALT =
ARCH_EXPDT =
ARCH_MGMTCLASS =
ARCH_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
ARCH_PREFIX = &PREFIX
ARCH_PRIQTY = 10
ARCH_RETPD =
ARCH_SECQTY = 2
ARCH_STACK = N
ARCH_STORCLASS =
ARCH_STORCLASS_ALT =
ARCH_THRESH = 0
ARCH_UNIT = SYSDA
ARCH_UNIT_ALT =
BINDFAIL = N
BLRP_DATACLASS =
BLRP_DATACLASS_ALT =
BLRP_EXPDT =
BLRP_MGMTCLASS =
BLRP_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
```



---

**Figure E-1      Product Options File (Part 2 of 7)**

```
BLRP_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&OBNOD
BLRP_PRIQTY = 10
BLRP_RETPD =
BLRP_SECQTY = 2
BLRP_STACK = N
BLRP_STORCLASS =
BLRP_STORCLASS_ALT =
BLRP_THRESH = 0
BLRP_UNIT = SYSDA
BLRP_UNIT_ALT =
BMC_CHECK_LOAD =
BMC_CHECK_OPTS =
BMC_COPY_LOAD =
BMC_COPY_OPTS =
BMC_LOAD_LOAD =
BMC_LOAD_OPTS =
BMC_RECOVER_LOAD =
BMC_RECOVER_OPTS =
BMC_REORG_LOAD =
BMC_REORG_OPTS =
BMC_UNLOAD_LOAD =
BMC_UNLOAD_OPTS =
CAT_LOAD = BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD
CHECK+_LOAD = BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD
CHECKDOPT =
CHGMAN_LOAD = BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD
CLEANUP_RC = 4
CNTL_DATACLASS =
CNTL_EXPDT =
CNTL_MGMTCLASS =
CNTL_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&WKID..&SSID
CNTL_PRIQTY = 1
CNTL_RETPD =
CNTL_SECQTY = 1
CNTL_STORCLASS =
CNTL_UNIT = SYSDA
COPY+_LOAD = BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD
COPYDOPT =
DASD_LOAD = BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD
DATA_PACKER_LOAD = BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD
DATASETSIZING = N
DATAWK_NBR = 4
DATAWK_UNIT = SYSDA
DB2EXIT = SYS3.DB2A.DSNEXIT
DB2LOAD = SYS2.DB2V71M.DSNLOAD
DEF_GDG_BASE = N
DEF_GDG_LIMIT = 10
DEF_GDG_NOSCR = N
DEF_GDG2_LIMIT = 10
DIAG_MSGCLASS = X
```

---

**Figure E-1      Product Options File (Part 3 of 7)**

```
DISC_DATACLASS =
DISC_DATACLASS_ALT =
DISC_EXPDT =
DISC_MGMTCLASS =
DISC_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
DISC_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&OBNOD
DISC_PRIQTY = 10
DISC_RETPD =
DISC_SECQTY = 2
DISC_STORCLASS =
DISC_STORCLASS_ALT =
DISC_THRESH = 0
DISC_UNIT = SYSDA
DISC_UNIT_ALT =
DISP_STATS = N
DISP_VAR_DEBUG = N
ERR_DATACLASS =
ERR_DATACLASS_ALT =
ERR_EXPDT =
ERR_MGMTCLASS =
ERR_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
ERR_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&WKID..&STEPN
ERR_PRIQTY = 10
ERR_RETPD =
ERR_SECQTY = 2
ERR_STORCLASS =
ERR_STORCLASS_ALT =
ERR_THRESH = 0
ERR_UNIT = SYSDA
ERR_UNIT_ALT =
EXEC_LOAD = BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD
FILT_DATACLASS =
FILT_EXPDT =
FILT_MGMTCLASS =
FILT_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&WKID..&STEPN
FILT_PRIQTY = 10
FILT_RETPD =
FILT_SECQTY = 2
FILT_STORCLASS =
FILT_UNIT = SYSDA
GDG_MODEL = SYS1.MODEL
HASHFAIL = N
HASHWARNRC =
JCLCLEANUP = N
JCLLIB =
JES3 = N
JOB_INCLUDE_MEMBER =
JOB CARD1 = //&USERID.&JOBCHAR JOB (&ZACCTNUM), '&PGMR' ,
JOB CARD2 = // CLASS=A,MSGLEVEL=(1,1),NOTIFY=&USERID
JOB CARD3 = /*
```

---

**Figure E-1      Product Options File (Part 4 of 7)**

```
JOBCARD4 = /*
JOBCARD5 = /*
LISTDEF_DSN =
LOAD+_LOAD = BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD
LOADDOPT =
LOGWK_NBR = 4
LOGWK_UNIT = SYSDA
MAP_DATACLASS =
MAP_DATACLASS_ALT =
MAP_EXPDT =
MAP_MGMTCLASS =
MAP_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
MAP_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&WKID..&SSID
MAP_PRIQTY = 10
MAP_RETPD =
MAP_SECQTY = 2
MAP_STORCLASS =
MAP_STORCLASS_ALT =
MAP_THRESH = 0
MAP_UNIT = SYSDA
MAP_UNIT_ALT =
MAX_CYL = 99999
MAX_PRIQTY = 2000
MAX_SECQTY = 200
MAX_UNITCNT =
ORTPARM_DSN =
PCPY1_DATACLASS =
PCPY1_DATACLASS_ALT =
PCPY1_EXPDT =
PCPY1_MGMTCLASS =
PCPY1_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
PCPY1_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&OBNOD..P&PART
PCPY1_PRIQTY = 10
PCPY1_RETPD =
PCPY1_SECQTY = 2
PCPY1_STACK = N
PCPY1_STORCLASS =
PCPY1_STORCLASS_ALT =
PCPY1_THRESH = 0
PCPY1_UNIT = SYSDA
PCPY1_UNIT_ALT =
PCPY2_DATACLASS =
PCPY2_DATACLASS_ALT =
PCPY2_EXPDT =
PCPY2_MGMTCLASS =
PCPY2_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
PCPY2_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&OBNOD..P&PART
PCPY2_PRIQTY = 10
PCPY2_RETPD =
PCPY2_SECQTY = 2
```

---

**Figure E-1      Product Options File (Part 5 of 7)**

```
PCPY2_STACK = N
PCPY2_STORCLASS =
PCPY2_STORCLASS_ALT =
PCPY2_THRESH = 0
PCPY2_UNIT = SYSDA
PCPY2_UNIT_ALT =
PUNCH_DATACLASS =
PUNCH_EXPDT =
PUNCH_MGMTCLASS =
PUNCH_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&WKID..&STEPN
PUNCH_PRIQTY = 1
PUNCH_RETPD =
PUNCH_SECQTY = 1
PUNCH_STORCLASS =
PUNCH_UNIT = SYSDA
RCPY1_DATACLASS =
RCPY1_DATACLASS_ALT =
RCPY1_EXPDT =
RCPY1_MGMTCLASS =
RCPY1_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
RCPY1_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&OBNOD..P&PART
RCPY1_PRIQTY = 10
RCPY1_RETPD =
RCPY1_SECQTY = 2
RCPY1_STACK = N
RCPY1_STORCLASS =
RCPY1_STORCLASS_ALT =
RCPY1_THRESH = 0
RCPY1_UNIT = SYSDA
RCPY1_UNIT_ALT =
RCPY2_DATACLASS =
RCPY2_DATACLASS_ALT =
RCPY2_EXPDT =
RCPY2_MGMTCLASS =
RCPY2_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
RCPY2_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&OBNOD..P&PART
RCPY2_PRIQTY = 10
RCPY2_RETPD =
RCPY2_SECQTY = 2
RCPY2_STACK = N
RCPY2_STORCLASS =
RCPY2_STORCLASS_ALT =
RCPY2_THRESH = 0
RCPY2_UNIT = SYSDA
RCPY2_UNIT_ALT =
REBINDFAIL = N
REBINDRC =
RECOVER+_LOAD = BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD
RECOVERDOPT =
REGION = 0M
```

---

**Figure E-1      Product Options File (Part 6 of 7)**

```
REORG+_LOAD = BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD
REORGDOPT =
REPT_DATACLASS =
REPT_DATACLASS_ALT =
REPT_EXPDT =
REPT_MGMTCLASS =
REPT_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
REPT_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&WKID
REPT_PRIQTY = 10
REPT_RETPD =
REPT_SECQTY = 10
REPT_STORCLASS =
REPT_STORCLASS_ALT =
REPT_THRESH = 0
REPT_UNIT = SYSDA
REPT_UNIT_ALT =
SORTWK_NBR = 4
SORTWK_PRIQTY = 10
SORTWK_SECQTY = 2
SORTWK_UNIT = SYSDA
SQLEXP_LOAD = BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD
SRTOUT_DATACLASS =
SRTOUT_DATACLASS_ALT =
SRTOUT_EXPDT =
SRTOUT_MGMTCLASS =
SRTOUT_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
SRTOUT_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&WKID..&STEPN
SRTOUT_PRIQTY = 10
SRTOUT_RETPD =
SRTOUT_SECQTY = 2
SRTOUT_STORCLASS =
SRTOUT_STORCLASS_ALT =
SRTOUT_THRESH = 0
SRTOUT_UNIT = SYSDA
SRTOUT_UNIT_ALT =
STEP_INCLUDE_MEMBER =
SUPPRESS_COMMENTS = N
SYNCDELETE = N
SYSUT_DATACLASS =
SYSUT_DATACLASS_ALT =
SYSUT_EXPDT =
SYSUT_MGMTCLASS =
SYSUT_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
SYSUT_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&WKID..&STEPN
SYSUT_PRIQTY = 10
SYSUT_RETPD =
SYSUT_SECQTY = 2
SYSUT_STORCLASS =
SYSUT_STORCLASS_ALT =
SYSUT_THRESH = 0
```

---

**Figure E-1      Product Options File (Part 7 of 7)**

```
SYSUT_UNIT = SYSDA
SYSUT_UNIT_ALT =
SZDEVT = 3390
TAPE_EXPDT =
TAPE_RETPD =
TAPE_VOLCNT = 99
TAPE1 = CART
TAPE2 = TAPE
TAPE3 = TAPE
TEMPLATE_DSN =
TEMPUNIT = SYSDA
TIMEPARM =
TRTCH =
TSOPROGRAM =
TSOSUBEXIT = N
UNLD1_DATACLASS =
UNLD1_DATACLASS_ALT =
UNLD1_EXPDT =
UNLD1_MGMTCLASS =
UNLD1_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
UNLD1_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&OBNOD
UNLD1_PRIQTY = 10
UNLD1_RETPD =
UNLD1_SECQTY = 2
UNLD1_STACK = N
UNLD1_STORCLASS =
UNLD1_STORCLASS_ALT =
UNLD1_THRESH = 0
UNLD1_UNIT = SYSDA
UNLD1_UNIT_ALT =
UNLD2_DATACLASS =
UNLD2_DATACLASS_ALT =
UNLD2_EXPDT =
UNLD2_MGMTCLASS =
UNLD2_MGMTCLASS_ALT =
UNLD2_PREFIX = &PREFIX..&OBNOD
UNLD2_PRIQTY = 10
UNLD2_RETPD =
UNLD2_SECQTY = 2
UNLD2_STACK = N
UNLD2_STORCLASS =
UNLD2_STORCLASS_ALT =
UNLD2_THRESH = 0
UNLD2_UNIT = SYSDA
UNLD2_UNIT_ALT =
UNLOAD+_LOAD = BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD
UNLOADDOPT =
WORK_DATACLASS =
WORK_MGMTCLASS =
WORK_STORCLASS =
```

---

---

**Note:** The , (R) in the variable syntax indicates that the specified value will refresh the existing value of the variable in the user's ISPF profile data set when the POFDATE is later than the previous POFDATE stored in the user's ISPF profile.

## Descriptions of Keywords

Following are descriptions of the keywords in the product options file shown in Figure E-1.

### **ACM\_PARALLEL\_MAXINIT=3**

For the Database Administration solution, specifies the maximum number of the BMC Software Cross-System Image Manager (XIM) initiators to use when executing a worklist in parallel. This value controls the number of permanent work data sets that are allocated in the execution JCL. The valid range of values is 2 through 32. The maximum number of initiators should not exceed the number of objects in a worklist.

### **ACM\_PARALLEL\_MININIT=2**

For the Database Administration solution, specifies the minimum number of the BMC Software Cross-System Image Manager (XIM) initiators to use when executing a worklist in parallel. If the minimum number of XIM initiators is not available, the worklist does not execute. The valid range of values is 2 through 8.

### **ACM\_PARALLEL\_WORKLST=N**

For the Database Administration solution, indicates whether a CHANGE MANAGER worklist should be run in parallel.

**Y**      Execute the worklist in parallel.

If adequate BMC Software Cross-System Image Manager (XIM) resources are not available, the Execution function fails. In addition, if the required parallelism worklist commands (such as -BEGG and -ENDG) are not included in the worklist, the worklist is not run in parallel.

**N**      Execute the worklist sequentially, even if the required parallelism worklist commands are included in the worklist.

### **ACM\_PARALLEL\_XIMGRP=XIMACM**

For the Database Administration solution, specifies the group name for the BMC Software Cross-System Image Manager (XIM) technology. The group name for XIM must be unique for each instance of XIM that is running on an OS/390 or z/OS image.

---

**ACM\_PARALLEL\_XIMPROC=XIMACM**

For the Database Administration solution, specifies the name of the procedure that is used to start the BMC Software Cross-System Image Manager (XIM) technology automatically. BMC Software recommends that the name of the XIM started task procedure be unique for each instance of XIM that is running on an OS/390 or z/OS image.

**ACM\_PARALLEL\_XIMSTRT=N**

For the Database Administration solution, indicates whether the BMC Software Cross-System Image Manager (XIM) technology should be started automatically.

**ACM\_PARALLEL\_XIMTRCE=N**

For the Database Administration solution, indicates whether tracing is used during the execution of a worklist.

**Y** Write tracing records to the AEXPTRAC output data set.

If AEXPTRAC is not allocated, the output is written to SYSOUT.

**N** Do not use tracing, even if an //AEXPTRAC DD statement is specified in the JCL.

**ADDLOAD1=** Names the additional load library.

**ADDLOAD2=** Names the override load library.

**ARCH\_DATACLASS=** Displays the SMS definition for the ARCHIVE data set's data class.

**ARCH\_DATACLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the ARCHIVE data set's data class if the threshold is exceeded.

**ARCH\_EXPDT=** Used for the ARCHIVE data set's expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.

**ARCH\_MGMTCLASS=**

Displays the SMS definition for the ARCHIVE data set's management class.

**ARCH\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the ARCHIVE data set's management class if the threshold is exceeded.

**ARCH\_PREFIX=&PREFIX**

Displays the ARCHIVE data set's DSN prefix.



---

<b>ARCH_PRIQTY=10</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the ARCHIVE data set's primary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>ARCH_RETPD=</b>	Used for the ARCHIVE data set's retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.
<b>ARCH_SECQTY=2</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the ARCHIVE data set's secondary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>ARCH_STACK=N</b>	Controls whether to stack data sets if they are on tape ( <b>Y</b> or <b>N</b> ).
<b>ARCH_STORCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the ARCHIVE data set's storage class.
<b>ARCH_STORCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the ARCHIVE data set's storage class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>ARCH_THRESH=0</b>	Displays the threshold in cylinders. The alternative parameters are used if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>ARCH_UNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the ARCHIVE data set's unit name.
<b>ARCH_UNIT_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the ARCHIVE data set's unit if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>BINDFAIL=N</b>	If the value is <b>Y</b> , causes worklist execution to stop with a return code of 8 if a bind fails. The halt will be noted in the sync tables, and an Execution restart will continue with the command that caused the failure.  <b>Note:</b> Without this parameter, worklist execution continues if a bind fails.
<b>BLRP_DATACLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the CHANGE MANAGER BASELINE data set's data class.
<b>BLRP_DATACLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the CHANGE MANAGER BASELINE data set's data class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>BLRP_EXPDT=</b>	Used for the CHANGE MANAGER BASELINE data set's expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.
<b>BLRP_MGMTCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the CHANGE MANAGER BASELINE data set's management class.

---

**BLRP\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the CHANGE MANAGER BASELINE data set's management class if the threshold is exceeded.

**BLRP\_PREFIX=&PREFIX..&OBNOD**

Displays the CHANGE MANAGER BASELINE data set's DSN prefix.

**BLRP\_PRIQTY=10**

Displays, in cylinders, the value of the CHANGE MANAGER BASELINE data set's primary quantity if **DATASETSIZING=N** or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.

**BLRP\_RETPD=**

Used for the CHANGE MANAGER BASELINE data set's retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.

**BLRP\_SECQTY=2**

Displays, in cylinders, the value of the CHANGE MANAGER BASELINE data set's secondary quantity if **DATASETSIZING=N** or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.

**BLRP\_STACK=N**

For CHANGE MANAGER, controls whether to stack BASELINE data sets if they are on tape (Y or N).

**BLRP\_STORCLASS=**

Displays the SMS definition for the CHANGE MANAGER BASELINE data set's storage class.

**BLRP\_STORCLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the CHANGE MANAGER BASELINE data set's storage class if the threshold is exceeded.

**BLRP\_THRESH=0**

For CHANGE MANAGER, displays the threshold in cylinders. The alternative parameters are used if the threshold is exceeded.

**BLRP\_UNIT=SYSDA**

Displays the CHANGE MANAGER BASELINE data set's unit name.

**BLRP\_UNIT\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the CHANGE MANAGER BASELINE data set's unit if the threshold is exceeded.

**BMC\_CHECK\_LOAD=** Names the CHECK PLUS load library. This keyword replaces the CHECK+\_LOAD keyword.

If both BMC\_CHECK\_LOAD and CHECK+\_LOAD are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for CHECK+\_LOAD is used.

**BMC\_CHECK\_OPTS=**

Names the CHECK PLUS user options module. This keyword replaces the CHECKDOPT keyword.

---

If both BMC\_CHECK\_OPTS and CHECKDOPT are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for CHECKDOPT is used.

**BMC\_COPY\_LOAD=** Names the COPY PLUS load library. This keyword replaces the COPY+\_LOAD keyword.

If both BMC\_COPY\_LOAD and COPY+\_LOAD are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for COPY+\_LOAD is used.

**BMC\_COPY\_OPTS=** Names the COPY PLUS user options module. This keyword replaces the COPYDOPT keyword.

If both BMC\_COPY\_OPTS and COPYDOPT are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for COPYDOPT is used.

**BMC\_LOAD\_LOAD=** Names the LOADPLUS load library. This keyword replaces the LOAD+\_LOAD keyword.

If both BMC\_LOAD\_LOAD and LOAD+\_LOAD are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for LOAD+\_LOAD is used.

**BMC\_LOAD\_OPTS=** Names the LOADPLUS user options module. This keyword replaces the LOADDOPT keyword.

If both BMC\_LOAD\_OPTS and LOADDOPT are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for LOADDOPT is used.

**BMC\_RECOVER\_LOAD=** Names the RECOVER PLUS load library. This keyword replaces the RECOVER+\_LOAD keyword.

If both BMC\_RECOVER\_LOAD and RECOVER+\_LOAD are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for RECOVER+\_LOAD is used.

**BMC\_RECOVER\_OPTS=** Names the RECOVER PLUS user options module. This keyword replaces the RECOVERDOPT keyword.

If both BMC\_RECOVER\_OPTS and RECOVERDOPT are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for RECOVERDOPT is used.

---

**BMC\_REORG\_LOAD=**

Names the REORG PLUS load library. This keyword replaces the REORG+\_LOAD keyword.

If both BMC\_REORG\_LOAD and REORG+\_LOAD are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for REORG+\_LOAD is used.

**BMC\_REORG\_OPTS=**

Names the REORG PLUS user options module. This keyword replaces the REORGDOPT keyword.

If both BMC\_REORG\_OPTS and REORGDOPT are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for REORGDOPT is used.

**BMC\_UNLOAD\_LOAD=**

Names the UNLOAD PLUS load library. This keyword replaces the UNLOAD+\_LOAD keyword.

If both BMC\_UNLOAD\_LOAD and UNLOAD+\_LOAD are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for UNLOAD+\_LOAD is used.

**BMC\_UNLOAD\_OPTS=**

Names the UNLOAD PLUS user options module. This keyword replaces the UNLOADDOPT keyword.

If both BMC\_UNLOAD\_OPTS and UNLOADDOPT are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for UNLOADDOPT is used.

**CAT\_LOAD=BMCADMIN.V731.D71.LOAD**

Names the CATALOG MANAGER load library.

**CHECK+\_LOAD=**

Specifies the name of the BMC Software CHECK PLUS utility LOAD library. This keyword has been replaced by the BMC\_CHECK\_LOAD keyword.

If both BMC\_CHECK\_LOAD and CHECK+\_LOAD are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for CHECK+\_LOAD is used.

---

**CHECKDOPT=ACK\$MMS**

Specifies the name of the BMC Software CHECK PLUS utility DOPTS module. This keyword has been replaced by the BMC\_CHECK\_OPTS keyword.

If both BMC\_CHECK\_OPTS and CHECKDOPT are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for CHECKDOPT is used.

**CHGMAN\_LOAD=BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD**

Names the CHANGE MANAGER load library.

**CLEANUP\_RC=4**

Specifies the value of the return code from the JCL cleanup job step. The cleanup job step, which deletes permanent work data sets, is performed only if the condition code that is returned from any previous job step is less than the code specified in CLEANUP\_RC.

**CNTL\_DATACLASS=** Displays the SMS definition for the CONTROL data set's data class.

**CNTL\_EXPDT=** Used for the CONTROL data set's expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.

**CNTL\_MGMTCLASS=** Displays the SMS definition for the CONTROL data set's management class.

**CNTL\_PREFIX=&PREFIX..&WKID..&SSID**

Displays the CONTROL data set's DSN prefix.

**CNTL\_PRIQTY=1** Displays, in cylinders, the value of the CONTROL data set's primary quantity if **DATASETSIZING=N** or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.

**CNTL\_RETPD=** Used for the CONTROL data set's retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.

**CNTL\_SECQTY=1** Displays, in cylinders, the value of the CONTROL data set's secondary quantity if **DATASETSIZING=N** or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.

**CNTL\_STORCLASS=** Displays the SMS definition for the CONTROL data set's storage class.

**CNTL\_UNIT=SYSDA** Displays the CONTROL data set's unit name.

---

**COPY+\_LOAD=** Specifies the name of the BMC Software COPY PLUS utility LOAD library. This keyword has been replaced by the BMC\_COPY\_LOAD keyword.

If both BMC\_COPY\_LOAD and COPY+\_LOAD are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for COPY+\_LOAD is used.

**COPYDOPT=**

Specifies the name of the BMC Software COPY PLUS utility DOPTS module. This keyword has been replaced by the BMC\_COPY\_OPTS keyword.

If both BMC\_COPY\_OPTS and COPYDOPT are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for COPYDOPT is used.

**DASD\_LOAD=BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD**

Names the DASD MANAGER PLUS load library.

**DATA\_PACKER\_LOAD=**

Specifies the name of the BMC Software Data Packer load library (DB2 version 6.1 and later).

**DATASETSIZING=N** Displays the data set sizing options:

<b>B</b>	BMCSTATS
<b>C</b>	RUNSTATS
<b>O</b>	Object sampling
<b>N</b>	No sizing

**DATAWK\_NBR=4** Specifies the number of DATAWORK data sets.

**DATAWK\_UNIT=SYSDA**

Displays the DATAWORK data set's unit name.

**DB2EXIT=SYS3.DEBA.DSNEXIT**

Names the DB2 exit library.

**DB2LOAD=SYS2.DB2V71M.DSNLOAD**

Names the DB2 load library.

**DEF\_GDG\_BASE=Y** Controls whether to create the generation data group (GDG) base at JCL generation time (Y or N).

**DEF\_GDG\_LIMIT=10** Displays the maximum number of GDGs. Valid values are 1 to 255.

---

**DEF\_GDG2\_LIMIT=10**

Specifies the maximum number of GDG data sets that are allowed for recovery copies (DB2 version 6.1 and later).

The range of valid values is 1 through 255.

**DEF\_GDG\_NOSCR=N** Specifies whether the base of a generation data group (GDG) is defined in the IDCAMS DEFINE command as EMPTY (NOSCR).

If the GDG is defined as EMPTY (NOSCR), the operating system uncatalogs the generation data set when the maximum number of generation data sets to keep (LIMIT) is reached. Otherwise, if the GDG is defined as SCRATCH (SCR), the operating system scratches (deletes) the generation data set when it is uncataloged (DB2 version 6.1 and later).

**DIAG\_MSGCLASS=** Specifies the SYSOUT class used for reporting incorrect entries in the POF.

The default value is blank, which indicates that a report is not generated when the product is invoked. The asterisk (\*) is a valid value in batch mode.

**.DISC\_DATACLASS=** Displays the SMS definition for the DISCARD data set's data class.

**DISC\_DATACLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the DISCARD data set's data class if the threshold is exceeded.

**DISC\_EXPDT=** Used for the DISCARD data set's expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.

**DISC\_MGMTCLASS=** Displays the SMS definition for the DISCARD data set's management class.

**DISC\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the DISCARD data set's management class if the threshold is exceeded.

**DISC\_PREFIX=&PREFIX..&OBNOD**

Displays the DISCARD data set's DSN prefix.

**DISC\_PRIQTY=10** Displays, in cylinders, the value of the DISCARD data set's primary quantity if **DATASETSIZING=N** or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.

**DISC\_RETPD=** Used for the DISCARD data set's retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.

---

<b>DISC_SECQTY=2</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the DISCARD data set's secondary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>DISC_STORCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the DISCARD data set's storage class.
<b>DISC_STORCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the DISCARD data set's storage class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>DISC_THRESH=0</b>	Displays the value at which to switch the DISCARD data set's unit.
<b>DISC_UNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the DISCARD data set's unit name.
<b>DISC_UNIT_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the DISCARD data set's unit if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>DISP_STATS=Y</b>	Controls whether to display data set sizing comments in the JCL (Y or N).
<b>DISP_VAR_DEBUG=N</b>	Controls whether to display variable substitutions in the JCL (Y or N).
<b>ERR_DATACLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the ERROR data set's data class.
<b>ERR_DATACLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the ERROR data set's data class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>ERR_EXPDT=</b>	Used for the ERROR data set's expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.
<b>ERR_MGMTCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the ERROR data set's management class.
<b>ERR_MGMTCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the ERROR data set's management class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>ERR_PREFIX=&amp;PREFIX..&amp;WKID..&amp;STEPN</b>	Displays the ERROR data set's DSN prefix.
<b>ERR_PRIQTY=10</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the ERROR data set's primary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>ERR_RETPD=</b>	Used for the ERROR data set's retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.



---

<b>ERR_SECQTY=2</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the ERROR data set's secondary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>ERR_STORCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the ERROR data set's storage class.
<b>ERR_STORCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the ERROR data set's storage class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>ERR_THRESH=0</b>	Displays the value at which to switch the ERROR data set's unit.
<b>ERR_UNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the ERROR data set's unit name.
<b>ERR_UNIT_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the ERROR data set's unit if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>EXEC_LOAD=BMCADMN.V731.D71.LOAD</b>	Names the Execution load library.
<b>FILT_DATACLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the FILTER data set's data class.
<b>FILT_EXPDT=</b>	Used for the FILTER data set's expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.
<b>FILT_MGMTCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the FILTER data set's management class.
<b>FILT_PREFIX=&amp;PREFIX..&amp;WKID..&amp;STEPN</b>	Displays the FILTER data set's DSN prefix.
<b>FILT_PRIQTY=10</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the FILTER data set's primary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>FILT_RETPD=</b>	Used for the FILTER data set's retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.
<b>FILT_SECQTY=2</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the FILTER data set's secondary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>FILT_STORCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the FILTER data set's storage class.
<b>FILT_UNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the FILTER data set's unit name.
<b>GDG_MODEL=SYS1.MODEL</b>	Displays the GDG model name.

---

<b>HASHFAIL=N</b>	Causes Execution to terminate a job if a hash failure, such as a changed or added statement, occurs in a worklist.
<b>HASHWARNRC=</b>	Defines the return code that is sent back when only hash warnings are found.  <b>Note:</b> Do not use 8 for this value.
<b>JCLCLEANUP=Y</b>	Controls whether to generate a cleanup step in the JCL to delete work data sets (Y or N).
<b>JCLLIB</b>	Specifies the name of a partitioned data set that contains JCL to be included in the job.
<b>JES3=N</b>	Specifies whether JCL is to be generated for a JES3 system.
<b>JOB CARD1=&gt;</b>	
<b>//JOB JOB (&amp;ZACCTNUM),'&amp;PGMR',</b>	
<b>JOB CARD2=// CLASS=A,MSGLEVEL=(1,1)</b>	
<b>JOB CARD3=//*</b>	
<b>JOB CARD4=//*</b>	
<b>JOB CARD5=//*</b>	Specifies the default jobcard statement used when generating Analysis and Execution JCL. Symbolic variables can be used and are explained in the respective products' reference manuals.
<b>JOB_INCLUDE_MEMBER=</b>	Specifies the name of a JCL member to be included at the end of the job.
<b>LISTDEF_DSN=</b>	Specifies the name of the data set that contains member names for LISTDEF utility control statements (DB2 version 7 and later).
<b>LOAD+_LOAD=</b>	Specifies the name of the BMC Software LOADPLUS utility LOAD library. This keyword has been replaced by the BMC_LOAD_LOAD keyword.  If both BMC_LOAD_LOAD and LOAD+_LOAD are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for LOAD+_LOAD is used.
<b>LOADDOPT=</b>	Specifies the name of the BMC Software LOADPLUS utility DOPTS module. This keyword has been replaced by the BMC_LOAD_OPTS keyword.  If both BMC_LOAD_OPTS and LOADDOPT are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for LOADDOPT is used.

---

<b>LOGWK_NBR=2</b>	Specifies the number of LOGSORT data sets. Valid values are 1 to 32.
<b>LOGWK_UNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the LOGSORT data set's unit name.
<b>MAP_DATACLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the MAP data set's data class.
<b>MAP_DATACLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the MAP data set's data class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>MAP_EXPDT=</b>	Used for the MAP data set's expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.
<b>MAP_MGMTCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the MAP data set's management class.
<b>MAP_MGMTCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the MAP data set's management class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>MAP_PREFIX=&amp;PREFIX..&amp;WKID..&amp;SSID</b>	Displays the MAP data set's DSN prefix.
<b>MAP_PRIQTY=10</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the MAP data set's primary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>MAP_RETPD=</b>	Used for the MAP data set's retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.
<b>MAP_SECQTY=2</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the MAP data set's secondary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>MAP_STORCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the MAP data set's storage class.
<b>MAP_STORCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the MAP data set's storage class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>MAP_THRESH=0</b>	Displays the value at which to switch the MAP data set's unit.
<b>MAP_UNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the MAP data set's unit name.
<b>MAP_UNIT_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the MAP data set's unit if the threshold is exceeded.

---

<b>MAX_CYL=0</b>	If this value is exceeded for a data set, MAX_PRIQTY and MAX_SECQTY are used instead. These values are used for any data set that has no threshold limit set. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>MAX_PRIQTY=0</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value for the primary quantity. Valid values are 1 to 9999.
<b>MAX_SECQTY=0</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value for the secondary quantity. Valid values are 1 to 9999.
<b>MAX_UNITCNT=</b>	Displays the value for the DASD unit count. Valid values are 1 to 59.
<b>ORTPARM_DSN</b>	Specifies the name of a data set for SyncSort parameters (DB2 version 6.1 and later).
<b>PCPY1_DATACLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition of the local primary-copy data class.
<b>PCPY1_DATACLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the local primary-copy data class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>PCPY1_EXPDT=</b>	Used for the expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.
<b>PCPY1_MGMTCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition of the local primary-copy management class.
<b>PCPY1_MGMTCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the local primary-copy management class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>PCPY1_PREFIX=&amp;PREFIX..&amp;OBNOD..P&amp;PART</b>	Displays the local primary copy DSN prefix.
<b>PCPY1_PRIQTY=10</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the primary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>PCPY1_RETPD=</b>	Used for the retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.
<b>PCPY1_SECQTY=2</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the secondary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>PCPY1_STACK=N</b>	Controls whether to stack data sets if they are on tape (Y or N).

---

<b>PCPY1_STORCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition of the local primary-copy storage class.
<b>PCPY1_STORCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the local primary-copy storage class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>PCPY1_THRESH=0</b>	Displays the value at which to switch the local primary-copy unit.
<b>PCPY1_UNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the local primary-copy unit name.
<b>PCPY1_UNIT_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the local primary-copy unit if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>PCPY2_DATACLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition of the local backup-copy data class.
<b>PCPY2_DATACLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the local backup-copy data class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>PCPY2_EXPDT=</b>	Used for the expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.
<b>PCPY2_MGMTCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition of the local backup-copy management class.
<b>PCPY2_MGMTCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the local backup-copy management class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>PCPY2_PREFIX=&amp;PREFIX..&amp;OBNOD..P&amp;PART</b>	Displays the local backup-copy DSN prefix.
<b>PCPY2_PRIQTY=10</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the primary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>PCPY2_RETPD=</b>	Used for the retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.
<b>PCPY2_SECQTY=2</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the secondary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>PCPY2_STACK=N</b>	Controls whether to stack data sets if they are on tape (Y or N).
<b>PCPY2_STORCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition of the local backup-copy storage class.

---

**PCPY2\_STORCLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the local backup-copy storage class if the threshold is exceeded.

**PCPY2\_THRESH=0** Displays the value at which to switch the local backup-copy unit.

**PCPY2\_UNIT=SYSDA** Displays the local backup-copy unit name.

**PCPY2\_UNIT\_ALT=** Displays the new value of the local backup-copy unit if the threshold is exceeded.

**POFDATE=** Shows the last date that the POF was updated. This value is created or updated when the POF is created or when it is updated by the AJXPOVAL or AJXPODAT edit macros.

**PUNCH\_DATACLASS=** Displays the SMS definition for the PUNCH data set's data class.

**PUNCH\_EXPDT=** Used for the PUNCH data set's expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.

**PUNCH\_MGMTCLASS=**

Displays the SMS definition for the PUNCH data set's management class.

**PUNCH\_PREFIX=&PREFIX..&WKID..&STEPN**

Displays the PUNCH data set's DSN prefix.

**PUNCH\_PRIQTY=10** Displays, in cylinders, the value of the PUNCH data set's primary quantity if **DATASETSIZING=N** or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.

**PUNCH\_RETPD=** Used for the PUNCH data set's retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.

**PUNCH\_SECQTY=2** Displays, in cylinders, the value of the PUNCH data set's secondary quantity if **DATASETSIZING=N** or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.

**PUNCH\_STORCLASS=** Displays the SMS definition for the PUNCH data set's storage class.

**PUNCH\_UNIT=SYSDA** Displays the PUNCH data set's unit name.

**RCPY1\_DATACLASS=** Displays the SMS definition of the recovery primary-copy data class.

**RCPY1\_DATACLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the recovery primary-copy data class if the threshold is exceeded.

---

<b>RCPY1_EXPDT=</b>	Used for the expiration date if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.
<b>RCPY1_MGMTCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition of the recovery primary-copy management class.
<b>RCPY1_MGMTCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the recovery primary-copy management class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>RCPY1_PREFIX=&amp;PREFIX..&amp;OBNOD..P&amp;PART</b>	Displays the recovery primary-copy DSN prefix.
<b>RCPY1_PRIQTY=10</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the primary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>RCPY1_RETPD=</b>	Used for the retention period if the data set is on tape. Valid values are 1 to 9999.
<b>RCPY1_SECQTY=2</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the secondary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>RCPY1_STACK=N</b>	Controls whether to stack data sets if they are on tape ( <b>Y</b> or <b>N</b> ).
<b>RCPY1_STORCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition of the recovery primary-copy storage class.
<b>RCPY1_STORCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the recovery primary-copy storage class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>RCPY1_THRESH=0</b>	Displays the value at which to switch the recovery primary-copy unit.
<b>RCPY1_UNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the recovery primary-copy unit name.
<b>RCPY1_UNIT_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the recovery primary-copy unit if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>RCPY2_DATACLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition of the recovery backup-copy data class.
<b>RCPY2_DATACLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the recovery backup-copy data class if the threshold is exceeded.

---

<b>RCPY2_EXPDT=</b>	Used for the expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.
<b>RCPY2_MGMTCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition of the recovery backup-copy management class.
<b>RCPY2_MGMTCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the recovery backup-copy management class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>RCPY2_PREFIX=&amp;PREFIX..&amp;OBNOD..P&amp;PART</b>	Displays the recovery backup-copy DSN prefix.
<b>RCPY2_PRIQTY=10</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the primary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>RCPY2_RETPD=</b>	Used for the retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.
<b>RCPY2_SECQTY=2</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the secondary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>RCPY2_STACK=N</b>	Controls whether to stack data sets if they are on tape (Y or N).
<b>RCPY2_STORCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition of the recovery backup-copy storage class.
<b>RCPY2_STORCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the recovery backup-copy storage class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>RCPY2_THRESH=0</b>	Displays the value at which to switch the recovery backup-copy unit.
<b>RCPY2_UNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the recovery backup-copy unit name.
<b>RCPY2_UNIT_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the recovery backup-copy unit if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>REBINDFAIL=N</b>	If the value is Y, causes worklist execution to stop with a return code of 8 if a rebind fails. The halt is noted in the sync tables, and an Execution restart continues with the command that caused the failure. Without this parameter, worklist execution continues if a rebind fails.



---

<b>REBINDRC=</b>	Determines the final condition code that is returned if a rebind fails during worklist execution. If no value is set, then the DB2 default value of 4 is returned. Execution writes warning messages to AEXPRINT but does not post entries in the sync tables.
<b>RECOVER+_LOAD=</b>	<p>Specifies the name of the BMC Software RECOVER PLUS utility LOAD library. This keyword has been replaced by the BMC_RECOVER_LOAD keyword.</p> <p>If both BMC_RECOVER_LOAD and RECOVER+_LOAD are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for RECOVER+_LOAD is used.</p>
<b>RECOVERDOPT=</b>	<p>Specifies the name of the BMC Software RECOVER PLUS utility DOPTS module. This keyword has been replaced by the BMC_RECOVER_OPTS keyword.</p> <p>If both BMC_RECOVER_OPTS and RECOVERDOPT are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for RECOVERDOPT is used.</p>
<b>REGION=4M</b>	Specifies the REGION parameter on the step EXEC statement.
<b>REORG+_LOAD=</b>	<p>Specifies the name of the BMC Software REORG PLUS utility LOAD library. This keyword has been replaced by the BMC_REORG_LOAD keyword.</p> <p>If both BMC_REORG_LOAD and REORG+_LOAD are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for REORG+_LOAD is used.</p>
<b>REORGDOPT=</b>	<p>Specifies the name of the BMC Software REORG PLUS utility DOPTS module. This keyword has been replaced by the BMC_REORG_OPTS keyword.</p> <p>If both BMC_REORG_OPTS and REORGDOPT are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for REORGDOPT is used.</p>
<b>REPT_DATACLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the REPORT data set's data class.
<b>REPT_DATACLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the REPORT data set's data class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>REPT_EXPDT=</b>	Used for the REPORT data set's expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.

---

<b>REPT_MGMTCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the REPORT data set's management class.
<b>REPT_MGMTCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the REPORT data set's management class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>REPT_PREFIX=&amp;PREFIX..&amp;WKID</b>	Displays the REPORT data set's DSN prefix.
<b>REPT_PRIQTY=10</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the REPORT data set's primary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>REPT_RETPD=</b>	Used for the REPORT data set's retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.
<b>REPT_SECQTY=2</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the REPORT data set's secondary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>REPT_STORCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the REPORT data set's storage class.
<b>REPT_STORCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the REPORT data set's storage class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>REPT_THRESH=0</b>	Displays the value at which to switch the REPORT data set's unit.
<b>REPT_UNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the REPORT data set's unit name.
<b>REPT_UNIT_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the REPORT data set's unit if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>SORTWK_NBR=6</b>	Specifies the number of SORTWORK data sets. Valid values are 1 to 32.
<b>SORTWK_PRIQTY=20</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the DATAWORK, LOGSORT, or SORTWORK data set's primary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>SORTWK_SECQTY=4</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the DATAWORK, LOGSORT, or SORTWORK data set's secondary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>SORTWK_UNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the SORTWORK data set's unit name.

---

**SRTOUT\_DATACLASS=**

Displays the SMS definition for the SORTOUT data set's data class.

**SRTOUT\_DATACLASS\_ALT=CART**

Displays the new value of the SORTOUT data set's data class if the threshold is exceeded.

**SRTOUT\_EXPDT=**

Used for the SORTOUT data set's expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.

**SRTOUT\_MGMTCLASS=**

Displays the SMS definition for the SORTOUT data set's management class.

**SRTOUT\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the SORTOUT data set's management class if the threshold is exceeded.

**SRTOUT\_PREFIX=&PREFIX..&WKID..&STEPN**

Displays the SORTOUT data set's DSN prefix.

**SRTOUT\_PRIQTY=10** Displays, in cylinders, the value of the SORTOUT data set's primary quantity if **DATASETSIZING=N** or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.

**SRTOUT\_RETPD=**

Used for the SORTOUT data set's retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.

**SRTOUT\_SECQTY=2** Displays, in cylinders, the value of the SORTOUT data set's secondary quantity if **DATASETSIZING=N** or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.

**SRTOUT\_STORCLASS=**

Displays the SMS definition for the SORTOUT data set's storage class.

**SRTOUT\_STORCLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the SORTOUT data set's storage class if the threshold is exceeded.

**SRTOUT\_THRESH=0**

Displays the value at which to switch the SORTOUT data set's unit.

**SRTOUT\_UNIT=SYSDA**

Displays the SORTOUT data set's unit name.

**SRTOUT\_UNIT\_ALT=CART**

Displays the new value of the SORTOUT data set's unit if the threshold is exceeded.

---

**STEP\_INCLUDE\_MEMBER=**

Specifies the name of a JCL member to be included after each step (DB2 version 6.1 and later).

**SUPPRESS\_COMMENTS=N**

Controls whether to suppress most comments in JCL (Y or N).

**SYNCDELETE=N**

Instructs Execution to remove all sync entries when an Execution job completes with no errors.

**SYSUT\_DATACLASS=** Displays the SMS definition for the SYSUT data set's data class.

**SYSUT\_DATACLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the SYSUT data set's data class if the threshold is exceeded.

**SYSUT\_EXPDT=**

Used for the SYSUT data set's expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.

**SYSUT\_MGMTCLASS=**

Displays the SMS definition for the SYSUT data set's management class.

**SYSUT\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the SYSUT data set's management class if the threshold is exceeded.

**SYSUT\_PREFIX=&PREFIX..&WKID..&STEPN**

Displays the SYSUT data set's DSN prefix.

**SYSUT\_PRIQTY=10**

Displays, in cylinders, the value of the SYSUT data set's primary quantity if **DATASETSIZING=N** or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.

**SYSUT\_RETPD=**

Used for the SYSUT data set's retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.

**SYSUT\_SECQTY=2**

Displays, in cylinders, the value of the SYSUT data set's secondary quantity if **DATASETSIZING=N** or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.

**SYSUT\_STORCLASS=** Displays the SMS definition for the SYSUT data set's storage class.

**SYSUT\_STORCLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the SYSUT data set's storage class if the threshold is exceeded.

**SYSUT\_THRESH=0**

Displays the value at which to switch the SYSUT data set's unit.

---

<b>SYSUT_UNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the SYSUT data set's unit name.
<b>SYSUT_UNIT_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the SYSUT data set's unit if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>SZDEVT=3390</b>	Displays the device type (3380 or 3390).
<b>TAPE_EXPDT=</b>	Displays the expiration date of the tape set. This parameter is global, meaning that this value is valid for all tape data sets that do not specify an expiration date.
<b>TAPE_RETPD=</b>	Displays the retention period of the tape set. This parameter is global, meaning that this value is valid for all tape data sets that do not specify a retention period.
<b>TAPE_VOLCNT=</b>	Displays the maximum number of tape volumes that can be created. Valid values are 1 to 255.
<b>TAPE1=CART</b>	
<b>TAPE2=TAPE</b>	
<b>TAPE3=TAPE</b>	Defines the valid installation tape unit names for your site.
<b>TEMPLATE_DSN=</b>	Specifies the name of the data set that contains member names for TEMPLATE utility control statements (DB2 version 7 and later).
<b>TEMPUNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the unit used for temporary files.
<b>TIMEPARM=</b>	Specifies the TIMEPARM parameter on the step EXEC statement.
<b>TRTCH=</b>	Specifies the parity, data conversion, and translation for 7-track drives. This keyword can also specify whether to use data compression.
	<b>B</b> 7-track drives not used <b>C</b> odd parity, conversion on, translation off <b>E</b> even parity, conversion off, translation off <b>T</b> odd parity, conversion off, translation on <b>ET</b> even parity, conversion off, translation on <b>COMP</b> data compression on <b>NOCOMP</b> data compression off
<b>TSOPROGRAM=</b>	Specifies an alternate TSO monitor program for standard JCL. TSOPROGRAM is available for non-worklist JCL.
<b>TSOSUBEXIT=N</b>	Specifies whether to create job cards at submit time. If Y, no job cards are put in the JCL (Y or N).

---

**UNLD1\_DATACLASS=** Displays the SMS definition for the primary SYSREC data set's data class.

**UNLD1\_DATACLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the primary SYSREC data set's data class if the threshold is exceeded.

**UNLD1\_EXPDT=** Used for the primary SYSREC data set's expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.

**UNLD1\_MGMTCLASS=**

Displays the SMS definition for the primary SYSREC data set's management class.

**UNLD1\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the primary SYSREC data set's management class if the threshold is exceeded.

**UNLD1\_PREFIX=&PREFIX..&OBNOD**

Displays the primary SYSREC data set's DSN prefix.

**UNLD1\_PRIQTY=10** Displays, in cylinders, the value of the primary SYSREC data set's primary quantity if **DATASETSIZING=N** or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.

**UNLD1\_RETPD=** Used for the primary SYSREC data set's retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.

**UNLD1\_SECQTY=2** Displays, in cylinders, the value of the primary SYSREC data set's secondary quantity if **DATASETSIZING=N** or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.

**UNLD1\_STACK=N** Controls whether to stack data sets if they are on tape (**Y** or **N**).

**UNLD1\_STORCLASS=** Displays the SMS definition for the primary SYSREC data set's storage class.

**UNLD1\_STORCLASS\_ALT=**

Displays the new value of the primary SYSREC data set's storage class if the threshold is exceeded.

**UNLD1\_THRESH=0** Displays the value at which to switch the primary SYSREC data set's unit.

**UNLD1\_UNIT=SYSDA** Displays the primary SYSREC data set's unit name.

**UNLD1\_UNIT\_ALT=** Displays the new value of the primary SYSREC data set's unit if the threshold is exceeded.

---

<b>UNLD2_DATACLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the backup SYSREC data set's data class.
<b>UNLD2_DATACLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the backup SYSREC data set's data class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>UNLD2_EXPDT=</b>	Used for the backup SYSREC data set's expiration date if the data set is on tape. Valid values are YYDDD or YYYY/DDD.
<b>UNLD2_MGMTCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the backup SYSREC data set's management class.
<b>UNLD2_MGMTCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the backup SYSREC data set's management class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>UNLD2_PREFIX=&amp;PREFIX..&amp;OBNOD</b>	Displays the backup SYSREC data set's DSN prefix.
<b>UNLD2_PRIQTY=10</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the backup SYSREC data set's primary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>UNLD2_RETPD=</b>	Used for the backup SYSREC data set's retention period if the data set is on tape. The data set cannot have both an expiration date and a retention period. Valid values are 1 to 9999.
<b>UNLD2_SECQTY=2</b>	Displays, in cylinders, the value of the backup SYSREC data set's secondary quantity if <b>DATASETSIZING=N</b> or if an error in sizing occurs. Valid values are 1 to 99999.
<b>UNLD2_STACK=N</b>	Controls whether to stack data sets if they are on tape ( <b>Y</b> or <b>N</b> ).
<b>UNLD2_STORCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for the backup SYSREC data set's storage class.
<b>UNLD2_STORCLASS_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the backup SYSREC data set's storage class if the threshold is exceeded.
<b>UNLD2_THRESH=0</b>	Displays the value at which to switch the backup SYSREC data set's unit.
<b>UNLD2_UNIT=SYSDA</b>	Displays the backup SYSREC data set's unit name.
<b>UNLD2_UNIT_ALT=</b>	Displays the new value of the backup SYSREC data set's unit if the threshold is exceeded.

---

<b>UNLOAD+_LOAD=</b>	<p>Specifies the name of the BMC Software UNLOAD PLUS utility LOAD library. This keyword has been replaced by the BMC_UNLOAD_LOAD keyword.</p> <p>If both BMC_UNLOAD_LOAD and UNLOAD+_LOAD are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for UNLOAD+_LOAD is used.</p>
<b>UNLOADDOPT=</b>	<p>Specifies the name of the BMC Software UNLOAD PLUS utility DOPTS module. This keyword has been replaced by the BMC_UNLOAD_OPTS keyword.</p> <p>If both BMC_UNLOAD_OPTS and UNLOADDOPT are included in the product options file (POF), the value that is specified for UNLOADDOPT is used.</p>
<b>WORK_DATACLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for data-class work files (DATAWORK, LOGSORT, SORTWORK).
<b>WORK_MGMTCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for management-class work files (DATAWORK, LOGSORT, SORTWORK).
<b>WORK_STORCLASS=</b>	Displays the SMS definition for storage-class work files (DATAWORK, LOGSORT, SORTWORK).



---

---

# Appendix F      **Cross-System Image Manager Parameters**

This appendix contains the following topics:

Overview .....	F-2
Global Parameters versus MVS Image Parameters .....	F-2
Parameter Specifications .....	F-3
Parameter Syntax Rules .....	F-5

## Overview

The name of the default parameter options member in the *HLQ.CNTL* data set is *XIMPARM*. This member contains the default parameter settings for the Cross-System Image Manager (XIM) started task procedure. In addition, all XIM images must reference the same PDS member for startup parameters.

## Global Parameters versus MVS Image Parameters

XIM provides parameters for establishing the scope of XIM processing in a sysplex environment. You can set all parameters at a global level and some at the MVS image level. When parameters are not set at the global level, XIM default values apply. When values are not set at the MVS image level, the values that are set at the global level apply.

You can set the following parameters at the global level:

- XCF\_GROUP
- XIM\_GROUP
- INIT\_PROC
- INITIATORS
- SYSALLDA

Figure F-1 on page F-3 shows a sample parameter list that you might provide for XIM. This sample provides values for the global level and provides additional values for two MVS images. The global values apply to all MVS images in the sysplex if you start all XIMs with the same PDS member as input. The MVS image values apply only to the MVS image that is identified by the system name.

**Figure F-1 Sample XIM Parameter List**


---

```

XIM_GROUP=XIMACM
XCF_GROUP=XCFACM
INIT_PROC=XIMACMI
INITIATORS=8
SYSALLDA=SYSALLDA

DO SYSA                                SYSA MVS Image Parameters
INITIATORS=0
END

DO SYSB                                SYSB MVS Image Parameters
INITIATORS=4
END

```

---

## Parameter Specifications

Figure F-2 shows the sample global parameter list that is provided for XIM in the *HLQ.CNTL(XIMPARM)* data set. This sample provides values for the global level. The global values apply to all MVS images in the sysplex if you start all XIMs with the same PDS member as input.

**Figure F-2 Default XIM Parameter List**


---

```

XCF_GROUP=XCFACM
XIM_GROUP=XIMACM
INIT_PROC=XIMACMI
INITIATORS=8
END

```

---

This section describes the XIM parameters in the order that they are shown in the two preceding figures.

### **XCF\_GROUP=groupname**

The XCF\_GROUP parameter indicates the eight-character XCF group name. If you use fewer than eight characters, pad to the right with blanks. Valid characters are A to Z, 0 to 9, and special characters (\$, #, and @). To avoid using reserved names, do not begin group names with the letters A through I or the character string SYS. The default value is XCFACM.

The XCF\_GROUP parameter is valid only at the global level. The XCF\_GROUP parameter enables multiple XIM subsystems to connect or communicate with each other through the XCF coupling facility or through a Channel to Channel Adapter (CTCA). XIM uses the XCF group name to locate and connect to other instances of itself within the sysplex.

**XIM\_GROUP=groupname**

The XIM\_GROUP parameter indicates the eight-character XIM group name. If you use fewer than eight characters, pad to the right with blanks. Valid characters are A to Z, 0 to 9, and special characters (\$, #, and @). To avoid using reserved names, do not begin group names with the letters A through I or the character string SYS. The default value is XIMACM.

The XIM\_GROUP parameter is valid only at the global level.

**INITIATORS=xxx**

The INITIATORS parameter indicates the maximum number of concurrently active XIM initiators. Valid values are 0 through 256. The default value is 8.

To prevent any XIM initiators from starting, use INITIATORS=0 for that particular MVS image (for example, see SYSA in Figure F-1 on page F-3).

The INITIATORS parameter is valid at the global level and the MVS image level. When issued at the global level, the INITIATORS parameter specifies the number of XIM initiators that can be active for each MVS image in the sysplex before the required workload capacity of the image is exceeded. If you specify this parameter only at the global level, it affects all images in the sysplex. However, if you specify the INITIATORS parameter at the MVS image level, it overrides the global specification *for that image only*.

**INIT\_PROC=procname**

The INIT\_PROC parameter identifies a procedure name that initializes an XIM initiator. Use any valid PDS member name.

The default value is XIMACMI.

The INIT\_PROC parameter is valid at the global level and the MVS image level.

**SYSALLDA=sysallda**

The SYSALLDA parameter indicates the MVS system unit name for all DASD devices. This standard name allows you to allocate a data set on any or all DASD devices in your environment. If your systems programmer or DASD administrator has specified a different unit name than the default value of *sysallda*, you can use the SYSALLDA parameter in your XIM started task procedure to specify the equivalent unit name for your environment.

# Parameter Syntax Rules

Use the following syntax rules when creating or modifying the startup parameter list:

- Use columns 1 through 71.
- Use one parameter per statement.
- Do not continue a parameter onto a second line.
- Anything following a parameter and its value is a comment.
- The equal sign (=) is the required delimiter.
- Use spaces to the left and right of the equal sign, if necessary.
- Ignore blank lines (columns 1 through 71) and lines beginning with an asterisk.



---

# Appendix G    Moving to a Different Version of DB2

This appendix presents the following topics:

Overview .....	G-2
Migrating from DB2 Version 6 to Version 7 .....	G-3
Migrating from DB2 Version 5 to Version 6 .....	G-7

---

## Overview

If you plan to move to DB2 version 6 or 7, refer to Table G-1 for the minimum release levels of the Administrative products that must be installed to have support for those DB2 releases.

**Note:** This document lists product versions for informational purposes only. BMC Software does not necessarily support all the listed versions. See [http://www.bmc.com/support\\_home](http://www.bmc.com/support_home) for information about supported versions.

**Table G-1** Minimum Release Levels Required for DB2 Support

Product	DB2 Version 6 Support	DB2 Version 7 Support
ALTER	6.1.02E	7.1.01F
CATALOG MANAGER	6.1.02	7.1.01
CHANGE MANAGER	6.1.02E	7.1.01F
DASD MANAGER PLUS	6.1.01	6.2.00

**Note:** Review any technical bulletins or flashes that accompany this distribution tape for information about support for DB2 versions.

The following sections describe migration and fallback procedures for specific products.



# Migrating from DB2 Version 6 to Version 7

To maintain BMC Software Administrative Products when you migrate to DB2 version 7 or when you fallback to DB2 version 6, use the guidelines in Table G-2.

**Table G-2 Migrating DB2 Version 6 to Version 7 (Part 1 of 4)**

If You Are Using	To Migrate to Version 7	To Fallback to Version 6
ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER version 6.1.02 installed on DB2 version 6	Install ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER version 7.3F. Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Provided that the earlier version of ALTER (ALU) or CHANGE MANAGER (ACM) still exists, remove the product that is in exploitation mode.</li> <li>2. Rebind all packages and plans for the earlier version by using <i>prdssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>prdssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID). Any data that you added while you were in exploitation mode will not be available in toleration mode.</li> </ol>
ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER 6.2.01E installed on DB2 version 6	<b>Toleration</b>	
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Migrate the DB2 catalog.</li> <li>2. Using <i>HLQ.CNTL</i> (ALUV7TOL), follow the instructions in this member to upload the LOAD and DBRM members from tape.</li> </ol> <p>Then you will be operating in toleration mode. BMC Software recommends using separate <i>HLQ.LOAD</i> and <i>HLQ.DBRM</i> libraries for toleration to facilitate fallback to DB2 version 6.</p>	Provided that the ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER <i>HLQ.LOAD</i> and <i>HLQ.DBRM</i> libraries prior to applying DB2 version 7 toleration still exist, rebind all ALTER (ALU) or CHANGE MANAGER (ACM) packages and plans by using <i>prdssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>prdssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).
	<b>Exploitation</b>	
	As an alternative, install ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER version 7.3F. Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.	Provided that the earlier version of ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER still exists in toleration mode, use the fallback procedures described for toleration mode and remove the product in exploitation mode. Any data that you added while you were in exploitation mode will not be available in toleration mode.

**Table G-2 Migrating DB2 Version 6 to Version 7 (Part 2 of 4)**

If You Are Using	To Migrate to Version 7	To Fallback to Version 6
ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER 7.1E or later installed on DB2 version 6	<b>Toleration</b>	
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Migrate the DB2 catalog.</li> <li>2. Using <i>HLQ.CNTL</i> (ALUV7TOL), follow the instructions in this member to upload the LOAD and DBRM members from tape.</li> </ol> <p>Then you will be operating in toleration mode. BMC Software recommends using separate <i>HLQ.LOAD</i> and <i>HLQ.DBRM</i> libraries for toleration to facilitate fallback to DB2 version 6.</p>	<p>Provided that the ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER <i>HLQ.LOAD</i> and <i>HLQ.DBRM</i> libraries prior to applying DB2 version 7 toleration still exist, rebind all ALTER (ALU) or CHANGE MANAGER (ACM) packages and plans for the earlier version by using <i>prdssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>prdssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).</p>
	<b>Exploitation</b>	
	<p>As an alternative, install ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER version 7.3F. Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.</p>	<p>Provided that the earlier version of ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER still exists in toleration mode, use the fallback procedures described for toleration mode and remove the product in exploitation mode. Any data that you added while you were in exploitation mode will not be available in toleration mode.</p>
CATALOG MANAGER at a version earlier than 6.1.02	<p>Migrate the DB2 catalog and install CATALOG MANAGER version 7.3. Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Provided that the earlier version of CATALOG MANAGER still exists, remove the product that is in exploitation mode.</li> <li>2. Rebind all CATALOG MANAGER packages and plans for the earlier version by using <i>ACTssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>ACTssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID). Any data that you added while you were in exploitation mode will not be available in toleration mode.</li> </ol>
CATALOG MANAGER 6.2.01	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Migrate the DB2 catalog.</li> <li>2. Rebind all CATALOG MANAGER packages and plans by using <i>ACTssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>ACTssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).</li> </ol> <p>As an alternative, you can install CATALOG MANAGER version 7.3. Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Provided that the earlier version of CATALOG MANAGER still exists in toleration mode, use the fallback procedures described for toleration mode and remove the product in exploitation mode. Any data that you added while you were in exploitation mode will not be available in toleration mode.</li> <li>2. Rebind all CATALOG MANAGER packages and plans by using <i>ACTssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>ACTssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).</li> </ol>

**Table G-2 Migrating DB2 Version 6 to Version 7 (Part 3 of 4)**

If You Are Using	To Migrate to Version 7	To Fallback to Version 6
CATALOG MANAGER 7.1 or later	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Migrate the DB2 catalog.</li> <li>2. Run <i>HLQ.CNTL(UPGRD6#7)</i>.</li> </ol> <p>Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.</p>	Rebind all CATALOG MANAGER packages and plans by using <i>ACTssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>ACTssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).
DASD MANAGER PLUS at a version earlier than 6.1.03	Migrate the DB2 catalog and install DASD MANAGER PLUS version 6.1.03. Then you will be operating in toleration mode.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Provided that the earlier version of DASD MANAGER PLUS still exists, remove the product that is in toleration mode.</li> <li>2. Rebind all DASD MANAGER PLUS packages and plans for the earlier version by using <i>ASUssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>ASUssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID). Any data that you added while you were in exploitation mode will not be available.</li> </ol>
DASD MANAGER PLUS 6.1.03	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Migrate the DB2 catalog.</li> <li>2. Rebind all DASD MANAGER PLUS packages and plans by using <i>ASUssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>ASUssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).</li> </ol> <p>Then you will be operating in toleration mode.</p>	Rebind all DASD MANAGER PLUS packages and plans by using <i>ASUssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>ASUssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).
DASD MANAGER PLUS 6.2.00	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Migrate the DB2 catalog.</li> <li>2. Run <i>HLQ.CNTL(UPGRD6#7)</i>.</li> </ol> <p>Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.</p>	Rebind all DASD MANAGER PLUS packages and plans by using <i>ASUssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>ASUssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).
catalog indirection and ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER in toleration mode	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Install ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER version 7.3F. Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.</li> <li>2. Reinstall catalog indirection.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Provided that the earlier version of indirection still exists, remove the indirect copy or view that is in exploitation mode.</li> <li>2. Provided that ALTER (ALU) or CHANGE MANAGER (ACM) still exists in toleration mode, use the fallback procedures described for toleration mode to remove the product in exploitation mode.</li> <li>3. Rebind all indirect packages and plans for the earlier version by using <i>prdssidZ</i> (bind packages) and <i>prdssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).</li> </ol>

**Table G-2** Migrating DB2 Version 6 to Version 7 (Part 4 of 4)

If You Are Using	To Migrate to Version 7	To Fallback to Version 6
catalog indirection and CATALOG MANAGER 6.2 or later	Reinstall catalog indirection.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Provided that the earlier version of indirection still exists, remove the indirect copy or view that is in exploitation mode.</li><li>2. Provided that CATALOG MANAGER still exists in toleration mode, use the fallback procedures described for toleration mode to remove the product in exploitation mode.</li><li>3. Rebind all indirect packages and plans for the earlier version by using <i>prdssidZ</i> (bind packages) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).</li></ol>

To maintain BMC Software Administrative Products when you create a new DB2 version 7 catalog, use the guidelines in Table G-3.

**Table G-3** Creating a New DB2 Version 7 Catalog

If You Are Using	Then Install
any of the Administrative products	the following Administrative products: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER 7.3F (exploitation)</li><li>• CATALOG MANAGER 7.3 (exploitation)</li><li>• DASD MANAGER PLUS 6.2 (exploitation)</li></ul>
catalog indirection	catalog indirection

# Migrating from DB2 Version 5 to Version 6

To maintain BMC Software Administrative Products when you migrate to DB2 version 6 or when you fallback to DB2 version 5, use the guidelines in Table G-4.

**Note:** DASD MANAGER PLUS version 6.2 does not support DB2 version 5. You must upgrade to DB2 version 6 or later to run DASD MANAGER PLUS version 6.2.

**Table G-4 Migrating DB2 Version 5 to Version 6 (Part 1 of 4)**

If You Are Using	To Migrate to Version 6	To Fallback to Version 5
ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER 5.4.03 or earlier, or PATROL DB-Alter or PATROL DB-Change Manager server 3.0.01 or earlier	Install ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER version 7.3E. Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Provided that the earlier version of ALTER (ALU), CHANGE MANAGER (ACM), PATROL DB-Alter (ACV), or PATROL DB-Change Manager (ACV) still exists, remove the product that is in exploitation mode.</li> <li>2. Rebind all packages and plans for the earlier version by using <i>prdssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>prdssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID). Any data that you added while you were in exploitation mode will not be available in toleration mode.</li> </ol>
ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER 5.4.04D installed on DB2 version 5, or PATROL DB-Alter or PATROL DB-Change Manager server 3.0.02 through 3.1.02 installed on DB2 version 5	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Toleration</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Migrate the DB2 catalog.</li> <li>2. Rebind all ALTER (ALU) or CHANGE MANAGER (ACM) packages and plans by using <i>prdssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>prdssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).</li> <li>3. For PATROL DB-Alter (ACV) and PATROL DB-Change Manager (ACV), rebind all PATROL DB-Alter or PATROL DB-Change Manager packages and plans for the earlier version by using <i>prdssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>prdssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).</li> </ol> <p>Then you will be operating in toleration mode.</p>	
		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Rebind all ALTER (ALU) or CHANGE MANAGER (ACM) packages and plans by using <i>prdssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>prdssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).</li> <li>2. For PATROL DB-Alter (ACV) and PATROL DB-Change Manager (ACV), rebind all PATROL DB-Alter or PATROL DB-Change Manager packages and plans for the earlier version by using <i>prdssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>prdssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).</li> </ol>

**Table G-4 Migrating DB2 Version 5 to Version 6 (Part 2 of 4)**

If You Are Using	To Migrate to Version 6	To Fallback to Version 5
ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER 5.4.04D installed on DB2 version 5, or PATROL DB-Alter or PATROL DB-Change Manager server 3.0.02 through 3.1.02 installed on DB2 version 5	<b>Exploitation</b>	
	As an alternative, you can install ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER version 7.3E. Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.	Provided that the earlier version of ALTER, CHANGE MANAGER, PATROL DB-Alter, or PATROL DB-Change Manager still exists in toleration mode, use the fallback procedures described for toleration mode and remove the product in exploitation mode. Any data that you added while you were in exploitation mode will not be available in toleration mode.
ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER 6.1D or later installed on DB2 version 5	<b>Toleration</b>	
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Migrate the DB2 catalog.</li> <li>2. Rebind all ALTER (ALU) or CHANGE MANAGER (ACM) packages and plans by using <i>prdssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>prdssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).</li> </ol> <p>Then you will be operating in toleration mode.</p>	Rebind all ALTER (ALU) or CHANGE MANAGER (ACM) packages and plans for the earlier version by using <i>prdssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>prdssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).
	<b>Exploitation</b>	
	As an alternative, you can install ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER version 7.3E. Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.	Provided that the earlier version of ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER still exists in toleration mode, use the fallback procedures described for toleration mode and remove the product in exploitation mode. Any data that you added while you were in exploitation mode will not be available in toleration mode.
CATALOG MANAGER at a version earlier than 5.4.04	Migrate the DB2 catalog and install CATALOG MANAGER version 7.3. Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Provided that the earlier version of CATALOG MANAGER still exists, remove the product in exploitation mode.</li> <li>2. Rebind all CATALOG MANAGER packages and plans for the earlier version by using <i>ACTssidP</i> (bind packages) and <i>ACTssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID). Any data that you added while you were in exploitation mode will not be available in toleration mode.</li> </ol>

**Table G-4 Migrating DB2 Version 5 to Version 6 (Part 3 of 4)**

<b>If You Are Using</b>	<b>To Migrate to Version 6</b>	<b>To Fallback to Version 5</b>
CATALOG MANAGER 5.4.04 or 5.4.05	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Migrate the DB2 catalog.</li> <li>2. Rebind all CATALOG MANAGER packages and plans by using ACTssidP (bind packages) and ACTssidB (bind plans) (where ssid is the subsystem ID).</li> </ol> <p>Then you will be operating in toleration mode.</p>	Rebind all CATALOG MANAGER packages and plans by using ACTssidP (bind packages) and ACTssidB (bind plans) (where ssid is the subsystem ID).
CATALOG MANAGER 6.1 or later	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Migrate the DB2 catalog.</li> <li>2. Run <i>HLQ.CNTL(UPGRD5#6)</i>.</li> </ol> <p>Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.</p>	Rebind all CATALOG MANAGER packages and plans by using ACTssidP (bind packages) and ACTssidB (bind plans) (where ssid is the subsystem ID).
DASD MANAGER PLUS at a version earlier than 5.4.04	Migrate the DB2 catalog and install DASD MANAGER PLUS version 6.2. Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Provided that the earlier version of DASD MANAGER PLUS still exists, remove the product that is in toleration mode.</li> <li>2. Rebind all DASD MANAGER PLUS packages and plans for the earlier version by using ASUssidP (bind packages) and ASUssidB (bind plans) (where ssid is the subsystem ID). Any data that you added while you were in exploitation mode will not be available.</li> </ol>
DASD MANAGER PLUS 5.4.04	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Migrate the DB2 catalog.</li> <li>2. Modify the ASUDB26E worklist member in the <i>HLQ.JCL</i> library.</li> <li>3. Execute the worklist using a modified copy of the \$C40INST job that the JCL job dialog generated.</li> <li>4. Rebind all DASD MANAGER PLUS packages and plans by using ASUssidP (bind packages) and ASUssidB (bind plans) (where ssid is the subsystem ID).</li> </ol> <p>Then you will be operating in toleration mode.</p>	Rebind all DASD MANAGER PLUS packages and plans by using ASUssidP (bind packages) and ASUssidB (bind plans) (where ssid is the subsystem ID).
DASD MANAGER PLUS 6.1	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Migrate the DB2 catalog.</li> <li>2. Run <i>HLQ.CNTL(UPGRD5#6)</i>.</li> </ol> <p>Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.</p>	Rebind all DASD MANAGER PLUS packages and plans by using ASUssidP (bind packages) and ASUssidB (bind plans) (where ssid is the subsystem ID).

**Table G-4 Migrating DB2 Version 5 to Version 6 (Part 4 of 4)**

If You Are Using	To Migrate to Version 6	To Fallback to Version 5
catalog indirection and ALTER, CHANGE MANAGER, PATROL DB-Alter, or PATROL DB-Change Manager in toleration mode	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Install ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER version 7.3E. Then you will be operating in exploitation mode.</li> <li>2. Reinstall catalog indirection.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Provided that the earlier version of indirection still exists, remove the indirect copy or view that is in exploitation mode.</li> <li>2. Provided that the earlier version of ALTER (ALU), CHANGE MANAGER (ACM), PATROL DB-Alter (ACV), or PATROL DB-Change Manager (ACV) still exists in toleration mode, use the fallback procedures described for toleration mode to remove the product in exploitation mode.</li> <li>3. Rebind all indirect packages and plans for the earlier version by using <i>prdssidZ</i> (bind packages) and <i>prdssidB</i> (bind plans) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).</li> </ol>
catalog indirection and CATALOG MANAGER 6.1 or later	Reinstall catalog indirection.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Provided that the earlier version of indirection still exists, remove the indirect copy or view that is in exploitation mode.</li> <li>2. Provided that the earlier version of CATALOG MANAGER still exists in toleration mode, use the fallback procedures described for toleration mode to remove the product in exploitation mode.</li> <li>3. Rebind all indirect packages and plans for the earlier version by using <i>prdssidZ</i> (bind packages) (where <i>prd</i> is the product code and <i>ssid</i> is the subsystem ID).</li> </ol>

To maintain BMC Software Administrative Products when you create a new DB2 version 6 catalog, use the guidelines in Table G-5.

**Table G-5 Creating a New DB2 Version 6 Catalog**

If You Are Using	Then Install
any of the Administrative products	the following Administrative products: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER 7.3E (exploitation)</li> <li>• CATALOG MANAGER 7.3 (exploitation)</li> <li>• DASD MANAGER PLUS 6.2 (exploitation)</li> </ul>
catalog indirection	catalog indirection



---

# Index

## Symbols

\$C00DOC installation job 2-13  
\$C10VSAM installation job 2-13  
\$C30DOPT installation job 2-13  
\$C35BNDI installation job 2-13  
\$C40INST installation job 2-13  
\$C45COMD installation job 2-13  
\$C45COPY installation job 2-13  
\$C57LDTB installation job 2-13  
\$xnnBNDI installation job 2-15  
\$xnnCOPY installation job 2-15  
\$xnnDOPT installation job 2-5  
\$xnnINST installation job 2-15  
\$xnnMIG installation job 2-15  
\*DATA, modifying in BMCDB2 CLIST 3-54  
//JOB JOB (&ZACCTNUM),’&PGMR’, POF  
keyword E-22

## A

ACA product code 3-45  
access  
    direct 2-19  
    indirect 2-19  
ACCESS parameter 3-75  
Access to parallelism feature, restricting 3-12  
ACF2 security, XIM 3-8  
ACM product code 2-3  
ACM\_PARALLEL\_MAXINIT= POF keyword  
E-11

ACM\_PARALLEL\_MININIT= POF keyword  
E-11  
ACM\_PARALLEL\_WORKLST= POF keyword  
E-11  
ACM\_PARALLEL\_XIMGRP= POF keyword  
E-11  
ACM\_PARALLEL\_XIMPROC= POF keyword  
E-12  
ACM\_PARALLEL\_XIMSTRT= POF keyword  
E-12  
ACM\_PARALLEL\_XIMTRCE= POF keyword  
E-12  
ACMC2CB member 3-25  
ACMC2CG member 3-25  
ACMC2CO member 3-25  
ACMCLDM member 3-27  
ACMDOPD1 DOPTs module 2-5  
ACMFRONT program 3-74  
ACMvrmc\_D\_MAIN collection ID 2-9  
ACMvrmcD synonym qualifier 2-8  
ACP product code 3-45  
ACPCvrmm plan 3-42  
ACPssidC ICOPY installation job 3-42  
ACT product code 2-3  
ACTCOMND command module 2-11  
ACTCSQBU package 3-39  
ACTCSQRH package 3-39  
ACTDDQRH package 3-39  
ACTDOPD1 DOPTs module 2-5  
ACTDOPT DOPT A-5, C-6  
ACTEMAIN program 3-74  
ACTIVATE command 3-15  
Activating XIM initiators 3-15  
ACTIVITY MONITOR product code 3-45

---

ACTJTEQ package 3-70  
 ACTPSS CLIST 3-48  
 ACTvrm\_D\_MAIN collection ID 2-9  
 ACTvrmD synonym qualifier 2-8  
 ACTvrmDB Bind/Rebind plan 3-19  
 ACTvrmDE Data Editor plan 3-19  
 ACTvrmDG Generate SQL plan 3-19  
 ACTvrmDH Utility Status Display plan 3-20  
 ACTvrmDK Command Generation and  
     Execution plan 3-20  
 ACTvrmDL Log Table maintenance plan 3-20  
 ACTvrmDM Display DB2 Catalog plan 3-20  
 ACTvrmDS Search plan 3-20  
 ACTvrmDU Grant Authorities plan 3-20  
 ACVPLAN DOPT A-5, C-6  
 ACVvrm\_D\_MAIN collection ID 2-9  
 ACVvrmDM Display Catalog plan 3-10  
 adding a client 4-38  
 adding products, BMCDB2PR panel 3-45  
 ADDLOAD1 POF keyword 3-38, 3-40, E-12  
 ADDLOAD2 POF keyword 3-38, 3-40, E-12  
 ADSN DOPT B-5  
 AEX product code 2-3  
 AEXAUNLD package 3-22  
 AEXESTDL package 3-22  
 AEXEUTID package 3-37, 3-43  
 AEXSQLIO package 3-22  
 AEXvrmAA Execution Monitor Entry plan 3-22  
 AEXvrmAM Execution Monitor plan 3-22  
 AEXvrmDA Execution Monitor Entry plan 3-22  
 AEXvrmDM Execution Monitor plan 3-22  
 AEXvrmHA Execution Monitor Entry plan 3-22  
 AEXvrmHM Execution Monitor plan 3-22  
 AJX#DSNS member 3-33  
 AJX#USRV member 3-33  
 AJXCOMPS member 3-34  
 AJXSTEPUSLIB member 3-38, 3-40, 3-43  
 AL product code 2-3  
 ALLC DOPT B-5  
 ALLOC DOPT A-5, C-6  
 allocating default options module, in BMCDB2  
     CLIST 3-62  
 ALM product code 3-45  
 ALP product code 3-45  
 ALTER  
     BMC Software Utilities interface 3-37  
     BMCALTER command 3-77  
     client installation 4-24  
     collection ID 2-9  
     creator name 2-11  
     data sets 1-9  
     database name 2-11  
     default option descriptions A-5  
     DOPTs A-2, B-2, C-2  
     DOPTs module 2-5  
     Execution plans 3-22  
     Fast Path Navigation 3-77  
     GUI, post-installation tasks 4-3  
     index space 1-9  
     installation requirements 1-6  
     migrating data to CHANGE MANAGER  
         2-32  
     object security 3-11  
     objects 1-9  
     plans 3-10  
     post-installation tasks 3-3  
     product code 2-3  
     program name 3-74  
     space requirements 1-9  
     synonym qualifiers 2-8  
     system requirements 1-6  
     table space 1-9  
     upgrading to CHANGE MANAGER 2-31  
     using catalog indirection 2-18  
     using DASD MANAGER PLUS 3-59  
     using with PeopleSoft 1-7  
     version equivalents 1-6  
 ALTER data sets  
     CLIST 1-9  
     CNTL 1-9  
     DBRM 1-9  
     ISPLLIB 1-10, 1-12  
     ISPPLIB 1-10, 1-12  
     LOAD 1-9  
     MLIB 1-9  
     MSG 1-9  
     MSGTEXT 1-9  
     PLIB 1-10  
     SCRIPT 1-10  
     SLIB 1-10  
     TLIB 1-10  
 ALTER DOPTs  
     ACTDOPT A-5  
     ACVPLAN A-5  
     ALLOC A-5  
     AMS A-6

---

ANP A-6	JC5 A-11
ARCHPPREF A-6	JCLCLEAN A-11
ARCHPS A-6	JDSN A-11
ARCHSS A-6	JDSNBG A-12
ARCHUNIT A-6	JDSNE A-12
ASUDOPT 3-59, A-6	LOCATION A-12
ATTN A-6	LOCK A-12
AUTHSW A-6	LOG A-12
BMCCHECK A-7	MAXSYSUT A-12
BMCCOPY A-7	MGMTCLAS A-12
BMCFASTL A-7	PARTCPY A-12
BMCLOAD A-7	PC A-12
BMCUNLD A-8	PIC A-12
BPOOLIX A-8	POFDS A-12
BPOOLTS A-8	PRODUCT A-13
CATAUDIT A-8	REBLD A-13
CATRECOV A-8	RECOV A-13
CCSID A-8	RECVDD01 A-9
COPYDD01 A-9	RECVDD02 A-9
COPYDD02 A-9	RECVMAX A-13
DASDMAN 3-59, A-9	RECVMAXU A-13
DATACLAS A-9	RECVREF A-13
DATE A-9	RECVPS A-13
DB2CAT A-9	RECVSS A-13
DB2CT A-9	RECVUNIT A-14
DBRM1 A-9	REORG A-14
DBRM2 A-9	REORGALT A-14
DBRM3 A-9	SDSN A-14
DBRMLIB A-9	SDSNE A-14
DEFERUIX A-9	SEKI A-14
DISCARDS A-10	SL1 A-14
DYNCOPY A-10	SL2 A-14
DYNUNLD A-10	SL3 A-14
EAP A-10	SL4 A-14
EIP A-10	SL5 A-14
ENVP A-10	SPP A-14
EPP A-10	SSID A-15
EURO A-10	STATHIST A-15
FEP A-11	STATS A-15
GLID A-11	STOPCOMM A-15
HSMVOL A-11	STORCLAS A-15
IMP A-11	SWPS A-15
ISPSLIB A-11	SWSS A-15
IXTYPE A-11	SWU A-15
JC1 A-11	SYNCPNT A-15, C-18
JC2 A-11	SYSCMAX A-15
JC3 A-11	SYSCMAXU A-16
JC4 A-11	SYSCREF A-16

---

SYSBCPS A-16	ALUvrmcD synonym qualifier 2-8
SYSBCSS A-16	ALvrmcDA Analysis plan 3-10
SYSBCUNIT A-16	ALvrmcDE Environment plan 3-10
SYSRMAX A-16	ALvrmcDF Front End plan 3-10
SYSRMAXU A-16	ALvrmcDI Import plan 3-10
SYSRPREF A-16	ALvrmcDS Specification plan 3-10
SYSRPS A-16	AMS DOPT A-6, C-6
SYSRSS A-16	AMU product code 3-41
SYSRUNIT A-16	AMUTvrmm plan 3-42
SYSTYPE A-16	ANP DOPT A-6, C-6
SZDEVT A-16	AOPTS DOPT B-6
TABLEACC A-16	APF-authorized load library, sharing 3-31
TABLEALL A-17	APPC SNA, configuring 4-8
TAPE1 A-17	APPC/MVS configuration parameters 4-14
TAPE2 A-17	APPCPLM logon mode table 4-10
TAPE3 A-17	APPL statement 4-12
TIMEPARM A-17	application ID, modifying in BMCDB2 CLIST 3-60
TSOSX A-17	applying fixes and resolutions 3-3
UNLDCOLL A-17	APPTUNE product code 3-45
UNLDEMPT A-17	ARCH_DATACLASS POF keyword E-12
UPDSTATS A-17	ARCH_DATACLASS_ALT POF keyword E-12
UTILCOPY A-17	ARCH_EXPDT POF keyword E-12
VRM A-18	ARCH_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-12
VVALPROP A-17	ARCH_MGMTCLASS_ALT POF keyword E-12
WDC A-18	ARCH_PREFIX POF keyword E-12
WDSN A-18	ARCH_PRIQTY POF keyword E-13
WLPS A-18	ARCH_RETPD POF keyword E-13
WLSS A-18	ARCH_SECQTY POF keyword E-13
WLU A-18	ARCH_STACK POF keyword E-13
WMC A-18	ARCH_STORCLASS POF keyword E-13
WPS A-18	ARCH_STORCLASS_ALT POF keyword E-13
WSC A-18	ARCH_THRESH POF keyword E-13
WSS A-18	ARCH_UNIT POF keyword E-13
WU A-18	ARCH_UNIT_ALT POF keyword E-13
ALTER plans	ARCHPPREF DOPT A-6, C-6
ACVvrmDM 3-10	ARCHPS DOPT A-6, C-6
AEXvrmAA 3-22	ARCHSS DOPT A-6, C-6
AEXvrmAM 3-22	ARCHUNIT DOPT A-6, C-6
ALvrmcDA 3-10	ARM product code 3-45
ALvrmcDE 3-10	ARU product code 3-41
ALvrmcDF 3-10	ARUTvrmm plan 3-42
ALvrmcDI 3-10	ASQ product code 3-45
ALvrmcDS 3-10	ASU product code 2-3
ALTFRONT program 3-74	ASUDOPD1 DOPTs module 2-5
ALTLIB command 1-18	ASUDOPT DOPT 3-59, A-6, C-7
ALU product code 2-3	ASUFMAIN program 3-74
ALUDOPD1 DOPTs module 2-5	
ALUvrmc_D_MAIN collection ID 2-9	

---

ASURVIEW member 3-28  
 ASUvrn\_D\_MAIN collection ID 2-9  
 ASUvrnD synonym qualifier 2-8  
 ASUvrnDJ BMCTRIG Utility Job Generation  
   plan 3-21  
 ASUvrnDR Report Display plan 3-21  
 ASUvrnDS Statistics Collection plan 3-21  
 ASUvrnDX Cross Reference Utility Access  
   plan 3-21  
 ASUvrnDZ Browse Statistics plan 3-21  
 ATBLJOB member 4-10  
 ATBLMODE member 4-10  
 ATTN DOPT A-6, C-7  
 AUDIT DOPT B-6  
 authorization  
   requirements 1-13  
   verifying 3-7  
 authorizations, DB2 and data set, XIM 3-8  
 AUTHSW DOPT A-6, C-7, D-4  
 AUXRELS DOPT B-6

## B

BASDIAG DOPT C-7  
 BASE DOPT C-8  
 BASEID parameter 3-75  
 BDSN DOPT B-6  
 BIND PACKAGE options, CATALOG  
   MANAGER 3-70  
 BINDFAIL POF keyword E-13  
 binding, packages and plans 3-31  
 BLRP\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-13  
 BLRP\_DATACLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-13  
 BLRP\_EXPDT POF keyword E-13  
 BLRP\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-13  
 BLRP\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-14  
 BLRP\_PREFIX POF keyword E-14  
 BLRP\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-14  
 BLRP\_RETPD POF keyword E-14  
 BLRP\_SECQTY POF keyword E-14  
 BLRP\_STACK POF keyword E-14  
 BLRP\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-14  
 BLRP\_STORCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-14  
 BLRP\_THRESH POF keyword E-14  
 BLRP\_UNIT POF keyword E-14  
 BLRP\_UNIT\_ALT POF keyword E-14  
 BLRPPREF DOPT C-8

BLRPPS DOPT C-8  
 BLRPSS DOPT C-8  
 BLRPUNIT DOPT C-8  
 BMC Admin Server  
   adding CPI-C symbolic destination 4-18  
   configuring APPC SNA 4-8  
   configuring TCP/IP 4-4  
   defining a LU for the SNA Gateway Server  
     4-19  
   defining an APPC LU to the SNA Gateway  
     4-17  
   defining APPC logon mode 4-10  
   defining local LU to APPC/MVS 4-12  
   defining local LU to VTAM 4-11  
   defining the APPC LU to VTAM 4-16  
   defining the SNA Gateway Server Control  
     Point Name 4-19  
   enabling use of DB2 secondary  
     authorizations 4-23  
   overriding the CPI-C Symbolic Destination  
     Name table 4-20  
   post-installation tasks 4-3  
   setting up 4-9  
   setting up the SNA client 4-20  
   setting up the SNA Gateway Server 4-16  
   verifying the host-code page 4-22  
   verifying the network 4-26  
 BMC Software products  
   installing at different times 1-14  
   installing multiple releases 1-17  
 BMC Software Utilities, interacting with  
   ALTER 3-37  
   CATALOG MANAGER 3-39  
   CHANGE MANAGER 3-37  
   DASD MANAGER PLUS 3-41  
 BMC\_CHECK\_LOAD= POF keyword E-14  
 BMC\_CHECK\_OPTS= POF keyword E-14  
 BMC\_COPY\_LOAD= POF keyword E-15  
 BMC\_COPY\_OPTS= POF keyword E-15  
 BMC\_LOAD\_LOAD= POF keyword E-15  
 BMC\_LOAD\_OPTS= POF keyword E-15  
 BMC\_RECOVER\_LOAD= POF keyword E-15  
 BMC\_RECOVER\_OPTS= POF keyword E-15  
 BMC\_REORG\_LOAD= POF keyword E-16  
 BMC\_REORG\_OPTS= POF keyword E-16  
 BMC\_UNLOAD\_LOAD= POF keyword E-16  
 BMC\_UNLOAD\_OPTS= POF keyword E-16  
 BMC\_UTIL\_SYNC synonym 3-37, 3-39, 3-43

---

BMC\_UTIL\_SYNC2 synonym 3-37, 3-39, 3-43  
 BMC\_UTILITY synonym 3-37, 3-39, 3-43  
 BMCACtvr database and creator name 2-11  
 BMCADMF1 CLIST 3-78  
 BMCADMF2 CLIST 3-78  
 BMCAKMFG task 4-7  
 BMCALTER command 3-77  
 BMCALvrc database and creator name 2-11  
 BMCASUvr database and creator name 2-11  
 BMCCAT command 3-77  
 BMCHECK DOPT A-7, C-8  
 BMCCHG command 3-77  
 BMCcMvrc database and creator name 2-11  
 BMCCOPY DOPT A-7, C-8  
 BMCCVIEW member 2-23  
 BMCDASD command 3-77  
 BMCDB2 CLIST  
     adding a product 3-54  
     allocating default options module 3-62  
     allocating indirect default options module 2-19  
     application ID or profile for installation E-2  
     BMCDDB2C variable 3-52  
     BMCDDB2P variable 3-52  
     BMCDDB2T variable 3-72  
     CONTAB command 3-76  
     editing 3-51  
     editing variables 3-52  
     enabling 3-48  
     GENTABLE variable 3-52  
     improving performance 3-52  
     installation 1-18  
     invoking explicitly 3-72  
     invoking implicitly 3-72  
     invoking session profile command 3-71  
     ISPF interface considerations 1-18  
     modifying control table 3-54  
     restricting users from CATALOG  
         MANAGER functionality 3-65  
     setting locking options 3-69  
     specifying an entry panel 3-67  
     supporting catalog indirection 3-62  
     supporting subsequent DB2 subsystems 3-62  
     updating with member BMCDDB2CI 3-62  
     updating with member BMCDDB2SS 3-62  
     using DASD MANAGER PLUS within  
         ALTER or CHANGE MANAGER 3-59  
 BMCDB2 command 3-73  
 BMCDDB2C variable 3-52  
 BMCDDB2CI member 3-62  
 BMCDDB2H panel  
     generated interface 1-18  
     generating 3-52  
 BMCDDB2P variable 3-52  
 BMCDDB2P2 panel  
     generated interface 1-18  
     generating 3-52  
 BMCDDB2P2 panel, DB2 SSID field 3-72  
 BMCDDB2PR panel  
     adding Indirect option 3-47  
     adding products 3-45  
     bypassing 3-74  
     DB2 SSID field 3-72  
     generated interface 1-17, 1-18  
     generating 3-52  
 BMCDDB2SS member 3-62  
 BMCDDB2T variable 3-72  
 BMCDDB2TB panel  
     generated interface 1-18  
     generating 3-52  
     verifying 3-76  
 BMCDDB2TB table 1-17  
 BMCDRVc CLIST 3-48  
 BMCFASTL DOPT A-7, C-8  
 BMCHIST table 3-39  
 BMCIPROF DD statement 4-13  
 BMCLOAD DOPT A-7, C-8  
 BMCMSG CLIST 3-48, 3-49, 3-76  
 BMCSTATS option 3-41  
 BMCSYNC table 3-37, 3-39, 3-43  
 BMCUNLD DOPT A-8, C-8  
 BMCUTIL table 3-37, 3-39, 3-43  
 BOPTS DOPT B-6  
 BPLAN DOPT B-6  
 BPOOLIX DOPT A-8, C-8  
 BPOOLTS DOPT A-8, C-9  
 BRPTDIAG DOPT C-9  
 BRPTDSN DOPT C-9

---

## C

- CA-ACF2 for DB2, XIM 3-8
- CAT\_LOAD POF keyword E-16
- catalog 2-22
  - catalog access, controlling 2-23
  - catalog contention, reducing 2-22
  - catalog copy, using for catalog indirection 2-21
  - catalog indirection
    - controlling catalog access 2-23
    - customizing the interface 3-47
    - implementing 2-19
    - improving performance 3-5, 3-7
    - installing 2-24
    - ISPF interface considerations 3-47
    - maintaining 2-19
    - naming conventions 2-20
    - overview 2-18
    - post-installation considerations 3-47
    - reducing catalog contention 2-22
    - specifying synonym qualifiers 2-21
    - specifying the collection ID 2-20
    - specifying the default options module 2-19
    - specifying the plan name 2-20
    - supported by member BMCDB2CI 3-62
    - using a copy of catalog 2-21
    - using a view of catalog 2-23
    - with the Administrative products 2-18
- CATALOG MANAGER
  - BIND PACKAGE options 3-70
  - BMC Software Utilities interface 3-39
  - BMCCAT command 3-77
  - catalog indirection considerations 2-20
  - collection ID 2-9
  - collection nicknames 2-10
  - command module 2-11
  - CONNECT command 3-63
  - creator name 2-11
  - CURRENTDATA value 3-70
  - data sets 1-10
  - database name 2-11
  - default option descriptions B-5
  - default options processing 2-20
  - DOPTs module 2-5
  - entry panel 3-67
  - Fast Path Navigation 3-77
  - index space 1-10
  - initial command 3-65
  - installation requirements 1-7
  - invoking session profile command 3-71
  - ISOLATION level 3-70
  - objects 1-10
  - plans 3-19
  - post-installation tasks 3-3
  - product code 2-3
  - program name 3-74
  - SEARCH command 2-22
  - setting locking options 3-69
  - space requirements 1-10
  - synonym qualifiers 2-8
  - system requirements 1-7
  - table space 1-10
  - using catalog indirection 2-18
  - using stored procedures 3-29
  - WLM environment 3-29
- CATALOG MANAGER CURRENTDATA value 3-70
- CATALOG MANAGER data sets
  - CLIST 1-10
  - CNTL 1-10
  - DBRM 1-10
  - LOAD 1-10
  - LOADE 1-11
  - MLIB 1-10
  - MSGs 1-10
  - PLIB 1-10
  - SLIB 1-10
  - TLIB 1-11
- CATALOG MANAGER DOPTs
  - ADSN B-5
  - ALLC B-5
  - AOPTS B-6
  - AUDIT B-6
  - AUXRELS B-6
  - BDSN B-6
  - BOPTS B-6
  - BPLAN B-6
  - CATOP B-6
  - CHECKDE B-6
  - CHECKS B-6
  - CHECKS2 B-7
  - CMAX B-7
  - COLAUTH B-7
  - COLDISH B-7
  - COLDISS B-7
  - COLDIST B-7

---

COLSTAT B-7	LOBSTAH B-13
COLUMNH B-7	LOBSTAT B-13
COLUMNS B-8	LOCATIO B-13
COMD B-8	LPLAN B-13
CONSTDE B-8	LULIST B-13
COPY B-8	LUMODES B-13
CRS B-8	LUNAMES B-14
CUP B-8	MAX B-14
DATABAS B-8	MODESEL B-14
DATATYP B-8	MPLAN B-14
DBAUTH B-9	PACKAGE B-14
DBCS B-9	PACKAUT B-14
DBRM B-9	PACKDEP B-14
DPLAN B-9	PACKLIS B-14
DPT B-9	PACKSTM B-15
DRO B-9	PARMS B-15
EDSN B-9	PDSN B-15
EPLAN B-9	PKSYSTE B-15
ESC B-9	PLAN B-15
FIELDS B-10	PLANAUT B-15
FOREIGN B-10	PLANDEP B-16
GPLAN B-10	PLP B-16
GRPAT B-10	PLSYSTE B-16
HDAL B-10	PROCEDU B-16
HDIX B-10	RCCOL B-16
HDPL B-10	RELS B-16
HDSY B-10	RESAUTH B-16
HDTB B-10	ROUTINA B-16
HDTS B-10	ROUTINE B-17
HDVW B-10	ROUTOPT B-17
HPLAN 3-39, B-10	ROUTSRC B-17
HRS B-10	SCHEMAA B-17
ICSYC B-10	SDSN B-17
INDEXES B-11	SPLAN B-17
INDEXH B-11	STMT B-17
INDEXPA B-11	STOGROU B-17
INDEXPH B-11	STRINGS B-18
INDEXSH B-11	SYNONYM B-18
INDEXST B-11	TABAUTH B-18
IPNAMES B-11	TABCNST B-18
JARCONT B-12	TABLEPA B-18
JAROBJT B-12	TABLES B-18
JAVOPTS B-12	TABLESH B-18
JDSN B-12	TABLESP B-19
KCOLUSE B-12	TABPRTH B-19
KEYS B-12	TABSTAH B-19
KPLAN B-12	TABSTAT B-19
LDSN B-13	TRIGGER B-19



---

- TRS B-19
- UCDSP B-19
- UCOMD B-19
- UPLAN B-19
- USERAUT B-20
- USERNAM B-20
- UWLVL B-20
- VIEWDEP B-20
- VIEWS B-20
- VOLUMES B-20
- WDSN B-20
- XDSN B-20
- CATALOG MANAGER ISOLATION level 3-70
- CATALOG MANAGER plans
  - ACTvrmDB 3-19
  - ACTvrmDE 3-19
  - ACTvrmDG 3-19
  - ACTvrmDH 3-20
  - ACTvrmDK 3-20
  - ACTvrmDL 3-20
  - ACTvrmDM 3-20
  - ACTvrmDS 3-20
  - ACTvrmDU 3-20
- catalog to catalog comparison
  - implementing 3-24
  - installing on local subsystem 3-24
  - installing on remote subsystems 3-25
  - requirements 1-7
- CATAUDIT DOPT A-8, C-9, D-4
- CATOP DOPT B-6
- CA-Top Secret for DB2
  - XIM 3-8
- CATRECOV DOPT A-8, C-9, D-5
- CCSID DOPT A-8, C-9
- CDLDSN DOPT C-9
- CDLPS DOPT C-9
- CDLRDSN DOPT C-9
- CDLSS DOPT C-10
- CDLU DOPT C-10
- CFUNC parameter 3-74
- CHANGE ACCUMULATION PLUS product
  - code 3-45
- CHANGE MANAGER
  - BMC Software Utilities interface 3-37
  - BMCCHG command 3-77
  - catalog to catalog comparison 3-24
  - catalog to catalog comparison requirements 1-7
  - client installation 4-24
  - collection ID 2-9
  - creator name 2-11
  - data sets 1-11
  - database name 2-11
  - default option descriptions C-6
  - DOPTs module 2-5
  - Execution plans 3-22
  - Fast Path Navigation 3-77
  - GUI, post-installation tasks 4-3
  - index space 1-11
  - INFOBMC command 3-27
  - installation requirements 1-6, 1-7
  - migrating data from ALTER 2-32
  - object security 3-11
  - objects 1-11
  - plans 3-10, 3-11
  - post-installation tasks 3-3
  - product code 2-3
  - program name 3-74
  - RECOVER PLUS installation requirement 1-6
  - space requirements 1-11
  - synonym qualifiers 2-8
  - system requirements 1-6
  - table space 1-11
  - upgrading from ALTER 2-31
  - using catalog indirection 2-18
  - using DASD MANAGER PLUS 3-59
  - using the INFOBMC command 3-27
  - using with PeopleSoft 1-7
  - version equivalents 1-6
- CHANGE MANAGER data sets
  - CLIST 1-11
  - CNTL 1-11
  - DBRM 1-11
  - LOAD 1-11
  - MLIB 1-11
  - MSG 1-11
  - MSGTEXT 1-11
  - PLIB 1-11
  - SCRIPT 1-11
  - SLIB 1-11
  - TLIB 1-11
- CHANGE MANAGER DOPTs
  - ACTDOPT C-6
  - ACVPLAN C-6
  - ALLOC C-6

---

AMS C-6	DISCARDS C-11
ANP C-6	DYNCOPY C-11
ARCHPPREF C-6	DYNUNLD C-11
ARCHPS C-6	EAP C-11
ARCHSS C-6	EIP C-12
ARCHUNIT C-6	ENVP C-12
ASUDOPT 3-59, C-7	EPP C-12
ATTN C-7	EURO C-12
AUTHSW C-7	FEP C-12
BASDIAG C-7	GLID C-12
BASE C-8	HSMVOL C-12
BLRPPREF C-8	IMP C-12
BLRPPS C-8	IMPDIAG C-12
BLRPSS C-8	ISPSLIB C-12
BLRPUNIT C-8	IXTYPE C-12
BMCHECK C-8	JC1 C-13
BMCCOPY C-8	JC2 C-13
BMCFASTL C-8	JC3 C-13
BMCLOAD C-8	JC4 C-13
BMCUNLD C-8	JC5 C-13
BPOOLIX C-8	JCLCLEAN C-13
BPOOLTS C-9	JDSN C-13
BRPTDIAG C-9	JDSNB C-13
BRPTDSN C-9	JDSNBG C-13
CATAUDIT C-9	JDSNBR C-14
CATRECOV C-9	JDSNC C-13
CCSID C-9	JDSNCPL C-13
CDLDSN C-9	JDSNE C-14
CDLPS C-9	JDSNI C-14
CDLRDSN C-9	LOCATION C-14
CDLSS C-10	LOCK C-14
CDLU C-10	LOG C-14
CMP C-10	MAXSYSUT C-14
CMPDIAG C-10	MGMTCLAS C-14
COPYDD01 C-10	PARALLEL C-14
COPYDD02 C-10	PARTCPY C-14
CPLDIAG C-10	PC C-14
CPLWDSN C-10	PIC C-15
DASDMAN 3-59, C-10	POFDS C-15
DATACLAS C-10	PRODUCT C-15
DATE C-10	REBLD C-15
DB2CAT C-11	RECOV C-15
DB2CT C-11	RECVDD01 C-10
DBRM1 C-11	RECVDD02 C-10
DBRM2 C-11	RECVMAX C-15
DBRM3 C-11	RECVMAXU C-15
DBRMLIB C-11	RECVREF C-15
DEFERUIX C-11	RECVPS C-16

---

RECVSS C-16  
RECVUNIT C-16  
REORG C-16  
REORGALT C-16  
RPTPL C-16  
SDSN C-16  
SDSNE C-16  
SEQI C-16  
SL1 C-16  
SL2 C-16  
SL3 C-17  
SL4 C-17  
SL5 C-17  
SPP C-17  
SSID C-17  
STATHIST C-17  
STATS C-17  
STOPCOMM C-17  
STORCLAS C-17  
SWPS C-17  
SWSS C-17  
SWU C-17  
SYSCMAX C-18  
SYSCMAXU C-18  
SYSCPREF C-18  
SYSCPS C-18  
SYSCSS C-18  
SYSCUNIT C-18  
SYSRMAX C-18  
SYSRMAXU C-18  
SYSRPREF C-18  
SYSRPS C-18  
SYSRSS C-18  
SYSRUNIT C-18  
SYSTYPE C-19  
SZDEVT C-19  
TABLEACC C-19  
TABLEALL C-19  
TAPE1 C-19  
TAPE2 C-19  
TAPE3 C-19  
TIMEPARM C-19  
TSOSX C-19  
UNLDCOLL C-19  
UNLDEMPT C-19  
UPDSTATS C-19  
UTILCOPY C-20  
VRM C-20

VVALPROP C-20  
WDC C-20  
WDSN C-20  
WLPS C-20  
WLSS C-20  
WLU C-20  
WMC C-20  
WPS C-20  
WSC C-20  
WSS C-20  
WU C-20  
CHANGE MANAGER plans  
  AEXvrmHA 3-22  
  AEXvrmHM 3-22  
  CMvrmcDA 3-10  
  CMvrmcDB 3-11  
  CMvrmcDC 3-11  
  CMvrmcDE 3-10  
  CMvrmcDF 3-10  
  CMvrmcDI 3-10  
  CMvrmcDR 3-11  
  CMvrmcDS 3-10  
CHECK+\_LOAD POF keyword 3-38, 3-40  
CHECK+\_LOAD= POF keyword E-16, E-29  
CHECKDE DOPT B-6  
CHECKDOPT= POF keyword E-17  
CHECKS DOPT B-6  
CHECKS2 DOPT B-7  
CHGMAN\_LOAD POF keyword E-17  
CHKSQNUM CLIST 3-48  
CLEANUP\_RC= POF keyword E-17  
client files, verifying 4-34  
clients  
  adding 4-38  
  configuring 4-35  
  disk space requirements 1-6  
  files installed on 4-34  
  hardware requirements 1-6  
  installation requirements 1-6, 4-24  
  installing 4-24, 4-31  
  maintaining 4-37  
  platforms supported 1-6  
  product requirements 1-6  
  protocols supported 1-6  
  reinstalling 4-41  
  starting 4-35  
  stopping 4-35  
  supported environments 4-24

---

- troubleshooting installation 4-34
- uninstalling 4-39, 4-40
- CLIST data set
  - ALTER 1-9
  - CATALOG MANAGER 1-10
  - CHANGE MANAGER 1-11
  - DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13
- CLISTs
  - ACTPSS 3-48
  - BMCDDB2 3-48
  - BMCDRIVC 3-48
  - BMCMMSG 3-48
  - CHKSQNUM 3-48
  - enabling 1-18
  - executing 1-18
  - FIXSQSUM 3-48
  - invoking 3-72
  - RSTRIG 3-48
  - UPDTBMC 3-46
  - WL2DDL 3-48
  - XGRANT 3-48
- cloning products 1-15, 2-25
- CLSTEXEC parameter 3-73
- CM product code 2-3
- CMAX DOPT B-7
- CMP DOPT C-10
- CMPDIAG DOPT C-10
- CMvrmcDA Analysis plan 3-10
- CMvrmcDB Baseline plan 3-11
- CMvrmcDC Compare plan 3-11
- CMvrmcDE Environment plan 3-10
- CMvrmcDF Front End plan 3-10
- CMvrmcDI Import plan 3-10
- CMvrmcDR Report plan 3-11
- CMvrmcDS Specification plan 3-10
- CNTL data set
  - ALTER 1-9
  - BIND packages and plans 3-32
  - CATALOG MANAGER 1-10
  - CHANGE MANAGER 1-11
  - DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13
  - XIM 1-12
- CNTL\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-17
- CNTL\_EXPDT POF keyword E-17
- CNTL\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-17
- CNTL\_PREFIX POF keyword E-17
- CNTL\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-17
- CNTL\_RETPD POF keyword E-17
- CNTL\_SECQTY POF keyword E-17
- CNTL\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-17
- CNTL\_UNIT POF keyword E-17
- COLAUTH DOPT B-7
- COLDISH DOPT B-7
- COLDISS DOPT B-7
- COLDIST DOPT B-7
- collection IDs
  - ALTER 2-9
  - CATALOG MANAGER 2-9
  - CHANGE MANAGER 2-9
  - specifying 2-9
- collection nicknames 2-10
- COLSTAT DOPT B-7
- COLUMNH DOPT B-7
- COLUMNS DOPT B-8
- COMD DOPT B-8
- command module 2-11
- communication protocols 1-6
- compiling the SLIB 3-34
- configuration parameters, APPC/MVS 4-14
- configuring
  - clients 4-35
  - OS/390 4-6
- CONNECT command 3-77
- CONSTDE DOPT B-8
- CONTAB command 3-76
- control table
  - adding a product 3-54
  - allocating application ID 3-60
  - editing CATALOG MANAGER servers 3-63
  - locating 3-53
  - modifying 3-53
  - modifying the application ID 3-60
- control table, modifying in BMCDDB2 CLIST 3-54
- controlling access
  - XIM 3-8
- COORDINATED RECOVERY MANAGER
  - product code 3-45
- COPY DOPT B-8
- COPY PLUS
  - product code 3-45
  - synonyms 3-42
  - using with DASD MANAGER PLUS 3-41
- COPY+\_LOAD POF keyword 3-38, 3-40
- COPY+\_LOAD= POF keyword E-18
- COPYDD01 DOPT A-9, C-10

COPYDD02 DOPT A-9, C-10  
 COPYDOPT= POF keyword E-18  
 copying the installation image to a network drive  
   4-30  
 CPI-C Symbolic Destination Name table 4-20  
 CPLAN DOPT D-5  
 CPLDIAG DOPT C-10  
 CPLWDSN DOPT C-10  
 creator names  
   ALTER 2-11  
   CATALOG MANAGER 2-11  
   CHANGE MANAGER 2-11  
   DASD MANAGER PLUS 2-11  
   specifying 2-10  
 Cross-System Image Manager (XIM)  
   initiator procedure 2-17, F-4  
   parameters F-3  
 Cross-System Image Manager, see also XIM  
 CRR product code 3-45  
 CRS DOPT B-8  
 CUP DOPT B-8  
 CURRENTDATA value, CATALOG  
   MANAGER 3-70  
 cursor stability ISOLATION value 3-70  
 customization  
   documents 1-2  
   generating JCL 2-12  
   options 2-2  
   products 2-2  
   running JCL 2-12  
   specifying collection IDs 2-9  
   specifying collection nicknames 2-10  
   specifying command module 2-11  
   specifying creator names 2-10  
   specifying database names 2-10  
   specifying product identifiers 2-7  
   specifying synonym qualifiers 2-7  
   using OS/390 and z/OS Installer 2-2  
   XIM 2-17

## D

DASD devices, unit name F-4  
 DASD MANAGER PLUS  
   BMC Software Utilities interface 3-41  
   BMCDASD command 3-77  
   BMCSTATS option 3-41

creator name 2-11  
 data sets 1-13  
 database name 2-11  
 default option descriptions D-4  
 DOPTs D-2  
 DOPTs module 2-5  
 Execution plans 3-22  
 Fast Path Navigation 3-77  
 gathering statistics with INFOBMC 3-27  
 implementing QMF report feature 3-28  
 index space 1-12  
 installation requirements 1-7  
 objects 1-12  
 plans 3-21  
 post-installation tasks 3-3  
 product code 2-3  
 program name 3-74  
 QMF reports 3-28  
 space requirements 1-12  
 synonym qualifiers 2-8  
 system requirements 1-7  
 table space 1-12  
   using with COPY PLUS 3-41  
   using with LOADPLUS 3-41  
   using with REORG PLUS 3-41  
   using within ALTER 3-59  
   using within CHANGE MANAGER 3-59  
 DASD MANAGER PLUS data sets  
   CLIST 1-13  
   CNTL 1-13  
   DBRM 1-13  
   LOAD 1-13  
   MLIB 1-13  
   MSGs 1-13  
   PLIB 1-13  
   QMFFORM 1-13  
   QMFPROC 1-13  
   QMFQRY 1-13  
   SLIB 1-13  
   TLIB 1-13  
 DASD MANAGER PLUS plans  
   AEXvrmDA 3-22  
   AEXvrmDM 3-22  
   ASUvrmDJ 3-21  
   ASUvrmDR 3-21  
   ASUvrmDS 3-21  
   ASUvrmDX 3-21  
   ASUvrmDZ 3-21

---

<p>DASD_LOAD POF keyword E-18</p> <p>DASDMAN DOPT 3-59, A-9, C-10</p> <p>data sets</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ALTER 1-9</li> <li>CATALOG MANAGER 1-10</li> <li>CHANGE MANAGER 1-11</li> <li>CNTL 3-28</li> <li>DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13</li> <li>HLQ.CNTL 2-5</li> <li>HLQ.INSTALL.JCL 2-5</li> <li>MSGs 3-49</li> <li>SDSNEXIT 4-23</li> <li>SLIB 3-34</li> <li>SYSUDUMP 1-19</li> </ul> <p>Data sharing environment</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>invoking CHANGE MANAGER 1-8</li> <li>requirements 1-8</li> <li>using DSNEXT concatenation 1-8</li> <li>using DSNLOAD concatenation 1-8</li> </ul> <p>DATA_PACKER_LOAD POF keyword 3-38, 3-40, E-18</p> <p>DATABAS DOPT B-8</p> <p>Database Administration for DB2 password 1-8, 3-7</p> <p>database names</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ALTER 2-11</li> <li>CATALOG MANAGER 2-11</li> <li>CHANGE MANAGER 2-11</li> <li>DASD MANAGER PLUS 2-11</li> <li>specifying 2-10</li> </ul> <p>DATACLAS DOPT A-9, C-10, D-5</p> <p>DATASETSIZING POF keyword E-18</p> <p>data-sharing members 3-55</p> <p>DATATYP DOPT B-8</p> <p>DATAWK_NBR POF keyword E-18</p> <p>DATAWK_UNIT POF keyword E-18</p> <p>DATE DOPT A-9, C-10, D-5</p> <p>DB2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>migrating to Version 6 G-7</li> <li>migrating to Version 7 G-3</li> <li>secondary authorizations for BMC Admin Server 4-23</li> </ul> <p>DB2 structures, reusing 1-15</p> <p>DB2 subsystem name, specifying 4-36</p> <p>DB2CAT DOPT A-9, C-11, D-5</p> <p>DB2CT DOPT A-9, C-11</p> <p>DB2EXIT POF keyword E-18</p> <p>DB2LOAD POF keyword E-18</p>	<p>DBAUTH DOPT B-9</p> <p>DBCS DOPT B-9</p> <p>DBRM data set</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ALTER 1-9</li> <li>CATALOG MANAGER 1-10</li> <li>CHANGE MANAGER 1-11</li> <li>DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13</li> </ul> <p>DBRM DOPT B-9</p> <p>DBRM library 3-32</p> <p>DBRM1 DOPT A-9, C-11</p> <p>DBRM2 DOPT A-9, C-11</p> <p>DBRM3 DOPT A-9, C-11</p> <p>DBRMLIB DD statement 3-32</p> <p>DBRMLIB DOPT A-9, C-11</p> <p>DDM product code 3-45</p> <p>DDT product code 3-45</p> <p>DEF_GDG_BASE POF keyword E-18</p> <p>DEF_GDG_LIMIT POF keyword E-18</p> <p>DEF_GDG_NOSCR POF keyword E-19</p> <p>DEF_GDG2_LIMIT POF keyword E-19</p> <p>default option descriptions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ALTER A-5</li> <li>CATALOG MANAGER B-5</li> <li>CHANGE MANAGER C-6</li> <li>DASD MANAGER PLUS D-4</li> </ul> <p>default options module</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>\$xnnDOPT 2-5</li> <li>default options 2-5</li> <li>direct access 2-19</li> <li>establishing 2-5</li> <li>generating for each SSID 2-6</li> <li>implementing for CATALOG MANAGER 2-21</li> <li>indirect access 2-19</li> <li>modifying 2-5</li> <li>specifying for catalog indirection 2-19</li> <li>specifying separate modules 2-6</li> <li>using multiple modules 2-6</li> <li>using single module 2-6</li> </ul> <p>default options. <i>See</i> DOPTs 2-5</p> <p>DEFERUIX DOPT A-9, C-11</p> <p>descriptions for POF keywords E-11</p> <p>DIAG_MSGCLASS= POF keyword E-19</p> <p>DISC_DATACLASS POF keyword E-19</p> <p>DISC_DATACLASS_ALT POF keyword E-19</p> <p>DISC_EXPDT POF keyword E-19</p> <p>DISC_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-19</p> <p>DISC_MGMTCLASS_ALT POF keyword E-19</p>
--	---

---

DISC_PREFIX POF keyword E-19	JC1-JC5 D-6
DISC_PRIQTY POF keyword E-19	JCLCLEAN D-6
DISC_RETPD POF keyword E-19	JDSNE D-6
DISC_SECQTY POF keyword E-20	JPLAN D-6
DISC_STORCLASS POF keyword E-20	LOCATION D-6
DISC_STORCLASS_ALT POF keyword E-20	MGMTCLAS D-6
DISC_THRESH POF keyword E-20	OPNDB2ID D-6
DISC_UNIT POF keyword E-20	PRODUCT D-6
DISC_UNIT_ALT POF keyword E-20	RECVMAX D-6
DISCARDS DOPT A-10, C-11	RECVMAXU D-7
DISP_STATS POF keyword E-20	RECVREF D-7
DISP_VAR_DEBUG POF keyword E-20	RECVPS D-7
distributed systems software, installing the client	RECVSS D-7
4-33	RECVUNIT D-7
distribution data sets	RPLAN D-7
ALTER 1-9	SL1-SL5 D-7
CATALOG MANAGER 1-10	SPLAN D-7
CHANGE MANAGER 1-11	SSID D-7
DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13	STATAUTH D-7
XIM 1-12	STORCLAS D-8
distribution methods	SWPS D-8
ESD image 1-4	SWSS D-8
hard media 1-3	SWU D-8
distribution tape, space requirements	SYSCMAX D-8
ALTER 1-9	SYSCMAXU D-8
CATALOG MANAGER 1-10	SYSCPREF D-8
CHANGE MANAGER 1-11	SYSCPS D-8
DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-12	SYSCSS D-8
DLHQ DOPT D-5	SYSCUNIT D-8
DOM product code 3-45	SYSRMAX D-8
DOPTS	SYSRMAXU D-8
AUTHSW D-4	SYSRPREF D-8
CATAUDIT D-4	SYSRPS D-8
CATRECOV D-5	SYSRSS D-8
CPLAN D-5	SYSRUNIT D-8
DATACLAS D-5	SYSTYPE D-9
DATE D-5	SZDEVT D-9
DB2CAT D-5	TAPE1-TAPE3 D-9
DLHQT D-5	TIMEPARM D-9
DPLAN D-5	WDC D-9
DPNAM D-5	WDSN D-9
EAP D-5	WMC D-9
EIP D-5	WPS D-9
EPP D-5	WSS D-9
GDGDEF D-5	WU D-9
GDGLIM D-5	XPLAN D-10
IPLAN D-5	ZPLAN D-10
ISPTLIB D-5	

---

- DOPTs (default options)
  - ALTER A-2, B-2, C-2
  - DASD MANAGER PLUS D-2
  - overriding 2-5
  - POFDS 2-6, E-2
  - processing, CATALOG MANAGER 2-20
  - refreshing 3-79
  - sharing among DB2 subsystems 2-5, 3-57
- downloading fixes and resolutions 3-3
- DPLAN DOPT B-9, D-5
- DPNAM DOPT D-5
- DPT DOPT B-9
- DRO DOPT B-9
- DSN3@ATH member 4-23
- DSN3SATH member 4-23
- dynamic SQL 3-20
- DYNCOPY DOPT A-10, C-11
- DYNUNLD DOPT A-10, C-11

## E

- EAP DOPT A-10, C-11, D-5
- EDSN DOPT B-9
- EIP DOPT A-10, C-12, D-5
- Electronic Software Distribution. *See* ESD
- ELO locking option 3-69
- enabling CLISTs 1-18
- entry panel command in CATALOG MANAGER 3-67
- ENVI command 3-4, 3-76, 3-80
- environments supported 4-24
- ENVP DOPT A-10, C-12
- EPLAN DOPT B-9
- EPP DOPT A-10, C-12, D-5
- ERR\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-20
- ERR\_DATACLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-20
- ERR\_EXPDT POF keyword E-20
- ERR\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-20
- ERR\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-20
- ERR\_PREFIX POF keyword E-20
- ERR\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-20
- ERR\_RETPD POF keyword E-20
- ERR\_SECQTY POF keyword E-21
- ERR\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-21
- ERR\_STORCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-21
- ERR\_THRESH POF keyword E-21
- ERR\_UNIT POF keyword E-21

- ERR\_UNIT\_ALT POF keyword E-21
- ESC DOPT B-9
- ESD (Electronic Software Distribution) image
  - 1-4
- estimated space requirements 1-9
- EURO DOPT A-10, C-12
- EXEC\_LOAD POF keyword E-21
- executing CLISTs 1-18, 3-49
- Execution plans
  - names and descriptions 3-22
  - using in CATALOG MANAGER 3-23
- Execution, product code 2-3
- EXTENDED BUFFER MANAGER product code 3-45
- external stored procedures 3-29

## F

- Fast Path Navigation commands 3-77
- FEP DOPT A-11, C-12
- FIELDS DOPT B-10
- files, installed on client 4-34
- FILT\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-21
- FILT\_EXPDT POF keyword E-21
- FILT\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-21
- FILT\_PREFIX POF keyword E-21
- FILT\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-21
- FILT\_RETPD POF keyword E-21
- FILT\_SECQTY POF keyword E-21
- FILT\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-21
- FILT\_UNIT POF keyword E-21
- fixes, applying 3-3
- FIXSQSUM CLIST 3-48
- foreground processing 4-18
- FOREGROUND.STARTEDPROC parameter 4-7
- FOREIGN DOPT B-10



---

## G

GDG\_MODEL POF keyword E-21  
GDGDEF DOPT D-5  
GDGLIM DOPT D-5  
GDGs (generation data groups)

- generating JCL 3-33
- specifying 3-35

General resource profile 3-12  
GENERATE command 3-58, 3-64, 3-72  
generating JCL

- generation data groups 3-35
- JES3 environment 3-33
- product 3-33
- REGION statements 3-33

generation data groups. *See* GDGs  
GENTABLE variable 3-52, 3-54  
GLID DOPT A-11, C-12  
global parameters, XIM F-2  
GPLAN DOPT B-10  
group attach name 3-55  
GRPAT DOPT B-10

## H

HASHFAIL POF keyword E-22  
HASHWARNRC POF keyword E-22  
HDAL DOPT B-10  
HDIX DOPT B-10  
HDPL DOPT B-10  
HDSY DOPT B-10  
HDTB DOPT B-10  
HDTS DOPT B-10  
HDVW DOPT B-10  
help, configuring the client 4-37  
high-level qualifier. *See* HLQ  
HLQ (high-level qualifier) 1-9  
HLQ.CNTL data set 2-5, 2-6  
HLQ.INSTALL members

- T1s#ACTU 3-39
- T1S#AEXU 3-37, 3-43
- T1S#ASUC 3-42
- T1S#ASUL 3-42
- T1S#ASUR 3-42

HLQ.INSTALL.JCL data set 2-5  
host-code page, confirming 4-22  
HPLAN DOPT 3-39, B-10

HRS DOPT B-10  
HSMVOL DOPT A-11, C-12

## I

IBM RUNSTATS 1-14  
ICSYC DOPT B-10  
IMP DOPT A-11, C-12  
IMPDIAG DOPT C-12  
IMPORT command 3-28  
improving performance 1-14, 3-5, 3-52  
Inactivating XIM initiators 3-15  
index space

- ALTER 1-9
- CATALOG MANAGER 1-10
- CHANGE MANAGER 1-11
- DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-12

INDEXES DOPT B-11  
indexes, creating 3-5  
INDEXH DOPT B-11  
INDEXPA DOPT B-11  
INDEXPH DOPT B-11  
INDEXSH DOPT B-11  
INDEXST DOPT B-11  
Indirect option 3-47  
INFOBMC command 3-27  
INI#ACV member 4-4  
INIT\_PROC parameter F-4  
initiator procedure, XIM 2-17, F-4  
INITIATORS parameter F-4  
installation

- adding a client 4-38
- authorization requirements 1-13
- catalog indirection 2-24
- client 4-27
- client files 4-34
- cloning products 1-15, 2-25
- default modules 2-5, 2-6
- documents 1-2
- image, copying 4-30
- methods 1-3
- multiple DB2 subsystems 2-25
- multiple releases 1-17
- Multiple SSID 1-16, 2-29
- prerequisites 1-6
- product authorization 1-13
- profile repository 1-14

- 
- profiles 1-14
  - requirements, client 4-24
  - reusing objects 2-15
  - silent, clients 4-31
  - space requirements 1-9
  - SSID 1-15, 2-26
  - standard 1-3
  - subsequent 2-25
  - system requirements, client 1-6
  - system software requirements 1-5
  - troubleshooting client 4-34
  - types, client 4-27
  - uninstalling client 4-39
  - uninstalling client, silently 4-40
  - user profile 1-14
  - verification procedure 3-76
  - verifying 3-76
  - installation considerations
    - additional DB2 subsystems 1-15
    - Backup and Recovery products 1-15
    - enabling product CLISTs 1-18
    - generating ISPF interfaces 1-17
    - improving performance 1-14
    - installing at different times 1-14
    - migrating data 1-14
    - reusing DB2 structures 1-15
    - reusing installation profiles 1-14
    - Utility products 1-15
  - installation default options, refreshing 3-79
  - installation jobs 2-13
  - installation path
    - Multiple SSID 1-16
    - SSID 1-15
    - standard 1-3
  - installation system 1-3
  - installing clients
    - from a command-line interface 4-31
    - locally 4-28
    - on a network drive 4-30
    - silently 4-31
    - using an image 4-30
    - using distribution systems 4-33
  - interaction
    - ALTER with BMC Software Utilities 3-37
    - ALTER with DASD MANAGER PLUS 3-59
    - BMC Software Utilities with DASD MANAGER PLUS 3-41
    - CATALOG MANAGER with BMC Software Utilities 3-39
    - CHANGE MANAGER with BMC Software Utilities 3-37
    - CHANGE MANAGER with DASD MANAGER PLUS 3-59
    - DASD MANAGER PLUS with ALTER 3-59
    - DASD MANAGER PLUS with BMC Software Utilities 3-41
    - DASD MANAGER PLUS with CHANGE MANAGER 3-59
  - IPLAN DOPT D-5
  - IPNAMES DOPT B-11
  - ISOLATION value, CATALOG MANAGER 3-70
  - ISPF interface considerations
    - BMCDDB2 CLIST 1-17, 1-18
    - BMCDDB2PR panel 1-17, 1-18
    - BMCDDB2TB table 1-17
    - catalog indirection 3-47
  - ISPLLIB data set
    - ALTER 1-10, 1-12
  - ISPLLIB data set
    - ALTER 1-10, 1-12
  - ISPSLIB DOPT A-11, C-12
  - ISPTLIB DOPT D-5
  - IVP 3-76
  - IXTYPE DOPT A-11, C-12
- ## J
- JARCONT DOPT B-12
  - JAROBJT DOPT B-12
  - JAVOPTS DOPT B-12
  - JC1 DOPT A-11, C-13
  - JC1-JC5 DOPTS D-6
  - JC2 DOPT A-11, C-13
  - JC3 DOPT A-11, C-13
  - JC4 DOPT A-11, C-13
  - JC5 DOPT A-11, C-13
  - JCL
    - generating customization 2-12
    - generating JCL for generation data groups 3-35
    - generating JCL for JES3 environment 3-33
    - generating JCL REGION statements 3-33

---

- generating product JCL 3-33
- running customization 2-12
- JCL generation E-2
- JCLCLEAN DOPT A-11, C-13, D-6
- JCLCLEANUP POF keyword E-22
- JCLLIB POF keyword E-22
- JDSN DOPT A-11, B-12, C-13
- JDSNB DOPT C-13
- JDSNBG DOPT A-12, C-13
- JDSNBR DOPT C-14
- JDSNC DOPT C-13
- JDSNCPL DOPT C-13
- JDSNE DOPT A-12, C-14, D-6
- JDSNI DOPT C-14
- JES3 environment, generating JCL 3-33
- JES3 POF keyword E-22
- JOB\_INCLUDE\_MEMBER POF keyword E-22
- JOBCARD1 POF keyword E-22
- JOBCARD2 POF keyword E-22
- JOBCARD3 POF keyword E-22
- JOBCARD4 POF keyword E-22
- JOBCARD5 POF keyword E-22
- JPLAN DOPT D-6

## K

- KCOLUSE DOPT B-12
- KEYS DOPT B-12
- KPLAN DOPT B-12

## L

- LDSN DOPT B-13
- LIBDEF command 1-18
- LIBDEF facility 3-73
- LIBDEF parameter 3-73
- LISTDEF\_DSN POF keyword E-22
- LOAD data set
  - ALTER 1-9
  - CATALOG MANAGER 1-10
  - CHANGE MANAGER 1-11
  - DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13
  - XIM 1-12
- LOAD+\_LOAD POF keyword 3-38, 3-40, E-22
- LOADDOPT= POF keyword E-22

- LOADE data set
  - CATALOG MANAGER 1-11
- LOADPLUS 3-41
- LOBSTAH DOPTS B-13
- LOBSTAT DOPTS B-13
- LOCATIO DOPT B-13
- LOCATION DOPT A-12, C-14, D-6
- LOCK DOPT A-12, C-14
- locking options 3-69
- LOG DOPT A-12, C-14
- Log Master product code 3-45
- logical unit name 4-9
- logon mode 4-10
- LOGWK\_NBR POF keyword E-23
- LOGWK\_UNIT POF keyword E-23
- LPLAN DOPT B-13
- LU name 4-9
- LULIST DOPT B-13
- LUMODES DOPT B-13
- LUNAMES DOPT B-14

## M

- macros, UPDTDB2 3-46
- MAINT command 3-4
- maintaining clients 4-37
- MAP\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-23
- MAP\_DATACLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-23
- MAP\_EXPDT POF keyword E-23
- MAP\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-23
- MAP\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-23
- MAP\_PREFIX POF keyword E-23
- MAP\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-23
- MAP\_RETPD POF keyword E-23
- MAP\_SECQTY POF keyword E-23
- MAP\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-23
- MAP\_STORCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-23
- MAP\_THRESH POF keyword E-23
- MAP\_UNIT POF keyword E-23
- MAP\_UNIT\_ALT POF keyword E-23
- MAX DOPT B-14
- MAX\_CYL POF keyword E-24
- MAX\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-24
- MAX\_SECQTY POF keyword E-24
- MAX\_UNITCNT POF keyword E-24
- MAXSYSUT DOPT A-12, C-14

---

- messages
  - creating 3-50
  - formatting 3-50
  - online MVS data set 3-49
- MFILE2 parameter 3-50
- MGMTCLAS DOPT A-12, C-14, D-6
- Microsoft SMS product, installing the client 4-33
- migrating data 1-14, 3-7
- migrating DB2 versions
  - version 5 to version 6 G-7
  - version 6 to version 7 G-3
- MLIB data set
  - ALTER 1-9
  - CATALOG MANAGER 1-10
  - CHANGE MANAGER 1-11
  - DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13
- MODESEL DOPT B-14
- Modifying MVS image variables 3-16
- MPLAN DOPT B-14
- MRM product code 3-45
- MSGs data set 3-49
  - ALTER 1-9
  - CATALOG MANAGER 1-10
  - CHANGE MANAGER 1-11
  - DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13
- MSGTEXT data set
  - ALTER 1-9
  - CHANGE MANAGER 1-11
- multiple options module 2-6
- Multiple SSID installation
  - considerations 1-16
  - description and use 1-16
  - name propagation 1-16
  - performing 2-29
- MVS image parameters for XIM F-2
- MVS image variables 3-16
- MVSAPPC prefix 4-15

## N

- naming conventions
  - catalog indirection 2-20
  - collection IDs 2-9
  - collection nicknames 2-10
  - creator names 2-10
  - database names 2-10

- options module 2-5
- plan names 3-9
- synonym qualifiers 2-7
- network drive, copying an installation image to 4-30

## O

- object security 3-11
- objects
  - controlling access 3-8
  - reusing 2-15
  - space requirements 1-9
- Online Message Processor 3-50
- OPENTBL parameter 3-74
- OPERTUNE product code 3-45
- OPNDB2ID DOPT D-6
- options module
  - multiple 2-6
  - prdDOPD1 2-5
  - single 2-6
- ORTPARM\_DSN POF keyword E-24
- OS/390
  - commands 4-9
  - configuring 4-6
- OS/390 and z/OS Installer 1-3

## P

- PACKAGE DOPT B-14
- packages
  - ACTCSQBU 3-39
  - ACTCSQRH 3-39
  - ACTDDQRH 3-39
  - ACTJTEQ 3-70
  - AEXAUNLD 3-22
  - AEXESTDL 3-22
  - AEXEUTID 3-37, 3-43
  - AEXSQLIO 3-22
  - binding 3-31
- PACKAUT DOPT B-14
- PACKDEP DOPT B-14
- PACKLIS DOPT B-14
- PACKSTM DOPT B-15
- PACLOG product code 3-45
- PARALLEL DOPT C-14

---

parameters

- ACCESS 3-75
- BASEID 3-75
- CFUNC 3-74
- CLSTEXEC 3-73
- LIBDEF 3-73
- OPENTBL 3-74
- PGM 3-74
- PROD 3-74
- SHRAPPL 3-75
- SPRC 3-29
- SSID 3-74

parameters, XIM F-2

- PARMS DOPT B-15
- PARTCPY DOPT A-12, C-14
- PATROLDB member 4-4
- PC DOPT A-12, C-14
- PCPY1\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-24
- PCPY1\_DATACLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-24
- PCPY1\_EXPDT POF keyword E-24
- PCPY1\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-24
- PCPY1\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-24
- PCPY1\_PREFIX POF keyword 3-35
- PCPY1\_PREFIX= POF keyword E-24
- PCPY1\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-24
- PCPY1\_RETPD POF keyword E-24
- PCPY1\_SECQTY POF keyword E-24
- PCPY1\_STACK POF keyword E-24
- PCPY1\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-25
- PCPY1\_STORCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-25
- PCPY1\_THRESH POF keyword E-25
- PCPY1\_UNIT POF keyword E-25
- PCPY1\_UNIT\_ALT POF keyword E-25
- PCPY2\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-25
- PCPY2\_DATACLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-25
- PCPY2\_EXPDT POF keyword E-25
- PCPY2\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-25
- PCPY2\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-25
- PCPY2\_PREFIX POF keyword 3-35, E-25
- PCPY2\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-25
- PCPY2\_RETPD POF keyword E-25
- PCPY2\_SECQTY POF keyword E-25
- PCPY2\_STACK POF keyword E-25
- PCPY2\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-25
- PCPY2\_STORCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-26
- PCPY2\_THRESH POF keyword E-26

- PCPY2\_UNIT POF keyword E-26
- PCPY2\_UNIT\_ALT POF keyword E-26
- PDSN DOPT B-15
- PeopleSoft, using with ALTER and CHANGE MANAGER 1-7
- Permanent data sets, space required 1-19
- PGM parameter 3-74
- PIC DOPT A-12, C-15
- PKSYSTE DOPT B-15
- PLAN DOPT B-15
- PLANAUT DOPT B-15
- PLANDEP DOPT B-16

plans

- ALTER 3-10
- binding 3-31
- CATALOG MANAGER 3-19
- CHANGE MANAGER 3-10, 3-11
- controlling access 3-8
- DASD MANAGER PLUS 3-21
- Execution component 3-22
- naming conventions 3-9
- variables 3-9

platforms supported 1-6

PLIB data set

- ALTER 1-10
- CATALOG MANAGER 1-10
- CHANGE MANAGER 1-11
- DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13

PLP DOPT B-16

PLSYSTE DOPT B-16

POF (product options file)

- //JOB JOB (&ZACCTNUM), '&PGMR', E-22
- ACM\_PARALLEL\_MAXINIT= E-11
- ACM\_PARALLEL\_MININIT= E-11
- ACM\_PARALLEL\_WORKLST= E-11
- ACM\_PARALLEL\_XIMGRP= E-11
- ACM\_PARALLEL\_XIMPROC= E-12
- ACM\_PARALLEL\_XIMSTRT= E-12
- ACM\_PARALLEL\_XIMTRCE= E-12
- ADDLOAD1 3-38, 3-40, E-12
- ADDLOAD2 3-38, 3-40, E-12
- ARCH\_DATACLASS E-12
- ARCH\_DATACLASS\_ALT E-12
- ARCH\_EXPDT E-12
- ARCH\_MGMTCLASS E-12
- ARCH\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT E-12
- ARCH\_PREFIX E-12

---

ARCH_PRIQTY E-13	CNTL_RETPD E-17
ARCH_RETPD E-13	CNTL_SECQTY E-17
ARCH_SECQTY E-13	CNTL_STORCLASS E-17
ARCH_STACK E-13	CNTL_UNIT E-17
ARCH_STORCLASS E-13	COPY+_LOAD 3-38, 3-40
ARCH_STORCLASS_ALT E-13	COPY+_LOAD= E-18
ARCH_THRESH E-13	COPYDOPT= E-18
ARCH_UNIT E-13	DASD_LOAD E-18
ARCH_UNIT_ALT E-13	DATA_PACKER_LOAD 3-38, 3-40, E-18
BINDFAIL E-13	DATASETSIZING E-18
BLRP_DATACLASS E-13	DATAWK_NBR E-18
BLRP_DATACLASS_ALT E-13	DATAWK_UNIT E-18
BLRP_EXPDT E-13	DB2EXIT E-18
BLRP_MGMTCLASS E-13	DB2LOAD E-18
BLRP_MGMTCLASS_ALT E-14	DEF_GDG_BASE E-18
BLRP_PREFIX E-14	DEF_GDG_LIMIT E-18
BLRP_PRIQTY E-14	DEF_GDG_NOSCR E-19
BLRP_RETPD E-14	DEF_GDG2_LIMIT E-19
BLRP_SECQTY E-14	description 2-6
BLRP_STACK E-14	DIAG_MSGCLASS= E-19
BLRP_STORCLASS E-14	DISC_DATACLASS E-19
BLRP_STORCLASS_ALT E-14	DISC_DATACLASS_ALT E-19
BLRP_THRESH E-14	DISC_EXPDT E-19
BLRP_UNIT E-14	DISC_MGMTCLASS E-19
BLRP_UNIT_ALT E-14	DISC_MGMTCLASS_ALT E-19
BMC_CHECK_LOAD= E-14	DISC_PREFIX E-19
BMC_CHECK_OPTS= E-14	DISC_PRIQTY E-19
BMC_COPY_LOAD= E-15	DISC_RETPD E-19
BMC_COPY_OPTS= E-15	DISC_SECQTY E-20
BMC_LOAD_LOAD= E-15	DISC_STORCLASS E-20
BMC_LOAD_OPTS= E-15	DISC_STORCLASS_ALT E-20
BMC_RECOVER_LOAD= E-15	DISC_THRESH E-20
BMC_RECOVER_OPTS= E-15	DISC_UNIT E-20
BMC_REORG_LOAD= E-16	DISC_UNIT_ALT E-20
BMC_REORG_OPTS= E-16	DISP_STATS E-20
BMC_UNLOAD_LOAD= E-16	DISP_VAR_DEBUG E-20
BMC_UNLOAD_OPTS= E-16	ERR_DATACLASS E-20
CAT_LOAD E-16	ERR_DATACLASS_ALT E-20
CHECK+_LOAD 3-38, 3-40	ERR_EXPDT E-20
CHECK+_LOAD= E-16, E-29	ERR_MGMTCLASS E-20
CHECKDOPT= E-17	ERR_MGMTCLASS_ALT E-20
CHGMAN_LOAD E-17	ERR_PREFIX E-20
CLEANUP_RC= E-17	ERR_PRIQTY E-20
CNTL_DATACLASS E-17	ERR_RETPD E-20
CNTL_EXPDT E-17	ERR_SECQTY E-21
CNTL_MGMTCLASS E-17	ERR_STORCLASS E-21
CNTL_PREFIX E-17	ERR_STORCLASS_ALT E-21
CNTL_PRIQTY E-17	ERR_THRESH E-21

---

ERR_UNIT E-21	MAX_SECQTY E-24
ERR_UNIT_ALT E-21	MAX_UNITCNT E-24
EXEC_LOAD E-21	ORTPARM_DSN E-24
FILT_DATACLASS E-21	PCPY1_DATACLASS E-24
FILT_EXPDT E-21	PCPY1_DATACLASS_ALT E-24
FILT_MGMTCLASS E-21	PCPY1_EXPDT E-24
FILT_PREFIX E-21	PCPY1_MGMTCLASS E-24
FILT_PRIQTY E-21	PCPY1_MGMTCLASS_ALT E-24
FILT_RETPD E-21	PCPY1_PREFIX 3-35
FILT_SECQTY E-21	PCPY1_PREFIX= E-24
FILT_STORCLASS E-21	PCPY1_PRIQTY E-24
FILT_UNIT E-21	PCPY1_RETPD E-24
GDG_MODEL E-21	PCPY1_SECQTY E-24
HASHFAIL E-22	PCPY1_STACK E-24
HASHWARNRC E-22	PCPY1_STORCLASS E-25
initial E-2	PCPY1_STORCLASS_ALT E-25
initializing E-2	PCPY1_THRESH E-25
JCLCLEANUP E-22	PCPY1_UNIT E-25
JCLLIB E-22	PCPY1_UNIT_ALT E-25
JES3 E-22	PCPY2_DATACLASS E-25
JOB_INCLUDE_MEMBER E-22	PCPY2_DATACLASS_ALT E-25
JOBCARD1 E-22	PCPY2_EXPDT E-25
JOBCARD2 E-22	PCPY2_MGMTCLASS E-25
JOBCARD3 E-22	PCPY2_MGMTCLASS_ALT E-25
JOBCARD4 E-22	PCPY2_PREFIX 3-35, E-25
JOBCARD5 E-22	PCPY2_PRIQTY E-25
keyword descriptions E-11	PCPY2_RETPD E-25
LISTDEF_DSN E-22	PCPY2_SECQTY E-25
LOAD+_LOAD 3-38, 3-40, E-22	PCPY2_STACK E-25
LOADDOPT= E-22	PCPY2_STORCLASS E-25
LOGWK_NBR E-23	PCPY2_STORCLASS_ALT E-26
LOGWK_UNIT E-23	PCPY2_THRESH E-26
MAP_DATACLASS E-23	PCPY2_UNIT E-26
MAP_DATACLASS_ALT E-23	PCPY2_UNIT_ALT E-26
MAP_EXPDT E-23	POFDATE E-26
MAP_MGMTCLASS E-23	populating E-2
MAP_MGMTCLASS_ALT E-23	PUNCH_DATACLASS E-26
MAP_PREFIX E-23	PUNCH_EXPDT E-26
MAP_PRIQTY E-23	PUNCH_MGMTCLASS E-26
MAP_RETPD E-23	PUNCH_PREFIX E-26
MAP_SECQTY E-23	PUNCH_PRIQTY E-26
MAP_STORCLASS E-23	PUNCH_SECQTY E-26
MAP_STORCLASS_ALT E-23	PUNCH_STORCLASS E-26
MAP_THRESH E-23	PUNCH_UNIT E-26
MAP_UNIT E-23	RCPY1_DATACLASS E-26
MAP_UNIT_ALT E-23	RCPY1_DATACLASS_ALT E-26
MAX_CYL E-24	RCPY1_EXPDT E-27
MAX_PRIQTY E-24	RCPY1_MGMTCLASS E-27

---

RCPY1\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT E-27  
RCPY1\_PREFIX 3-35, E-27  
RCPY1\_PRIQTY E-27  
RCPY1\_RETPD E-27  
RCPY1\_SECQTY E-27  
RCPY1\_STACK E-27  
RCPY1\_STORCLASS E-27  
RCPY1\_STORCLASS\_ALT E-27  
RCPY1\_THRESH E-27  
RCPY1\_UNIT E-27  
RCPY1\_UNIT\_ALT E-27  
RCPY2\_DATACLASS E-27  
RCPY2\_DATACLASS\_ALT E-27  
RCPY2\_EXPDT E-28  
RCPY2\_MGMTCLASS E-28  
RCPY2\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT E-28  
RCPY2\_PREFIX 3-35, E-28  
RCPY2\_PRIQTY E-28  
RCPY2\_RETPD E-28  
RCPY2\_SECQTY E-28  
RCPY2\_STACK E-28  
RCPY2\_STORCLASS E-28  
RCPY2\_STORCLASS\_ALT E-28  
RCPY2\_THRESH E-28  
RCPY2\_UNIT E-28  
RCPY2\_UNIT\_ALT E-28  
REBINDFAIL E-28  
REBINDRC E-29  
RECOVER+\_LOAD 3-38, 3-40  
RECOVER+\_LOAD= E-29  
RECOVERDOPT= E-29  
REGION E-29  
REORG+\_LOAD 3-38, 3-40  
REORG+\_LOAD= E-29  
REORGDOPT= E-29  
REPT\_DATACLASS E-29  
REPT\_DATACLASS\_ALT E-29  
REPT\_EXPDT E-29  
REPT\_MGMTCLASS E-30  
REPT\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT E-30  
REPT\_PREFIX E-30  
REPT\_PRIQTY E-30  
REPT\_RETPD E-30  
REPT\_SECQTY E-30  
REPT\_STORCLASS E-30  
REPT\_STORCLASS\_ALT E-30  
REPT\_THRESH E-30  
REPT\_UNIT E-30

REPT\_UNIT\_ALT E-30  
sample file E-4  
SORTWK\_NBR E-30  
SORTWK\_PRIQTY E-30  
SORTWK\_SECQTY E-30  
SORTWK\_UNIT E-30  
SRTOUT\_DATACLASS E-31  
SRTOUT\_DATACLASS\_ALT E-31  
SRTOUT\_EXPDT E-31  
SRTOUT\_MGMTCLASS E-31  
SRTOUT\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT E-31  
SRTOUT\_PREFIX E-31  
SRTOUT\_PRIQTY E-31  
SRTOUT\_RETPD E-31  
SRTOUT\_SECQTY E-31  
SRTOUT\_STORCLASS E-31  
SRTOUT\_STORCLASS\_ALT E-31  
SRTOUT\_THRESH E-31  
SRTOUT\_UNIT E-31  
SRTOUT\_UNIT\_ALT E-31  
STEP\_INCLUDE\_MEMBER E-32  
SUPPRESS\_COMMENTS E-32  
SYNCDELETE E-32  
SYSUT\_DATACLASS E-32  
SYSUT\_DATACLASS\_ALT E-32  
SYSUT\_EXPDT E-32  
SYSUT\_MGMTCLASS E-32  
SYSUT\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT E-32  
SYSUT\_PREFIX E-32  
SYSUT\_PRIQTY E-32  
SYSUT\_RETPD E-32  
SYSUT\_SECQTY E-32  
SYSUT\_STORCLASS E-32  
SYSUT\_STORCLASS\_ALT E-32  
SYSUT\_THRESH E-32  
SYSUT\_UNIT E-33  
SYSUT\_UNIT\_ALT E-33  
SZDEVT E-33  
TAPE\_EXPDT E-33  
TAPE\_RETPD E-33  
TAPE\_VOLCNT E-33  
TAPE1 E-33  
TAPE2 E-33  
TAPE3 E-33  
TEMPLATE E-33  
TEMPUNIT E-33  
TIMEPARM E-33  
TRTCH E-33



---

TSOPROGRAM E-33  
 TSOSUBEXIT E-33  
 UNLD1\_DATACLASS E-34  
 UNLD1\_DATACLASS\_ALT E-34  
 UNLD1\_EXPDT E-34  
 UNLD1\_MGMTCLASS E-34  
 UNLD1\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT E-34  
 UNLD1\_PREFIX E-34  
 UNLD1\_PRIQTY E-34  
 UNLD1\_RETPD E-34  
 UNLD1\_SECQTY E-34  
 UNLD1\_STACK E-34  
 UNLD1\_STORCLASS E-34  
 UNLD1\_STORCLASS\_ALT E-34  
 UNLD1\_THRESH E-34  
 UNLD1\_UNIT E-34  
 UNLD1\_UNIT\_ALT E-34  
 UNLD2\_DATACLASS E-35  
 UNLD2\_DATACLASS\_ALT E-35  
 UNLD2\_EXPDT E-35  
 UNLD2\_MGMTCLASS E-35  
 UNLD2\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT E-35  
 UNLD2\_PREFIX E-35  
 UNLD2\_PRIQTY E-35  
 UNLD2\_RETPD E-35  
 UNLD2\_SECQTY E-35  
 UNLD2\_STACK E-35  
 UNLD2\_STORCLASS E-35  
 UNLD2\_STORCLASS\_ALT E-35  
 UNLD2\_THRESH E-35  
 UNLD2\_UNIT E-35  
 UNLD2\_UNIT\_ALT E-35  
 UNLOAD+\_LOAD 3-38, 3-40  
 UNLOAD+\_LOAD= E-36  
 UNLOADDOPT= E-36  
 user E-3  
 using application IDs 2-7  
 WORK\_DATACLASS E-36  
 WORK\_MGMTCLASS E-36  
 WORK\_STORCLASS E-36  
 POFDATE POF keyword E-3, E-26  
 POFDS DOPT 2-6, A-12, B-16, C-15, D-6, E-2  
 post-installation tasks  
   ALTER 3-3  
   ALTER GUI 4-3  
   BMC Admin Server 4-3  
   CATALOG MANAGER 3-3  
   CHANGE MANAGER 3-3  
   CHANGE MANAGER GUI 4-3  
   DASD MANAGER PLUS 3-3  
   prdDOPD1, installation default modules 2-5  
   prerequisites, client installation 1-6  
   PROCEDU DOPT B-16  
   PROD parameter 3-74  
   product authorization 1-13, 3-7  
   PRODUCT DOPT A-13, C-15, D-6  
   product options file. *See* POF  
   products  
     binding to shared components 3-31  
     CDs 1-4  
     codes 2-5  
     customization 2-3  
     identifiers 2-7  
     JCL, generating 3-33  
     tapes 1-3  
   profiles 1-14  
   protocols supported 1-6  
   PUNCH\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-26  
   PUNCH\_EXPDT POF keyword E-26  
   PUNCH\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-26  
   PUNCH\_PREFIX POF keyword E-26  
   PUNCH\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-26  
   PUNCH\_SECQTY POF keyword E-26  
   PUNCH\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-26  
   PUNCH\_UNIT POF keyword E-26

## Q

QMF reports, building views 3-28  
 QMFFORM data set, DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13  
 QMFPROC data set, DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13  
 QMFQRY data set, DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13  
 qualifier status, USED/REUSE 2-7, 2-21  
 QUALIFIER, processing plan 2-7  
 QUIESCE command 3-15

---

## R

### RACF

- creating general resource profiles 3-12
- using with XIM 3-8

### RCCOL DOPT B-16

- RCPY1\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-26
- RCPY1\_DATACLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-26
- RCPY1\_EXPDT POF keyword E-27
- RCPY1\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-27
- RCPY1\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-27

### RCPY1\_PREFIX POF keyword 3-35, E-27

- RCPY1\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-27
- RCPY1\_RETPD POF keyword E-27
- RCPY1\_SECQTY POF keyword E-27
- RCPY1\_STACK POF keyword E-27
- RCPY1\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-27
- RCPY1\_STORCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-27
- RCPY1\_THRESH POF keyword E-27
- RCPY1\_UNIT POF keyword E-27
- RCPY1\_UNIT\_ALT POF keyword E-27

- RCPY2\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-27
- RCPY2\_DATACLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-27
- RCPY2\_EXPDT POF keyword E-28

### RCPY2\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-28

- RCPY2\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-28

### RCPY2\_PREFIX POF keyword 3-35, E-28

- RCPY2\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-28
- RCPY2\_RETPD POF keyword E-28
- RCPY2\_SECQTY POF keyword E-28
- RCPY2\_STACK POF keyword E-28
- RCPY2\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-28
- RCPY2\_STORCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-28
- RCPY2\_THRESH POF keyword E-28
- RCPY2\_UNIT POF keyword E-28
- RCPY2\_UNIT\_ALT POF keyword E-28

### REBINDFAIL POF keyword E-28

### REBINDRC POF keyword E-29

### REBLD DOPT A-13, C-15

### RECOV DOPT A-13, C-15

- RECOVER PLUS installation requirement with CHANGE MANAGER 1-6

### RECOVER+\_LOAD POF keyword 3-38, 3-40

### RECOVER+\_LOAD= POF keyword E-29

### RECOVERDOPT= POF keyword E-29

### RECOVERY MANAGER product code 3-45

### RECVDD01 DOPT A-9, C-10

### RECVDD02 DOPT A-9, C-10

### RECVMAX DOPT A-13, C-15, D-6

### RECVMAXU DOPT A-13, C-15, D-7

### RECVPREF DOPT A-13, C-15, D-7

### RECVPS DOPT A-13, C-16, D-7

### RECVSS DOPT A-13, C-16, D-7

### RECVUNIT DOPT A-14, C-16, D-7

### refresh, unsuccessful 3-79

### REGION parameter 3-33

### REGION POF keyword E-29

### REGION statements, generating JCL 3-33

### reinstalling a client 4-41

### RELS DOPT B-16

### REORG DOPT A-14, C-16

### REORG PLUS 3-41

### REORG+\_LOAD POF keyword 3-38, 3-40

### REORG+\_LOAD= POF keyword E-29

### REORG\_HISTORY synonym 3-39

### REORGALT DOPT A-14, C-16

### REORGDOPT= POF keyword E-29

### repository profile 1-14

### REPT\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-29

### REPT\_DATACLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-29

### REPT\_EXPDT POF keyword E-29

### REPT\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-30

### REPT\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-30

### REPT\_PREFIX POF keyword E-30

### REPT\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-30

### REPT\_RETPD POF keyword E-30

### REPT\_SECQTY POF keyword E-30

### REPT\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-30

### REPT\_STORCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-30

### REPT\_THRESH POF keyword E-30

### REPT\_UNIT POF keyword E-30

### REPT\_UNIT\_ALT POF keyword E-30

### requirements, client installation 4-24

### requirements, space

#### ALTER 1-9

#### CATALOG MANAGER 1-10

#### CHANGE MANAGER 1-11

#### DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-12, 1-13

### RESAUTH DOPT B-16

### resequencing installation jobs 2-15

### resolutions, applying 3-3

### restricting access

#### applying a zap 3-12

#### specifying a resource profile 3-12

---

- restricting catalog access 2-23
- reusing objects 2-15
- ROUTINA DOPT B-16
- ROUTINE DOPT B-17
- ROUTOPT DOPT B-17
- ROUTSRC DOPT B-17
- RPLAN DOPT D-7
- RPTPL DOPT C-16
- RSTRIG CLIST 3-48
- RUNSTATS utility 1-14

## S

- SBIDBS.SERVER1 parameter 4-15
- SCHEMAA DOPT B-17
- SCRIPT data set
  - ALTER 1-10
  - CHANGE MANAGER 1-11
- SDSN DOPT A-14, B-17, C-16
- SDSNE DOPT A-14, C-16
- SDSNEXIT data set 4-23
- SEARCH command, CATALOG MANAGER 2-22
- secondary authorization IDs, enabling use 4-23
- security, objects 3-11, 3-20
- security, using XIM 3-8
- SEQI DOPT A-14, C-16
- server networking, verifying 4-26
- servers, CATALOG MANAGER 3-63
- session profiles 3-71
- setting up the BMC Admin Server 4-10
- shared components 3-32
- sharing DOPTs 3-57
- SHRAPPL parameter 3-75
- SHUTDOWN command 3-15
- Shutting down XIM 3-15
- silent installation, clients 4-31
- single options module 2-6
- SL1 DOPT A-14, C-16
- SL1-SL5 DOPTS D-7
- SL2 DOPT A-14, C-16
- SL3 DOPT A-14, C-17
- SL4 DOPT A-14, C-17
- SL5 DOPT A-14, C-17
- SLIB data set
  - ALTER 1-10
  - CATALOG MANAGER 1-10

- CHANGE MANAGER 1-11
  - compiling 3-34
- DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13
  - editing 3-33
  - testing 3-34
- SMP/E BBLINK library 3-7
- SMP/E LOAD library 3-7
- SORTWK\_NBR POF keyword E-30
- SORTWK\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-30
- SORTWK\_SECQTY POF keyword E-30
- SORTWK\_UNIT POF keyword E-30
- space requirements
  - ALTER 1-9
  - CATALOG MANAGER 1-10
  - CHANGE MANAGER 1-11
  - DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-12
- specifying collection nicknames 2-10
- SPLAN DOPT B-17, D-7
- SPP DOPT A-14, C-17
- SPRC parameter 3-29
- SQL Explorer client installation 4-24
- SQL Explorer for DB2, integrating with
  - CATALOG MANAGER 3-48, 3-71
- SRTOUT\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-31
- SRTOUT\_DATACLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-31
- SRTOUT\_EXPDT POF keyword E-31
- SRTOUT\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-31
- SRTOUT\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-31
- SRTOUT\_PREFIX POF keyword E-31
- SRTOUT\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-31
- SRTOUT\_RETPD POF keyword E-31
- SRTOUT\_SECQTY POF keyword E-31
- SRTOUT\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-31
- SRTOUT\_STORCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-31
- SRTOUT\_THRESH POF keyword E-31
- SRTOUT\_UNIT POF keyword E-31
- SRTOUT\_UNIT\_ALT POF keyword E-31
- SSID DOPT A-15, C-17, D-7
- SSID installation
  - considerations 1-16
  - multiple options module 2-6
  - Multiple SSID 1-16
  - performing 2-26
  - single options module 2-6
- SSID parameter 3-74

---

- SSID, making profile unique 3-61
- Starting XIM 3-14
- starting, client 4-35
- STATAUTH DOPT D-7
- STATHIST DOPT A-15, C-17
- static SQL 3-20
- STATS DOPT A-15, C-17
- STATUS command 3-13
- Status of XIM, determining 3-13
- STEP\_INCLUDE\_MEMBER POF keyword E-32
- STMT DOPT B-17
- STOGROU DOPT B-17
- STOPCOMM DOPT A-15, C-17
- stopping, client 4-35
- STORCLAS DOPT A-15, C-17, D-8
- stored procedures 3-29
- STRINGS DOPT B-18
- subsequent installations 2-25
- subsystem connections, creating 4-35
- subtasking 4-18
- supporting subsequent DB2 subsystems, in
  - BMCDB2 CLIST 3-62
- SUPPRESS\_COMMENTS POF keyword E-32
- SWPS DOPT A-15, C-17, D-8
- SWSS DOPT A-15, C-17, D-8
- SWU DOPT A-15, C-17, D-8
- SYNCDELETE POF keyword E-32
- SYNCPNT DOPT A-15, C-18
- SYNONYM DOPT B-18
- synonym qualifiers
  - ALTER 2-8
  - CATALOG MANAGER 2-8
  - CHANGE MANAGER 2-8
  - DASD MANAGER PLUS 2-8
  - naming conventions 2-7
  - using for catalog indirection 2-21
- synonyms
  - BMC\_UTIL\_SYNC 3-37, 3-39, 3-43
  - BMC\_UTIL\_SYNC2 3-37, 3-39, 3-43
  - BMC\_UTILITY 3-37, 3-39, 3-43
  - REORG\_HISTORY 3-39
- SYSADM DB2 authorization 1-13
- SYSALLDA, XIM parameter F-4
- SYSCMAX DOPT A-15, C-18, D-8
- SYSCMAXU DOPT A-16, C-18, D-8
- SYSCPREF DOPT A-16, C-18, D-8
- SYSCPS DOPT A-16, C-18, D-8

- SYSCSS DOPT A-16, C-18, D-8
- SYSCUNIT DOPT A-16, C-18, D-8
- SYSLMOD DD statement 3-80
- sysplex 3-55
- SYSRMAX DOPT A-16, C-18, D-8
- SYSRMAXU DOPT A-16, C-18, D-8
- SYSRPREF DOPT A-16, C-18, D-8
- SYSRPS DOPT A-16, C-18, D-8
- SYSRSS DOPT A-16, C-18, D-8
- SYSRUNIT DOPT A-16, C-18, D-8
- system authorizations
  - XIM 3-8
- SYSTYPE DOPT A-16, C-19, D-9
- SYSUDUMP data set 1-19
- SYSUT\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-32
- SYSUT\_DATACLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-32
- SYSUT\_EXPDT POF keyword E-32
- SYSUT\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-32
- SYSUT\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-32
- SYSUT\_PREFIX POF keyword E-32
- SYSUT\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-32
- SYSUT\_RETPD POF keyword E-32
- SYSUT\_SECQTY POF keyword E-32
- SYSUT\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-32
- SYSUT\_STORCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-32
- SYSUT\_THRESH POF keyword E-32
- SYSUT\_UNIT POF keyword E-33
- SYSUT\_UNIT\_ALT POF keyword E-33
- SZDEVT DOPT A-16, C-19, D-9
- SZDEVT POF keyword E-33

## T

- T1S#ACTU member 3-39
- T1S#AEXU member 3-37, 3-43
- T1S#ASUC member 3-42
- T1S#ASUL member 3-42
- T1S#ASUR member 3-42
- TABAUTH DOPT B-18
- TABCNST DOPT B-18
- table space
  - ALTER 1-9
  - CATALOG MANAGER 1-10
  - CHANGE MANAGER 1-11
  - DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-12

TABLEACC DOPT A-16, C-19  
 TABLEALL DOPT A-17, C-19  
 TABLEPA DOPT B-18  
 TABLES DOPT B-18  
 TABLESH DOPT B-18  
 TABLESP DOPT B-19  
 TABPRTH DOPT B-19  
 TABSTAH DOPT B-19  
 TABSTAT DOPT B-19  
 TAPE\_EXPDT POF keyword E-33  
 TAPE\_RETPD POF keyword E-33  
 TAPE\_VOLCNT POF keyword E-33  
 TAPE1 DOPT A-17, C-19  
 TAPE1 POF keyword E-33  
 TAPE1-TAPE3 DOPTS D-9  
 TAPE2 DOPT A-17, C-19  
 TAPE2 POF keyword E-33  
 TAPE3 DOPT A-17, C-19  
 TAPE3 POF keyword E-33  
 TCP/IP, configuring 4-4  
 TEMPLATE POF keyword E-33  
 TEMPUNIT POF keyword E-33  
 TIMEPARM DOPT A-17, C-19, D-9  
 TIMEPARM POF keyword E-33  
 TLIB data set  
     ALTER 1-10  
     CATALOG MANAGER 1-11  
     CHANGE MANAGER 1-11  
     DASD MANAGER PLUS 1-13  
 Top Secret  
     XIM 3-8  
 TP name 4-9  
 TRIGGER DOPT B-19  
 troubleshooting  
     client installation 4-34  
     user options refresh 3-79  
 Troubleshooting execution of XIM 3-19  
 TRS DOPT B-19  
 TRTCH POF keyword E-33  
 TSOPROGRAM POF keyword E-33  
 TSOSUBEXIT POF keyword E-33  
 TSOSX DOPT A-17, C-19  
 tuning, catalog 2-22

## U

UCDSPP DOPT B-19  
 UCOMD DOPT B-19  
 uninstalling the client  
     from a command-line interface 4-40  
     from the GUI 4-39  
     silently 4-40  
 unit names, DASD devices F-4  
 UNLD1\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_DATACLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_EXPDT POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_PREFIX POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_RETPD POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_SECQTY POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_STACK POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_STORCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_THRESH POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_UNIT POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD1\_UNIT\_ALT POF keyword E-34  
 UNLD2\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_DATACLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_EXPDT POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_MGMTCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_PREFIX POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_PRIQTY POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_RETPD POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_SECQTY POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_STACK POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_STORCLASS\_ALT POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_THRESH POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_UNIT POF keyword E-35  
 UNLD2\_UNIT\_ALT POF keyword E-35  
 UNLDCOLL DOPT A-17, C-19  
 UNLDEMPT DOPT A-17, C-19  
 UNLOAD+\_LOAD POF keyword 3-38, 3-40

---

UNLOAD+\_LOAD= POF keyword E-36  
UNLOADDOPT= POF keyword E-36  
unsuccessful refresh 3-79  
UPDSTATS DOPT A-17, C-19  
UPDTBMC CLIST 3-46  
UPDTDB2 macro 3-46  
upgrading to a new version of DB2 G-2  
UPLAN DOPT B-19  
user message file, creating 3-50  
user options  
    JCL Generation E-2  
    overlay, avoiding 3-60  
    refreshing 3-79  
    troubleshooting 3-79  
user profile 1-14  
USERAUT DOPT B-20  
USERNAM DOPT B-20  
UTILCOPY DOPT A-17, C-20  
utilities, using IBM or BMC 1-14  
UWLVL DOPT B-20

## V

variables  
    XCF\_GROUP 3-17  
    XIM\_GROUP 3-17  
variables, editing in BMCDB2 CLIST 3-52  
VCAT variable 3-55  
verifying  
    fixes and resolutions 3-3  
    installation 3-76  
    installed client files 4-34  
    product authorization 3-7  
    server networking 4-26  
version level of client 1-6  
version upgrades, DB2 G-2  
VIEWDEP DOPT B-20  
VIEWS DOPT B-20  
views, using for catalog indirection 2-23  
VOLUMES DOPT B-20  
VRM DOPT A-18, C-20  
VVALPROP DOPT A-17, C-20

## W

WDC DOPT A-18, C-20, D-9  
WDSN DOPT A-18, B-20, C-20, D-9  
WL2DDL CLIST 3-48  
WLM, using with stored procedures 3-29  
WLPS DOPT A-18, C-20  
WLSS DOPT A-18, C-20  
WLU DOPT A-18, C-20  
WMC DOPT A-18, C-20, D-9  
WORK\_DATACLASS POF keyword E-36  
WORK\_MGMTCLASS POF keyword E-36  
WORK\_STORCLASS POF keyword E-36  
Worklist parallelism  
    allocating space 1-19  
    stacked tapes 1-19  
workload manager environment 3-29  
WPS DOPT A-18, C-20, D-9  
WSC DOPT A-18, C-20  
WSS DOPT A-18, C-20, D-9  
WU DOPT A-18, C-20, D-9

## X

XBM product code 3-45  
XCF services 1-5, F-3  
XCF\_GROUP parameter F-3  
XCF\_GROUP variable 3-17  
XDSN DOPT B-20  
XGRANT CLIST 3-48  
XIM  
    controlling execution 3-13  
    determining status 3-13  
    modifying active initiators 3-16  
    shutting down 3-15  
    starting 3-14  
    troubleshooting 3-19  
XIM (Cross-System Image Manager)  
    initiator procedure 2-17, F-4  
XIM commands  
    ACTIVATE 3-15  
    QUIESCE 3-15  
    SHUTDOWN 3-15  
    STATUS 3-13  
XIM data sets  
    CNTL 1-12  
    LOAD 1-12

---

XIM initiators  
    activating 3-15  
    inactivating 3-15  
XIM\_GROUP parameter F-4  
XIM\_GROUP variable 3-17  
XIMACM started task 3-14  
XPLAN DOPT D-10

## **Z**

Zap, applying to control access 3-12  
zaps, applying 3-3  
ZPLAN DOPT D-10





# END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT NOTICE

**BY OPENING THE PACKAGE, INSTALLING, PRESSING "AGREE" OR "YES" OR USING THE PRODUCT, THE ENTITY OR INDIVIDUAL ENTERING INTO THIS AGREEMENT AGREES TO BE BOUND BY THE FOLLOWING TERMS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH ANY OF THESE TERMS, DO NOT INSTALL OR USE THE PRODUCT, PROMPTLY RETURN THE PRODUCT TO BMC OR YOUR BMC RESELLER, AND IF YOU ACQUIRED THE LICENSE WITHIN 30 DAYS OF THE DATE OF YOUR ORDER CONTACT BMC OR YOUR BMC RESELLER FOR A REFUND OF LICENSE FEES PAID. IF YOU REJECT THIS AGREEMENT, YOU WILL NOT ACQUIRE ANY LICENSE TO USE THE PRODUCT.**

This Agreement ("**Agreement**") is between the entity or individual entering into this Agreement ("**You**") and BMC Software Distribution, Inc., a Delaware corporation located at 2101 CityWest Blvd., Houston, Texas, 77042, USA or its affiliated local licensing entity ("**BMC**"). "**You**" includes you and your Affiliates. "Affiliate" is defined as an entity which controls, is controlled by or shares common control with a party. IF MORE THAN ONE LICENSE AGREEMENT COULD APPLY TO THE PRODUCT, THE FOLLOWING ORDER OF LICENSE AGREEMENT PRECEDENCE APPLIES: (1) WEB BASED LICENSE AGREEMENT WITH BMC, (2) WRITTEN LICENSE AGREEMENT WITH BMC, (3) SHRINK-WRAP LICENSE AGREEMENT WITH BMC PROVIDED WITH THE PRODUCT, AND (4) THIS ELECTRONIC LICENSE AGREEMENT WITH BMC. In addition to the restrictions imposed under this Agreement, any other usage restrictions contained in the Product installation instructions or release notes shall apply to Your use of the Product.

**PRODUCT AND CAPACITY.** "**Software**" means the object code version of the computer programs provided, via delivery or electronic transmission, to You. Software includes computer files, enhancements, maintenance modifications, upgrades, updates, bug fixes, and error corrections.

**"Documentation"** means all written or graphical material provided by BMC in any medium, including any technical specifications, relating to the functionality or operation of the Software.

**"Product"** means the Software and Documentation.

**"License Capacity"** means the licensed capacity for the Software with the pricing and other license defining terms, including capacity restrictions, such as tier limit, total allowed users, gigabyte limit, quantity of Software, and/or other capacity limitations regarding the Software. For licenses based on the power of a computer, You agree to use BMC's current computer classification scheme, which is available at <http://www.bmc.com> or can be provided to You upon request.

**ACCEPTANCE.** The Product is deemed accepted by You, on the date that You received the Product from BMC.

**LICENSE.** Subject to the terms of this Agreement, as well as Your payment of applicable fees, BMC grants You a non-exclusive, non-transferable, perpetual (unless a term license is provided on an order) license for each copy of the Software, up to the License Capacity, to do the following:

- (a) install the Software on Your owned or leased hardware located at a facility owned or controlled by You in the country where You acquired the license;
- (b) operate the Software solely for processing Your own data in Your business operations; and
- (c) make one copy of the Software for backup and archival purposes only (collectively a "**License**").

If the Software is designed by BMC to permit you to modify such Software, then you agree to only use such modifications or new software programs for Your internal purposes or otherwise consistent with the License. BMC grants You a license to use the Documentation solely for Your internal use in Your operations.

**LICENSE UPGRADES.** You may expand the scope of the License Capacity only pursuant to a separate agreement with BMC for such expanded usage and Your payment of applicable fees. There is no additional warranty period or free support period for license upgrades.

**RESTRICTIONS:** You agree to **NOT**:

- (a) disassemble, reverse engineer, decompile or otherwise attempt to derive any Software from executable code;
- (b) distribute or provide the Software to any third party (including without limitation, use in a service bureau, outsourcing environment, or processing the data of third parties, or for rental, lease, or sublicense); or
- (c) provide a third party with the results of any functional evaluation or benchmarking or performance tests, without BMC's prior written approval, unless prohibited by local law.

**TRIAL LICENSE.** If, as part of the ordering process, the Product is provided on a trial basis, then these terms apply: (i) this license consists solely of a non-exclusive, non-transferable evaluation license to operate the Software for the period of time specified from BMC or, if not specified, a 30 day time period ("**Trial Period**") only for evaluating whether You desire to acquire a capacity-based license to the Product for a fee; and (ii) Your use of the Product is on an AS IS basis without any warranty, and **BMC, ITS AFFILIATES AND RESELLERS, AND LICENSORS DISCLAIM ANY AND ALL WARRANTIES (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT) AND HAVE NO LIABILITY WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS PRODUCT UNDER THIS TRIAL LICENSE ("Trial License").** BMC may terminate for its convenience a Trial License upon notice to You. When the Trial Period ends, Your right to use this Product automatically expires. If You want to continue Your use of the Product beyond the Trial Period, contact BMC to acquire a capacity-based license to the Product for a fee.

**TERMINATION.** This Agreement shall immediately terminate if You breach any of its terms. Upon termination, for any reason, You must uninstall the Software, and either certify the destruction of the Product or return it to BMC.

**OWNERSHIP OF THE PRODUCT.** BMC or its Affiliates or licensors retain all right, title and interest to and in the BMC Product and all intellectual property, informational, industrial property and proprietary rights therein. BMC neither grants nor otherwise transfers any rights of ownership in the BMC Product to You. Products are protected by applicable copyright, trade secret, and industrial and intellectual property laws. BMC reserves any rights not expressly granted to You herein.

**CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION.** The Products are and contain valuable confidential information of BMC (“**Confidential Information**”). Confidential Information means non-public technical and non-technical information relating to the Products and Support, including, without limitation, trade secret and proprietary information, and the structure and organization of the Software. You may not disclose the Confidential Information to third parties. You agree to use all reasonable efforts to prevent the unauthorized use, copying, publication or dissemination of the Product.

**WARRANTY.** Except for a Trial License, BMC warrants that the Software will perform in substantial accordance with the Documentation for a period of one year from the date of the order. This warranty shall not apply to any problems caused by software or hardware not supplied by BMC or to any misuse of the Software.

**EXCLUSIVE REMEDY.** BMC’s entire liability, and Your exclusive remedy, for any defect in the Software during the warranty period or breach of the warranty above shall be limited to the following: BMC shall use reasonable efforts to remedy defects covered by the warranty or replace the defective Software within a reasonable period of time, or if BMC cannot remedy or replace such defective copy of the Software, then BMC shall refund the amount paid by You for the License for that Software. BMC’s obligations in this section are conditioned upon Your providing BMC prompt access to the affected Software and full cooperation in resolving the claim.

**DISCLAIMER. EXCEPT FOR THE EXPRESS WARRANTIES ABOVE, THE PRODUCT IS PROVIDED “AS IS.” BMC, ITS AFFILIATES AND LICENSORS SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. BMC DOES NOT WARRANT THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR FREE, OR THAT ALL DEFECTS CAN BE CORRECTED.**

**DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES. IN NO EVENT IS BMC, ITS AFFILIATES OR LICENSORS LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES RELATING TO OR ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT, SUPPORT, AND/OR THE PRODUCT (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS, LOST COMPUTER USAGE TIME, AND DAMAGE OR LOSS OF USE OF DATA), EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, AND IRRESPECTIVE OF ANY NEGLIGENCE OF BMC OR WHETHER SUCH DAMAGES RESULT FROM A CLAIM ARISING UNDER TORT OR CONTRACT LAW.**

**LIMITS ON LIABILITY. BMC’S AGGREGATE LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES IS LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT PAID BY YOU FOR THE LICENSE TO THE PRODUCT.**

**SUPPORT.** If Your order includes support for the Software, then BMC agrees to provide support (24 hours a day/7 days a week) (“**Support**”). You will be automatically re-enrolled in Support on an annual basis unless BMC receives notice of termination from You as provided below. There is a free support period during the one year warranty period.

(a) **Support Terms.** BMC agrees to make commercially reasonable efforts to provide the following Support: (i) For malfunctions of supported versions of the Software, BMC provides bug fixes, patches or workarounds in order to cause that copy of the Software to operate in substantial conformity with its then-current operating specifications; and (ii) BMC provides new releases or versions, so long as such new releases or versions are furnished by BMC to all other enrolled Support customers without additional charge. BMC may refuse to provide Support for any versions or releases of the Software other than the most recent version or release of such Software made available by BMC. Either party may terminate Your enrollment in Support upon providing notice to the other at least 30 days prior to the next applicable Support anniversary date. If You re-enroll in Support, BMC may charge You a reinstatement fee of 1.5 times what You would have paid if You were enrolled in Support during that time period.

(b) **Fees.** The annual fee for Support is 20% of the Software’s list price less the applicable discount or a flat capacity based annual fee. BMC may change its prices for the Software and/or Support upon at least 30 days notice prior to Your support anniversary date.

**VERIFICATION.** If requested by BMC, You agree to deliver to BMC periodic written reports, whether generated manually or electronically, detailing Your use of the Software in accordance with this Agreement, including, without limitation, the License Capacity. BMC may, at its expense, perform an audit, at your facilities, of Your use of the Software to confirm Your compliance with the Agreement. If an audit reveals that You have underpaid fees, You agree to pay such underpaid fees. If the underpaid fees exceed 5% of the fees paid, then You agree to also pay BMC’s reasonable costs of conducting the audit.

**EXPORT CONTROLS.** You agree not to import, export, re-export, or transfer, directly or indirectly, any part of the Product or any underlying information or technology except in full compliance with all United States, foreign and other applicable laws and regulations.

**GOVERNING LAW.** This Agreement is governed by the substantive laws in force, without regard to conflict of laws principles: (a) in the State of New York, if you acquired the License in the United States, Puerto Rico, or any country in Central or South America; (b) in the Province of Ontario, if you acquired the License in Canada (subsections (a) and (b) collectively referred to as the “**Americas Region**”); (c) in Singapore, if you acquired the License in Japan, South Korea, Peoples Republic of China, Special Administrative Region of Hong Kong, Republic of China, Philippines, Indonesia, Malaysia, Singapore, India, Australia, New Zealand, or Thailand (collectively, “**Asia Pacific Region**”); or (d) in the Netherlands, if you acquired the License in any other country not described above. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods is specifically disclaimed in its entirety.

**ARBITRATION. ANY DISPUTE BETWEEN YOU AND BMC ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT OR THE BREACH OR ALLEGED BREACH, SHALL BE DETERMINED BY BINDING ARBITRATION CONDUCTED IN ENGLISH. IF THE DISPUTE IS INITIATED IN THE AMERICAS REGION, THE ARBITRATION SHALL BE HELD IN NEW YORK, U.S.A., UNDER THE CURRENT COMMERCIAL OR INTERNATIONAL, AS APPLICABLE, RULES OF THE AMERICAN ARBITRATION ASSOCIATION. IF THE DISPUTE IS INITIATED IN A COUNTRY IN THE ASIA PACIFIC REGION, THE ARBITRATION SHALL BE HELD IN SINGAPORE, SINGAPORE UNDER THE CURRENT UNCITRAL ARBITRATION RULES. IF THE DISPUTE IS INITIATED IN A COUNTRY OUTSIDE OF THE AMERICAS REGION OR ASIA PACIFIC REGION, THE ARBITRATION SHALL BE HELD IN AMSTERDAM, NETHERLANDS UNDER THE CURRENT UNCITRAL ARBITRATION RULES. THE COSTS OF THE ARBITRATION SHALL BE BORNE EQUALLY PENDING THE ARBITRATOR’S AWARD. THE AWARD RENDERED SHALL BE FINAL AND BINDING UPON THE PARTIES AND SHALL NOT BE SUBJECT TO APPEAL TO ANY COURT, AND MAY BE ENFORCED IN ANY COURT OF COMPETENT JURISDICTION. NOTHING IN THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE DEEMED AS PREVENTING EITHER PARTY FROM SEEKING INJUNCTIVE RELIEF FROM ANY COURT HAVING JURISDICTION OVER THE PARTIES AND THE SUBJECT MATTER OF**

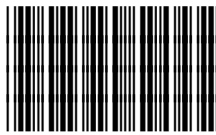
**THE DISPUTE AS NECESSARY TO PROTECT EITHER PARTY'S CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION, OWNERSHIP, OR ANY OTHER PROPRIETARY RIGHTS. ALL ARBITRATION PROCEEDINGS SHALL BE CONDUCTED IN CONFIDENCE, AND THE PARTY PREVAILING IN ARBITRATION SHALL BE ENTITLED TO RECOVER ITS REASONABLE ATTORNEYS' FEES AND NECESSARY COSTS INCURRED RELATED THERETO FROM THE OTHER PARTY.**

**U.S. GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS.** The Software under this Agreement is "commercial computer software" as that term is described in 48 C.F.R. 252.227-7014(a)(1). If acquired by or on behalf of a civilian agency, the U.S. Government acquires this commercial computer software and/or commercial computer software documentation subject to the terms of this Agreement as specified in 48 C.F.R. 12.212 (Computer Software) and 12.211 (Technical Data) of the Federal Acquisition Regulations ("**FAR**") and its successors. If acquired by or on behalf of any agency within the Department of Defense ("**DOD**"), the U.S. Government acquires this commercial computer software and/or commercial computer software documentation subject to the terms of this Agreement as specified in 48 C.F.R. 227.7202 of the DOD FAR Supplement and its successors.

**MISCELLANEOUS TERMS.** You agree to pay BMC all amounts owed no later than 30 days from the date of the applicable invoice, unless otherwise provided on the order for the License to the Products. You will pay, or reimburse BMC, for taxes of any kind, including sales, use, duty, tariffs, customs, withholding, property, value-added (VAT), and other similar federal, state or local taxes (other than taxes based on BMC's net income) imposed in connection with the Product and/or the Support. This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between You and BMC and supersedes any prior or contemporaneous negotiations or agreements, whether oral, written or displayed electronically, concerning the Product and related subject matter. No modification or waiver of any provision hereof will be effective unless made in a writing signed by both BMC and You. You may not assign or transfer this Agreement or a License to a third party without BMC's prior written consent. Should any provision of this Agreement be invalid or unenforceable, the remainder of the provisions will remain in effect. The parties have agreed that this Agreement and the documents related thereto be drawn up in the English language. Les parties exigent que la présente convention ainsi que les documents qui s'y rattachent soient rédigés en anglais.



## Notes



\*41502\*